

Ruijie Reyee RG-EG Series Routers

ReyeeOS 2.248

Web-based Configuration Guide



Copyright

Copyright © 2023 Ruijie Networks

All rights are reserved in this document and this statement.

Any reproduction, excerpt, backup, modification, transmission, translation, or commercial use of this document or any portion of this document, in any form or by any means, without the prior written consent of Ruijie Networks is prohibited.



and other Ruijie networks logos are trademarks of Ruijie Networks.

All other trademarks or registered trademarks mentioned in this document are owned by their respective owners.

Disclaimer

The products, services, or features you purchase are subject to commercial contracts and terms. Some or all of the products, services or features described in this document may not be within the scope of your purchase or use. Unless otherwise agreed in the contract, Ruijie Networks does not make any express or implied statement or guarantee for the content of this document.

Due to product version upgrades or other reasons, the content of this document will be updated from time to time. Ruijie Networks reserves the right to modify the content of the document without any notice or prompt.

This manual is for reference only. Ruijie Networks endeavors to ensure content accuracy and will not shoulder any responsibility for losses and damages caused due to content omissions, inaccuracies or errors.

Preface

Intended Audience

This document is intended for:

- Network engineers
- Technical support and servicing engineers
- Network administrators

Technical Support

- Official website of Ruijie Reye: <https://www.ruijienetworks.com/products/reyee>
- Technical Support Website: <https://ruijienetworks.com/support>
- Case Portal: <https://caseportal.ruijienetworks.com>
- Community: <https://community.ruijienetworks.com>
- Technical Support Email: service_rj@ruijienetworks.com

Conventions

1. GUI Symbols

Interface symbol	Description	Example
Boldface	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Button names2. Window names, tab name, field name and menu items3. Link	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Click OK.2. Select Config Wizard.3. Click the Download File link.
>	Multi-level menus items	Select System > Time .

2. Signs

The signs used in this document are described as follows:

Warning

An alert that calls attention to important rules and information that if not understood or followed can result in data loss or equipment damage.

Caution

An alert that calls attention to essential information that if not understood or followed can result in function failure or performance degradation.

Note

An alert that contains additional or supplementary information that if not understood or followed will not lead to serious consequences.

 **Specification**

An alert that contains a description of product or version support.

3. Note

This manual introduces the product model, port type and CLI for your reference. In case of any discrepancy or inconsistency between the manual and the actual version, the actual version prevails.

1 Login

1.1 Configuration Environment Requirements

1.1.1 PC

- Browser: Google Chrome, Internet Explorer 9.0, 10.0, and 11.0, and some Chromium/Internet Explorer kernel-based browsers (such as 360 Extreme Explorer) are supported. Exceptions such as garble or format error may occur if an unsupported browser is used.
- Resolution: 1024 x 768 or a higher resolution is recommended. If other resolutions are used, the page fonts and formats may not be aligned, the GUI is less artistic, or other exceptions may occur.

1.2 Default Configuration

Table 1-1 Default Web Configuration

Item	Default
IP address	192.168.110.1
Username/Password	A username is not required when you log in for the first time. The default password is "admin".

1.3 Login to Eweb

1.3.1 Connecting to the Router

You can open the management page and complete Internet access configuration only after connecting a client to the router in either of the following ways:

- Wired Connection

Connect a local area network (LAN) port of the router to the network port of the PC, and set the IP address of the PC. See Section [1.3.2 Configuring the IP Address of the Management Client](#) for details.

- Wireless Connection

Connect the LAN port to the uplink port on the AP and power on the AP. On a mobile phone or laptop, search for wireless network @Ruijie-mXXXX (XXXX is the last four digits of the MAC address of each device). In this mode, you do not need to set the IP address of the management client, and you can skip the operation in Section [1.3.2 Configuring the IP Address of the Management Client](#).

1.3.2 Configuring the IP Address of the Management Client

Configure an IP address for the management client in the same network segment as the default IP address of the device (The default device IP address is 192.168.110.1, and the subnet mask is 255.255.255.0.) so that the

management client can access the device. For example, set the IP address of the management client to 192.168.110.200.

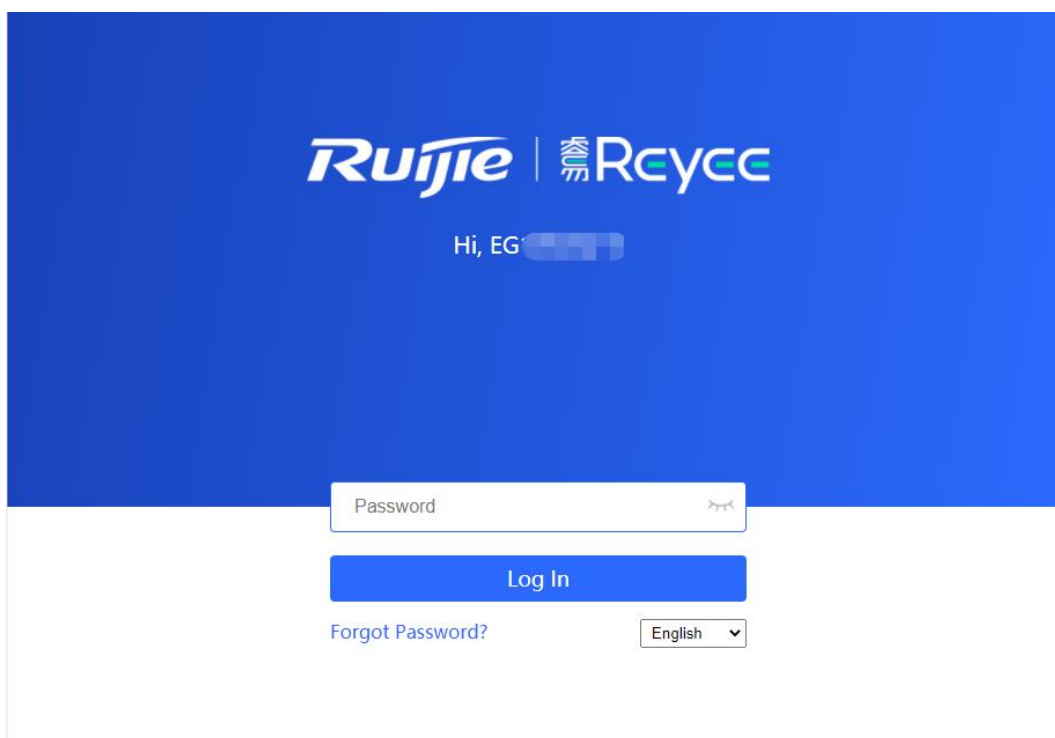
1.3.3 Login

Enter the IP address (192.168.110.1 by default) of the router in the address bar of the browser to open the login page.

Note

If the static IP address of the device is changed, or the device obtains a new dynamic IP address, the new IP address can be used to access the web management system of the device as long as the management client and the device are in the same network segment of a LAN.

-
- (1) On the web page, enter the password and click **Log In** to enter the web management system.



You can use the default password **admin** to log in to the device for the first time.

For security purposes, you are advised to change the default password as soon as possible after logging in, and to regularly update your password thereafter.

If you forget the IP address or password, hold down the **Reset** button on the device panel for more than 5 seconds when the device is connected to the power supply to restore factory settings. After restoration, you can use the default IP address and password to log in.

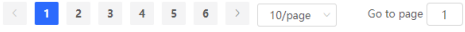
Caution

Restoring factory settings will delete the existing configuration and you are required to configure the device again at your next login. Therefore, exercise caution when performing this operation.

1.3.4 Frequently-Used Controls on the Web Page

Table 1-2 Frequently-Used Controls on the Web Page

Control	Description
	<p>Local Device: Allows you to configure all functions of the local device.</p> <p>Network: Allows you to configure common functions of all wired and wireless Reyeer products in batches on an ad hoc network.</p>
	<p>The navigation bar is arranged horizontally on the top when the device acts as the slave device, and vertically on the left when the device acts as the master device.</p>
	<p>Click it to change the language.</p>
	<p>Click it to log in to the Ruijie Cloud for remote O&M through the URL or by scanning the QR code.</p>
	<p>Click it to access the network setup wizard.</p>
	<p>Click it to log out of the web management system.</p>
	<p>Click Add or Batch Add to add one or more table entries in the dialog box that appears. After adding the table entries, you can view the added table entries on this page.</p>
	<p>Click it to delete the selected table entries in batches.</p>
	<p>Quickly locate the table entry you want to find through the drop-down list or by entering a keyword.</p>
	<p>Click them to edit, delete, or bind a table entry.</p>
	<p>If the toggle switch is displayed in gray and the button is on the left, the related function is disabled. If the toggle switch is displayed in blue and the button is on the right, the related function is enabled.</p>
	<p>Update data on the current page.</p>

Control	Description
	Set the number of table entries displayed on a page. Click a page number or specify the page number to access the corresponding page.

1.4 Work Mode

The device can work in router mode and AC mode. The system menu pages and configuration function scope vary depending on the work mode. By default, the EG router works in router mode. To modify the work mode, see [Section 3.1 Switching the Work Mode](#).

1.4.1 Router Mode

The device supports routing functions such as route-based forwarding and network address translation (NAT), VPN, and behavior management. It can allocate addresses to downlink devices, forward network data based on routes, and perform NAT operations.

In the router mode, the device can access the network through Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet (PPPoE) dialing, dynamic IP address, and static IP address. It can also directly connect to a fiber-to-the-home (FTTH) network cable or an uplink device to provide network access and manage downlink devices.

1.4.2 AC Mode

The device supports Layer 2 forwarding only. The device does not provide the routing and Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) server functions. By default, the WAN port obtains IP addresses through DHCP. The AC mode is applicable to the scenario where the network is working normally. In AC mode, the device serves as the management controller to access the network in bypass mode and manage the AP.

1.5 Configuration Wizard (Router Mode)

1.5.1 Getting Started

- (1) Power on the device. Connect the WAN port of the device to an uplink device using an Ethernet cable, or connect the device to the optical modem directly.
- (2) Configure the Internet connection type according to requirements of the local Internet Service Provider (ISP). Otherwise, the Internet access may fail due to improper configuration. You are advised to contact your local ISP to confirm the Internet connection type:
 - o Figure out whether the Internet connection type is PPPoE, DHCP mode, or static IP address mode.
 - o In the PPPoE mode, a username, a password, and possibly a service name are needed.
 - o In the static IP address mode, an IP address, a subnet mask, a gateway, and a DNS server need to be configured.

1.5.2 Configuration Steps

1. Adding a Device to Network

You can manage and configure all devices in the network in batches by default. Please verify the device count and network status before configuration.

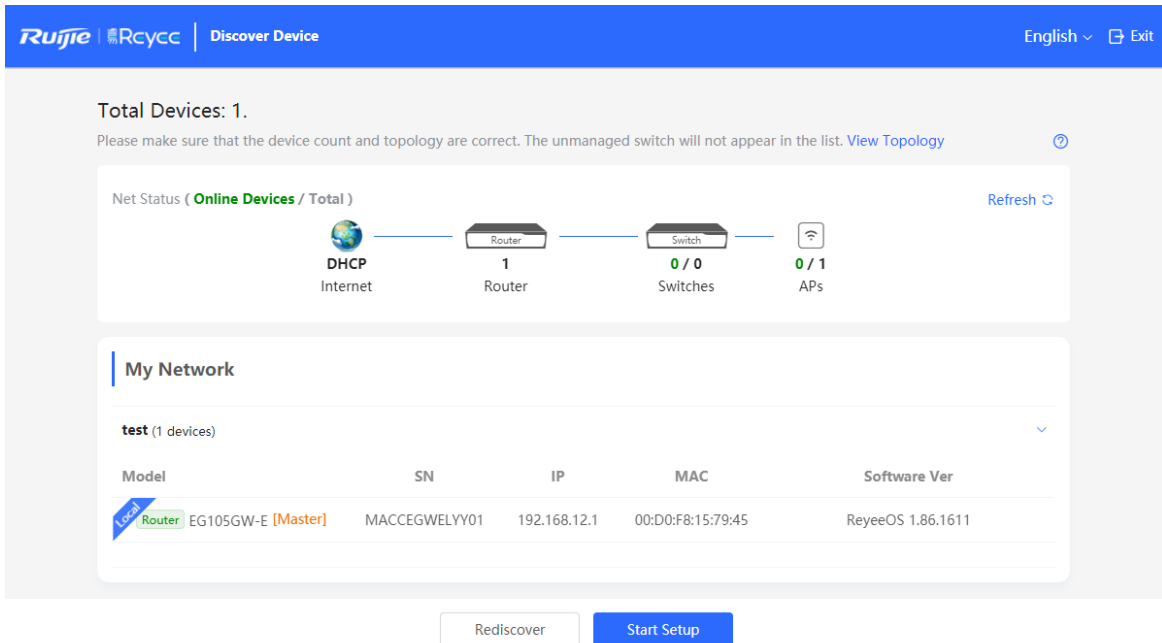
Note

New devices will join in a network automatically after being powered on. You only need to verify the device count.

If a new device is detected not in the network, click **Add to My Network** and enter its management password to add the device manually.





Note

If there is a firewall device in the network, the **Firewall Port Config** page appears. Select the corresponding port for configuration.




Total Devices: 1.
Please make sure that the device count and topology are correct. The unmanaged switch will not appear in the list. [View Topology](#)

Net Status (**Online Devices** / Total) Refresh ↻

 DHCP Internet
  Router 1 Router
  Switch 0 / 0 Switches
  0 / 1 APs

My Network

test (1 devices) ▼

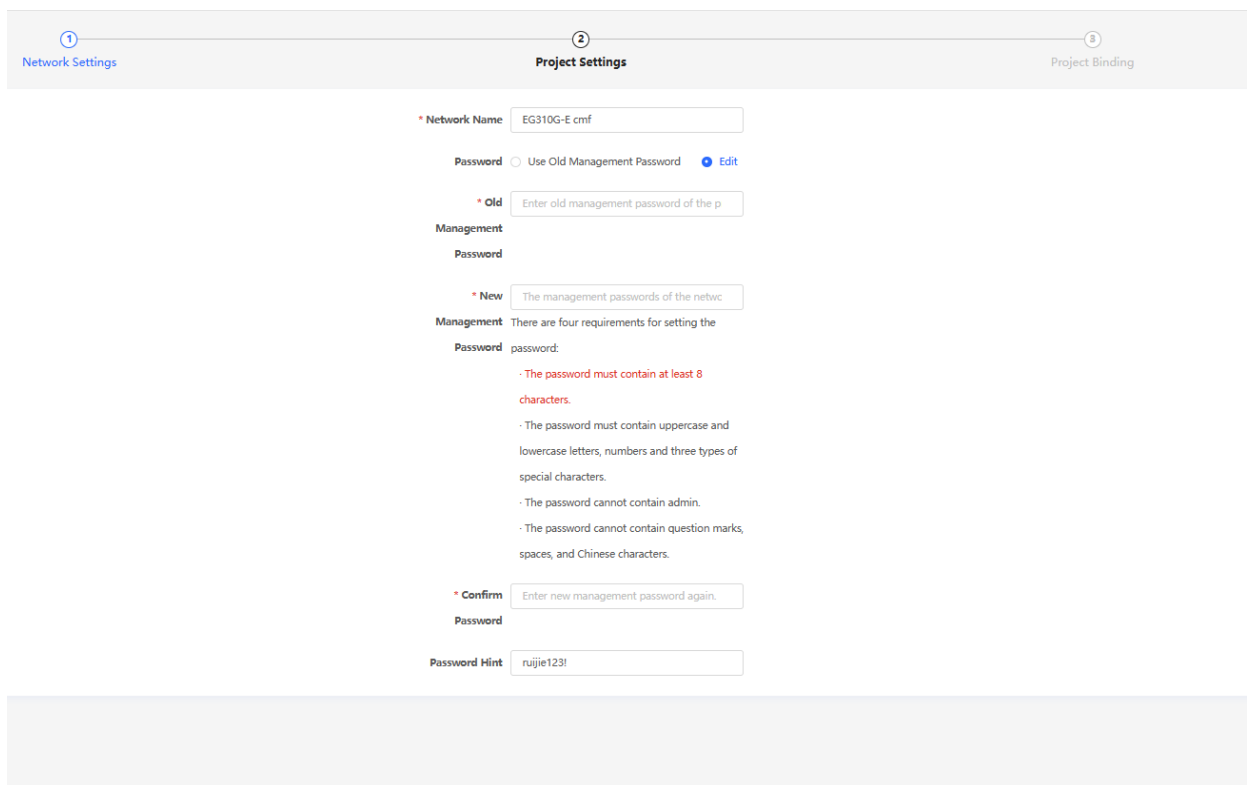
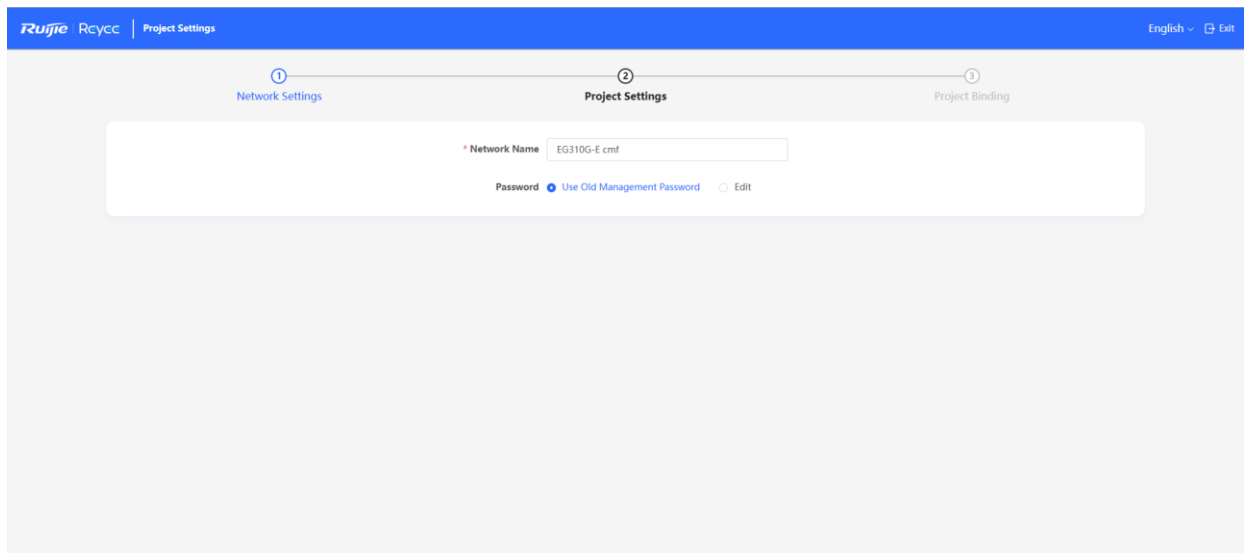
Model	SN	IP	MAC	Software Ver
 Router EG105GW-E [Master]	MACCEGWELY01	192.168.12.1	00:D0:F8:15:79:45	ReyeeOS 1.86.1611

2. Creating a Network Project

Click **Start Setup** to configure the Internet connection type and management password.

- (1) **Network Name:** Identify the network where the device is located.
- (2) **Internet:** Configure the Internet connection type according to the requirements of the local ISP.
 - **DHCP:** The router detects whether it can obtain an IP address via DHCP by default. If the router connects to the Internet successfully, you can click **Next** without entering an account.
 - **PPPoE:** Click **PPPoE**, and enter the username, password, and service name. Click **Next**.
 - **Static IP:** Enter the IP address, subnet mask, gateway, and DNS server, and click **Next**.
- (3) **Management Password:** The password is used for logging in to the management page.

- (4) **Country/Region:** You are advised to select the actual country or region.
- (5) **Time Zone:** Set the system time. The network time server is enabled by default to provide the time service. You are advised to select the actual time zone.



Click **Create Network & Connect**. The device will deliver the initialization and check the network connectivity. The device can access the Internet now. Bind the device with a Ruijie Cloud account for remote management. Follow the instruction to log in to Ruijie Cloud for further configuration.

- Note**
- If your device is not connected to the Internet, click Exit to exit the configuration wizard.
- Please log in again with the new password if you change the management password.

1.5.3 Forgetting the PPPoE Account

- (1) Consult your local ISP.
- (2) If you replace the old router with a new one, click **Obtain Account from Old Device**. Connect the old and new routers to a power supply and start them. Insert one end of an Ethernet cable into the WAN port of the old router and connect the other end to a LAN port of the new router, and click **Obtain**. The new router automatically fetches the PPPoE account of the old router. Click **Save** to make the configuration take effect.

Internet PPPoE DHCP Static IP

⚙️ Checking IP assignment

* Username

* Password


Service Name

? Forgot Account? [Obtain Account from Old Device](#)

Dual-Band Single

SSID

Obtain PPPoE Account from Old Router



Steps:

1. Transmit Power on the old router and new router.
2. Connect one end of a cable to the WAN port of the old router and connect the other end to the LAN port of the new router.
3. Click "Obtain".

1.6 Configuration Wizard (AC Mode)

1.6.1 Getting Started

- Power on the device and connect the device to an uplink device.
- Make sure that the device can access the Internet.

1.6.2 Configuration Steps

- (1) On the work mode setting page, change the work mode from router mode to AC mode. For details, see Section [3.1 Switching the Work Mode](#).

Description:

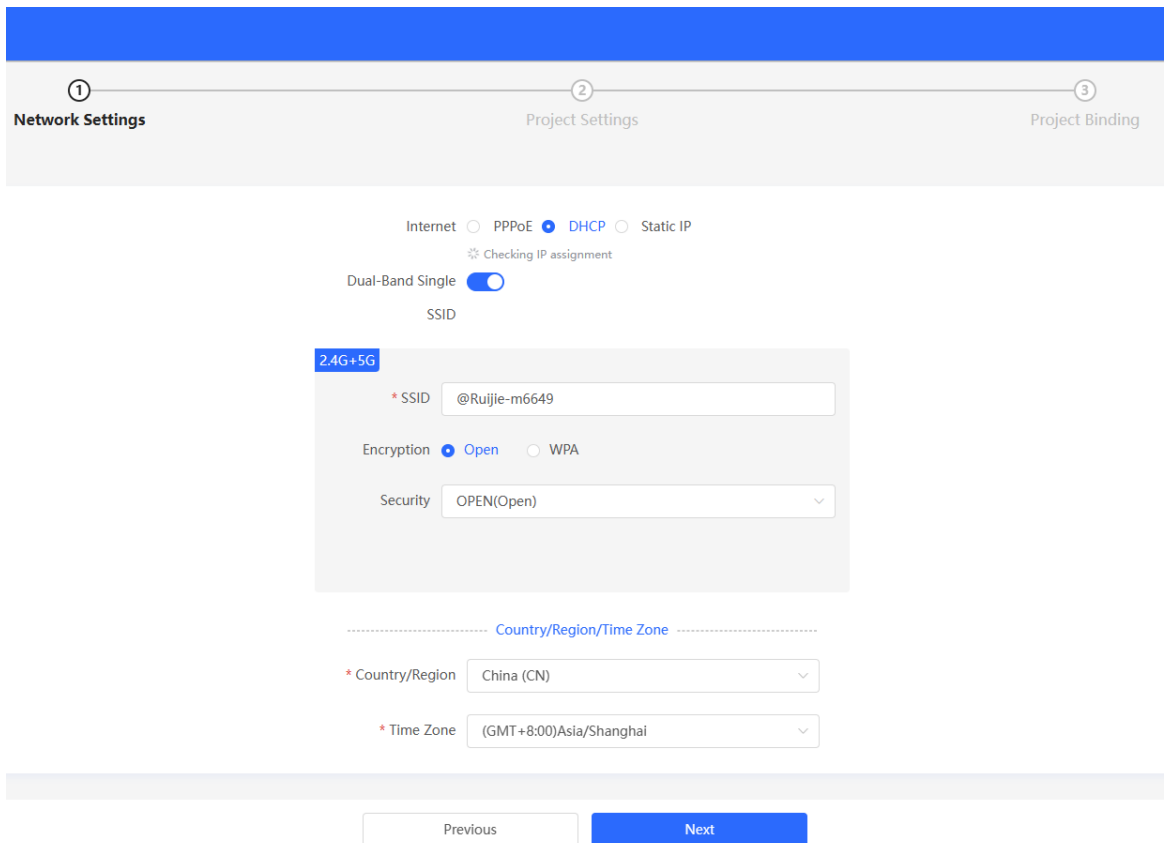
1. The device IP address may change upon mode change.
2. Change the endpoint IP address and ping the device.
3. Enter the new IP address into the address bar of the browser to access Eweb.
4. The system menu varies with different work modes.
5. **The device will be restored and rebooted upon mode change.**

Working Mode ?

Self-Organizing ?

Network

- (2) After mode switching, the device will restart. After restart, the WAN port on the device obtains an IP address through DHCP and accesses the network by using a dynamic IP address. The default Internet connection type is DHCP mode. You can use the default value or manually configure a static IP address for the WAN port. For details, see Section [1.5.2 Configuration Steps](#).



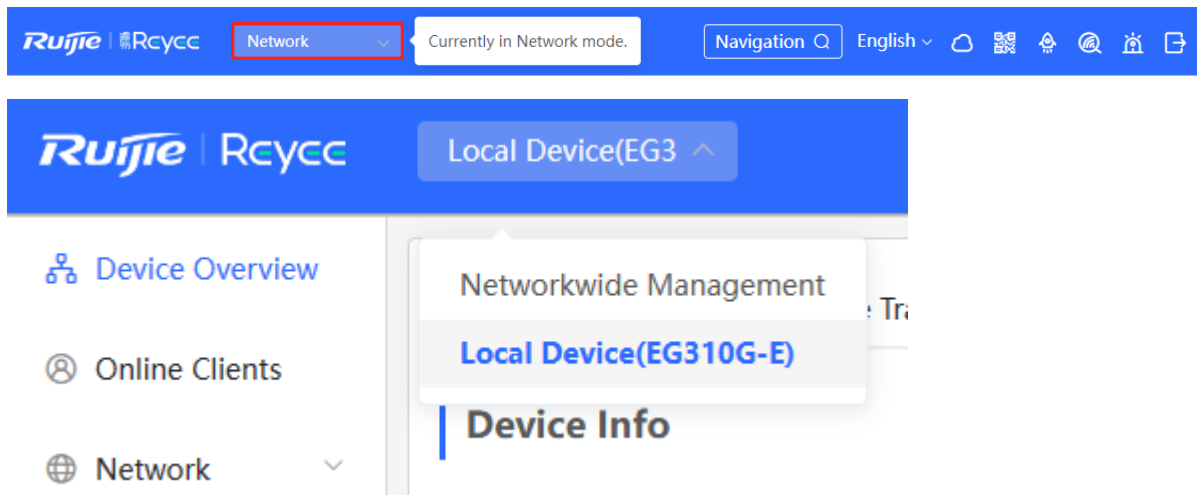
1.7 Switching Between Management Pages

After you disable self-organizing network discovery, the web page is in the Local Device mode. (Self-organizing network discovery is enabled upon delivery. For details, see Section [3.1 Switching the Work Mode](#))

After you enable self-organizing network discovery, you can switch between the Network and Local Device web pages. Click the current management mode in the navigation bar and select the desired mode from the drop-down list box.

Network mode: View the management information of all devices in the network and configure all devices in the current network from the network-wide perspective.

Local Device mode: Configure the device that you log in to.



Network page:

The screenshot shows the Ruijie Rcycc Network page. The top navigation bar includes 'Ruijie Rcycc', 'Networkwide Ma', a search bar, and utility links like 'English', 'Remote O&M', 'Network Configuration', 'Network Check', 'Alert', and 'Log Out'. The left sidebar contains navigation options: Overview, Network, Devices, Gateway, Clients Management, and System. The main content area features a 'Status' panel (Online, 3 Devices, 2 Clients), an 'Alert Center' with one alert, 'Common Functions' (WIO Disabled, RLD, DHCP Snooping, Batch Config), and 'Network Planning' (Wi-Fi VLAN 1, Wired VLAN 3). A central network topology diagram shows a hierarchy: WAN (20.66K, 962.00K) connected to a DHCP Server, then to a switch (EG310G-E), then to a router (RG-E218GC-P), then to a switch (S24T1), and finally to an AP (EAP162IG). A 'Collapse' button is at the bottom left, and 'Updated on: 2023-05-11 09:43:03' is at the bottom center.

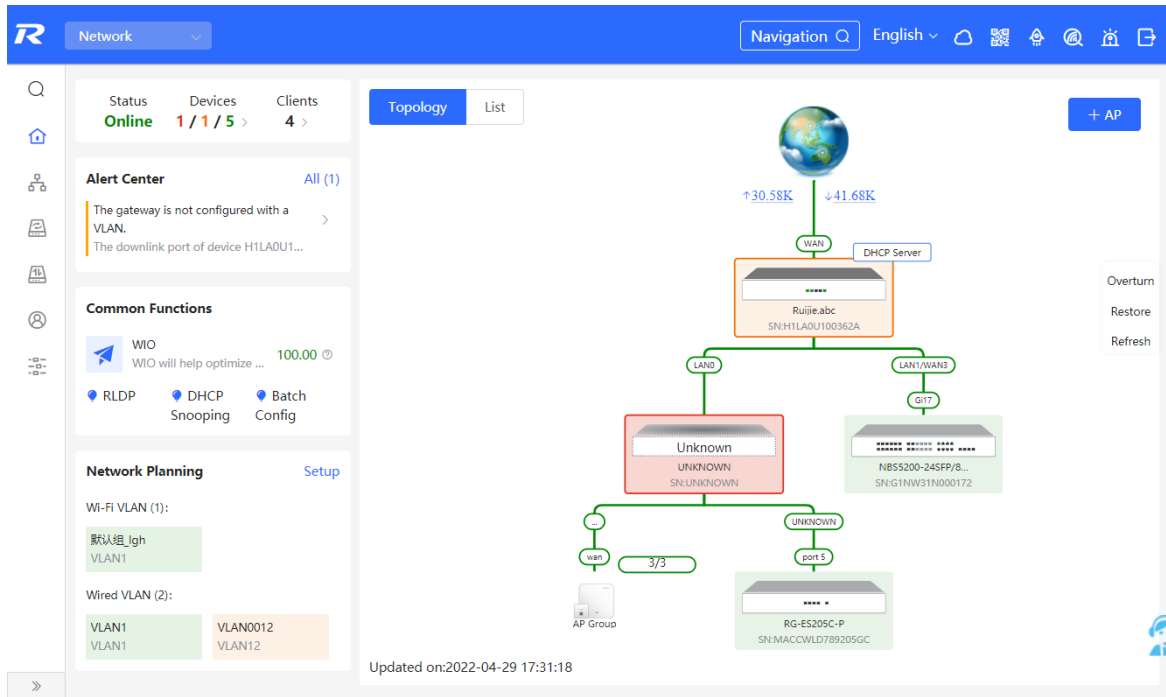
Local Device page:

The screenshot shows the Ruijie Rcycc Local Device page for device EG310G-E. The top navigation bar includes 'Ruijie Rcycc', 'Local Device(EG3)', 'Currently in Local Device mode.', and utility links like 'English', 'Remote O&M', 'Network Configuration', 'Network Check', 'Alert', and 'Log Out'. The left sidebar contains navigation options: Device Overview, Online Clients, Network, Security, Behavior, VPN, Advanced, Diagnostics, and System. The main content area features tabs for 'Device Overview', 'Real-time Traffic', 'Traffic History', 'URL Log', and 'Client List'. The 'Device Info' section shows 'Memory Usage: 16%', 'Online Clients: 2', and 'Connection Status: Online' with 'Uptime: 3 days 2 hours 44 minutes 37 seconds' and 'System Time: 2023-05-11 14:28:23'. The 'Device Details' section lists: Device Model: EG310G-E, Device Name: Ruijie, SN: MACCEG310GE99, MAC Address: 00:D0:F8:18:66:49, Working Mode: Router, Hardware Version: 1.00, Software Version: ReyeeOS 1.225.1704, and Role: Master AC. The 'Ethernet status' section shows a bar chart for ports AG, AG, LAN0, LAN1, LAN2, LAN3, WAN1, and WAN0, with LAN2 highlighted in yellow. A 'Collapse' button is at the bottom left.

2 Network-Wide Monitoring

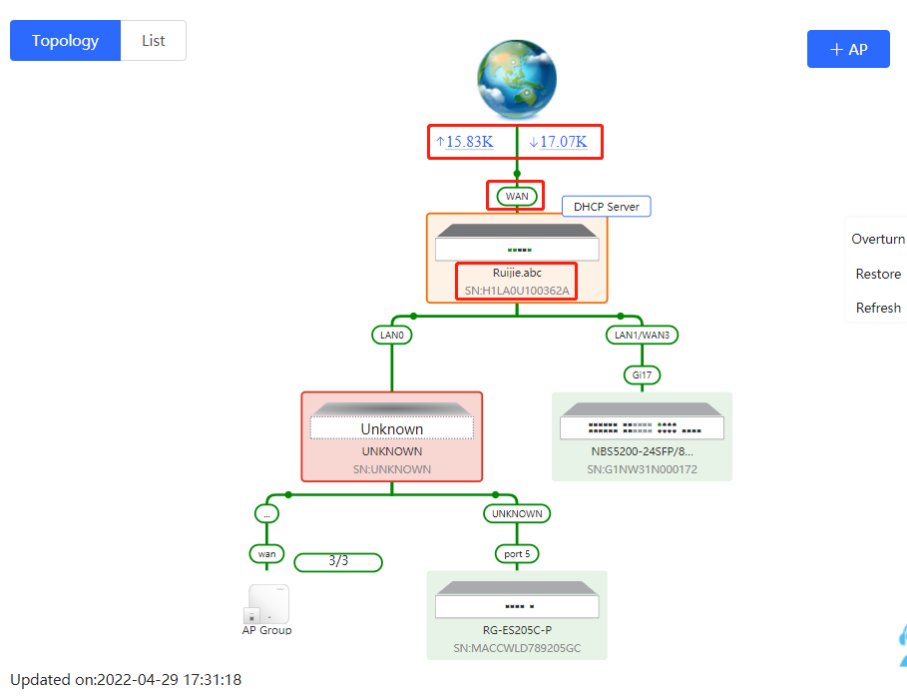
Choose **Networkwide Management > Overview**.

The **Overview** page displays the current network topology, uplink and downlink real-time traffic, network connection status, and number of users and provides short-cut entries for configuring the network and devices. On the current page, you can monitor, configure, and manage the network status of the entire network.

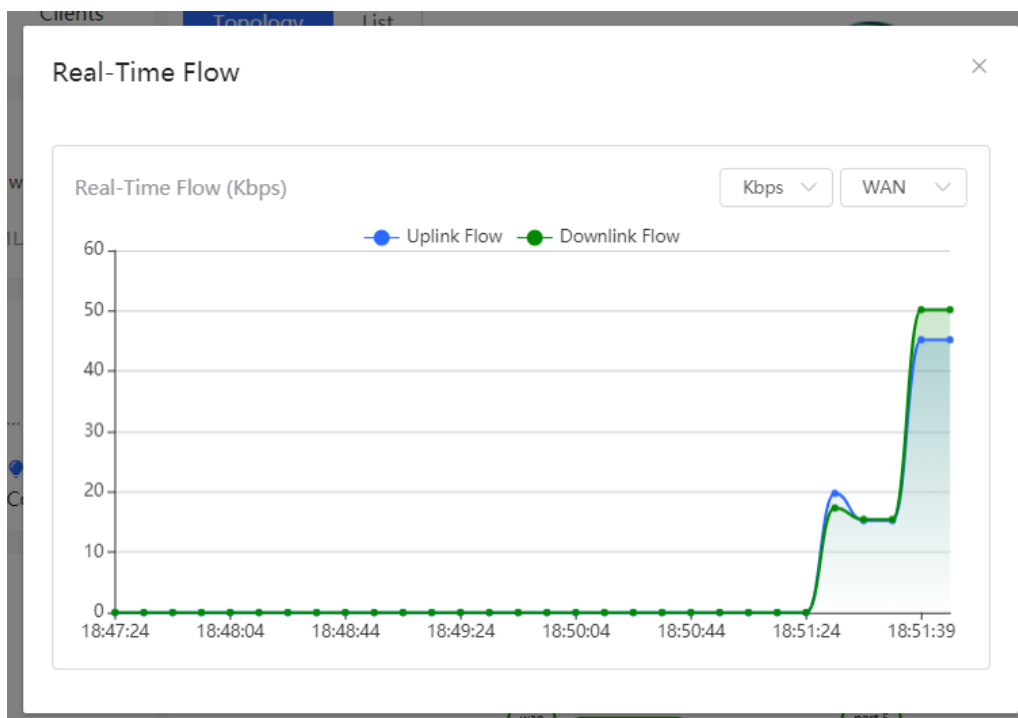



2.1 Viewing Networking Information

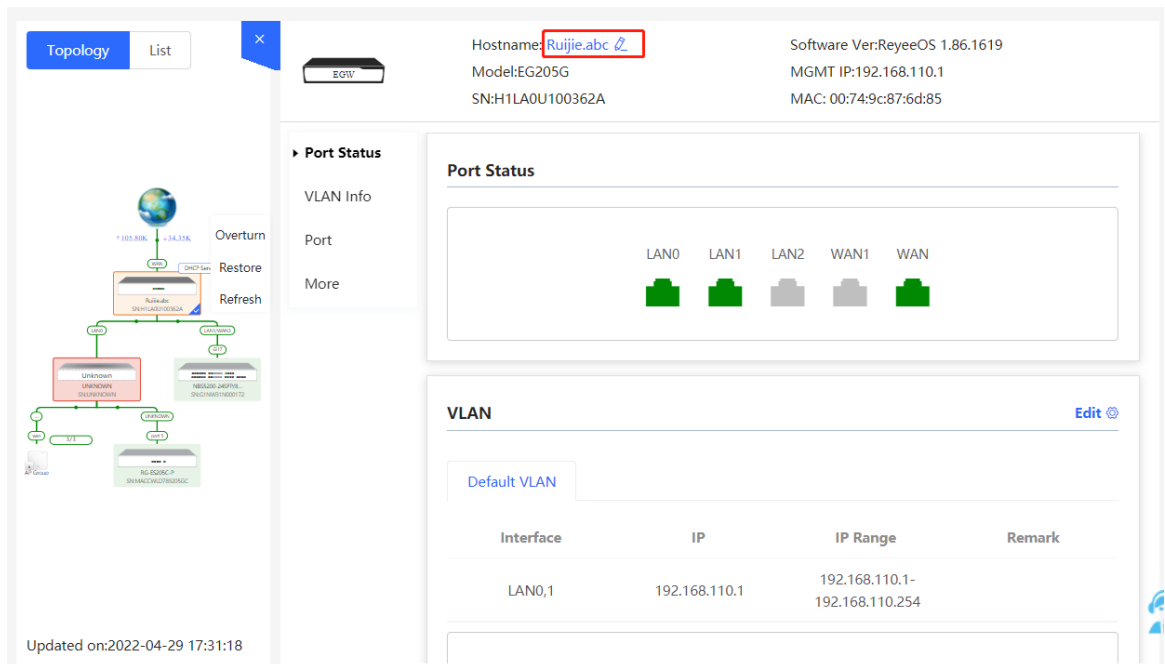
The networking topology contains information about online devices, connected port numbers, device SNs, and uplink and downlink real-time traffic.



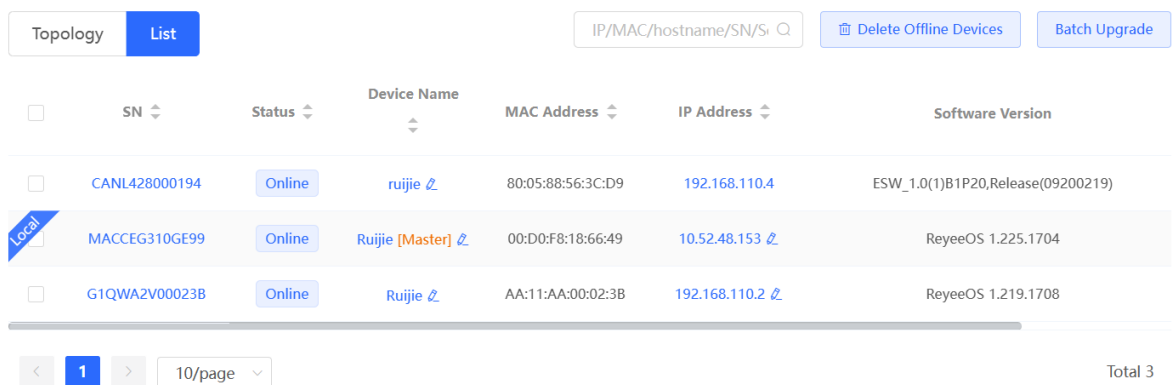
- Click a traffic data item to view the real-time total traffic information.



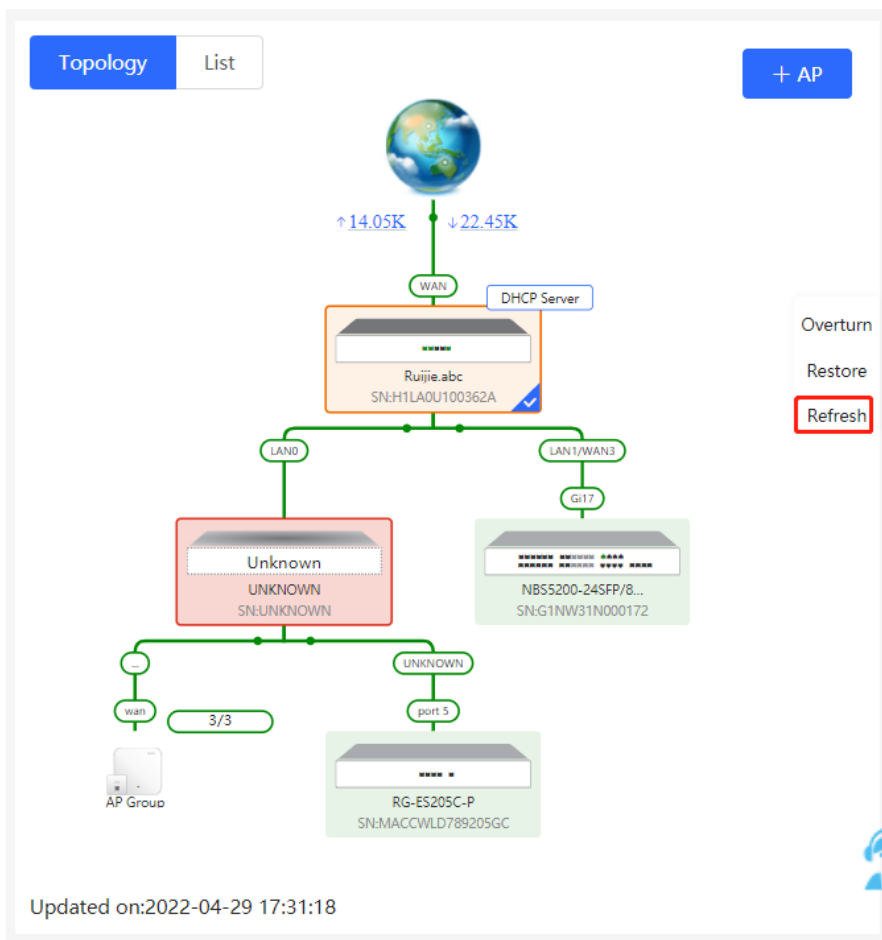
- Click a device in the topology to view the running status and configuration of the device and configure device functions. By default, the product model is used as the device name. Click  to modify the device name so that the description can distinguish devices from one another.



- Click **List** in the upper-left corner of the topology to switch to the device list view. Then, you can view device information in the current networking. Click an item in the list to configure and manage the device separately.



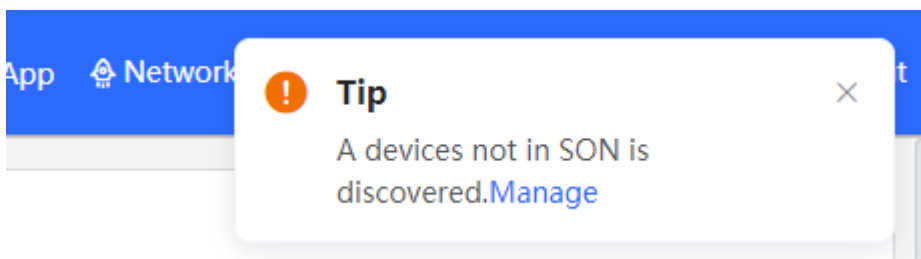
- The update time is displayed in the lower-left corner of the topology view. Click **Refresh** to update the topology to the latest state. It takes some time to update the topology data. Please wait patiently.

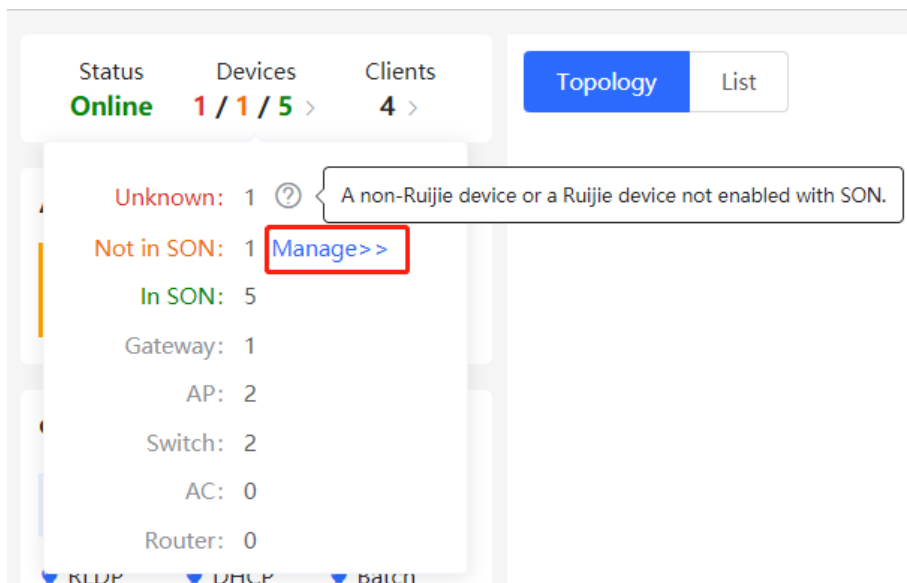


2.2 Adding Networking Devices

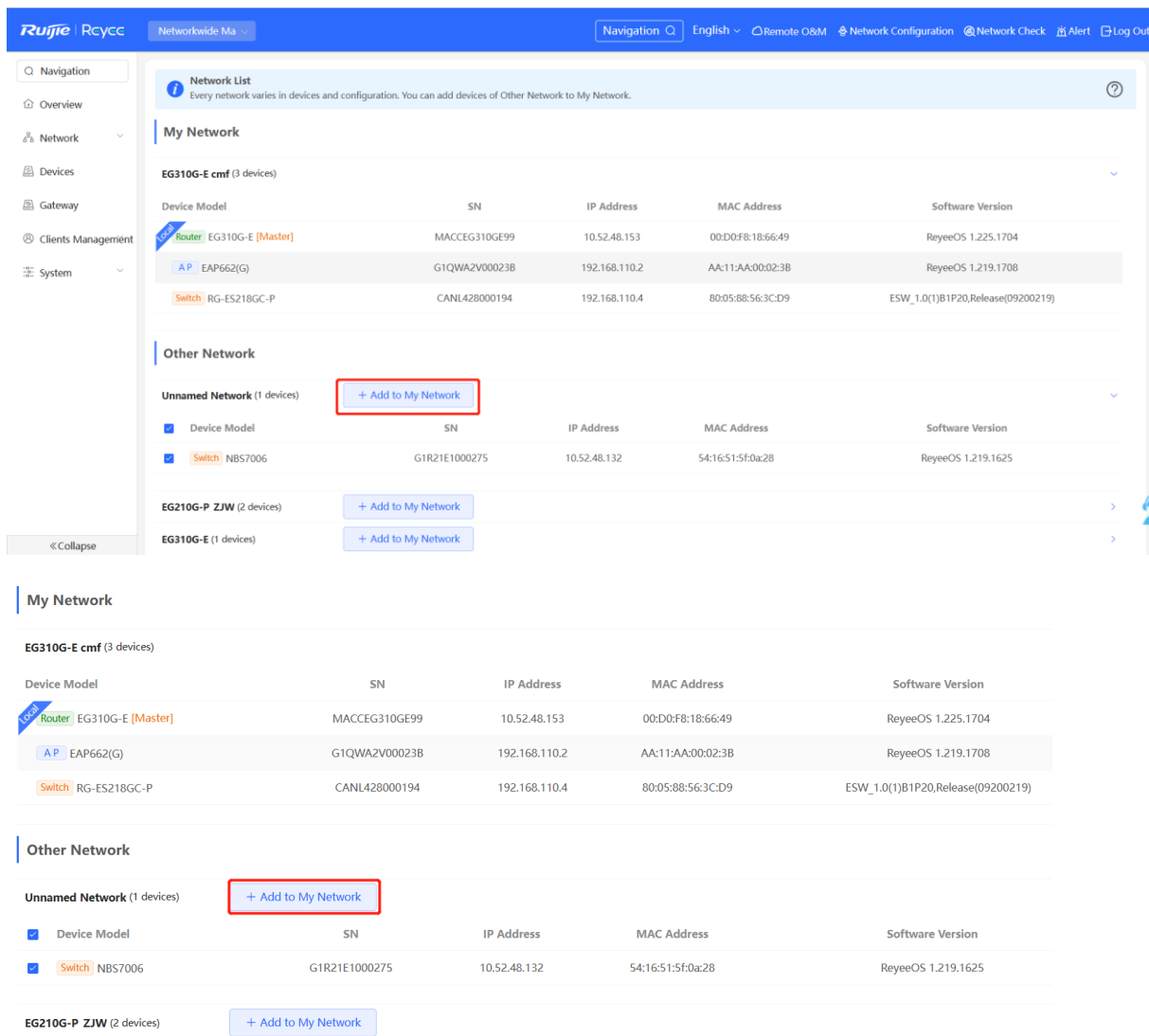
2.2.1 Wired Connection

- (1) When a new device connects to an existing device on the network, the system displays the message "A devices not in SON is discovered". And the number of such devices in orange under **Devices**. You can click **Manage** to add this device to the current network.

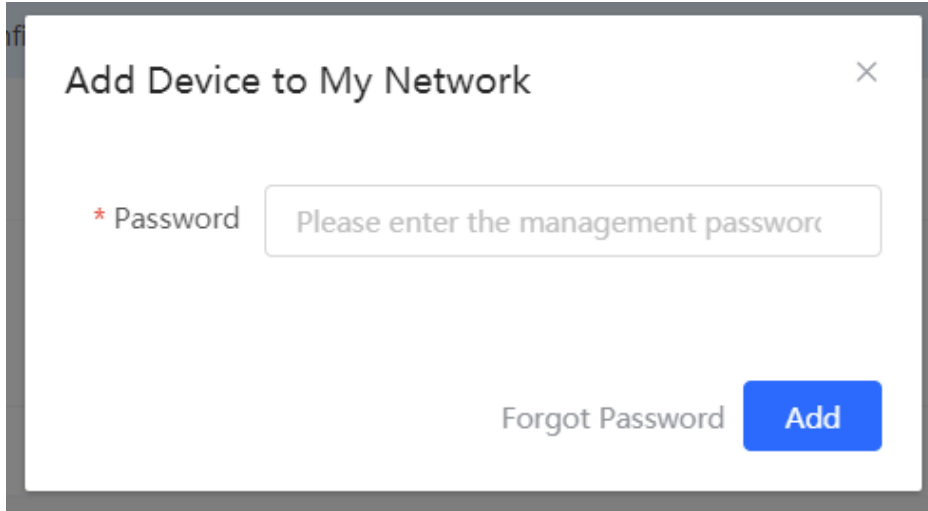




- (2) After the system switches to the **Network List** page, click **Other Network**. In the **Other Network** section, select the device to be added to the network and click **Add to My Network**.




- (3) You do not need to enter the password if the device is newly delivered from factory. If the device has a password, enter the management password of the device. Device addition fails if the password is incorrect.



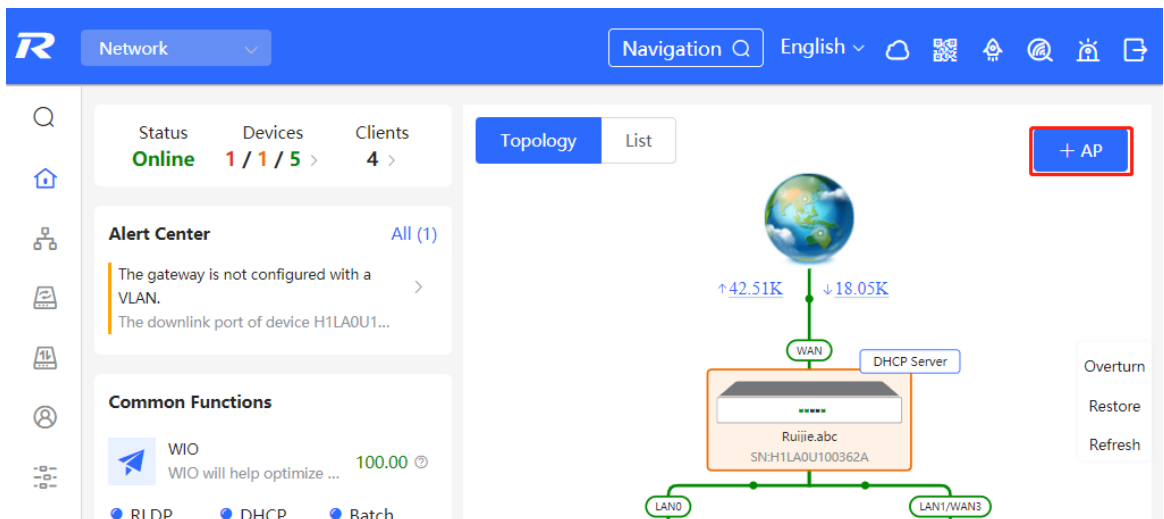
2.2.2 AP Mesh

If the AP supports the AP Mesh (Reyee Mesh) function, you do not need to connect cables after powering on the AP. The AP can be added to the current network in Reyee Mesh mode, establish a mesh networking with other wireless devices, and automatically synchronize Wi-Fi configuration.

 Caution

To scan the AP, the Reyee Mesh function must be enabled on the current network. (For details, see [Section 4.11 Enabling Reyee Mesh.](#)) The AP should be powered on nearby. It may fail to be scanned in case of long distance or obstacle blocking.

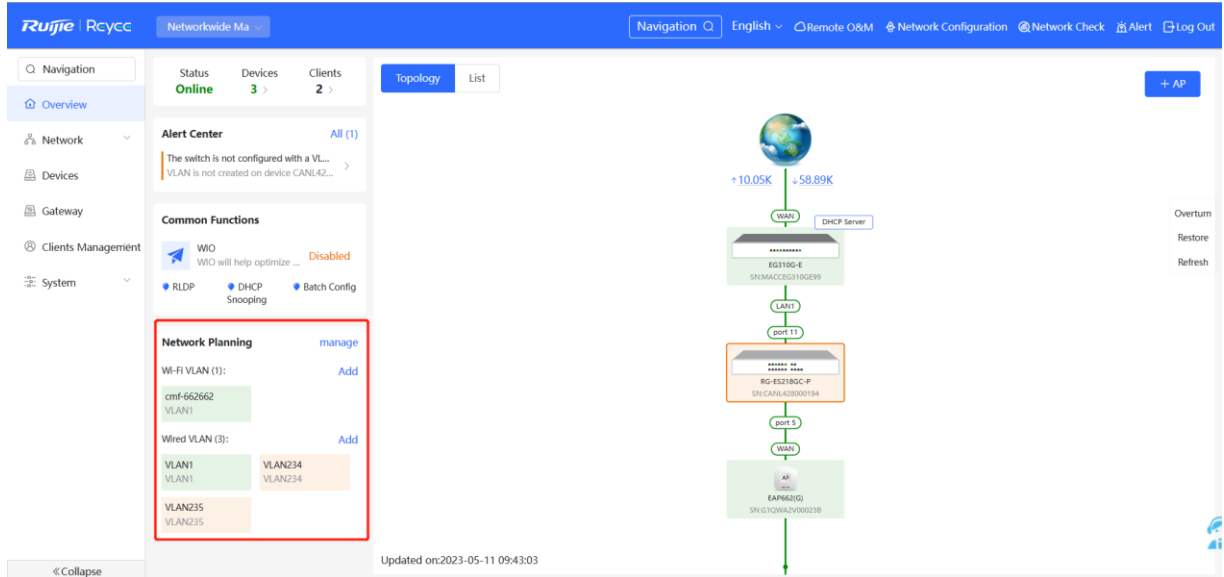
- (1) Place the powered new AP near an existing AP, where the new AP can receive Wi-Fi signals from the existing AP. Log in to a device in the network. On the **Overview** page, click **+AP** in the upper-right corner of the topology to scan nearby APs that do not belong to the current network and are not connected to a network cable.



- (2) Select the target AP to add it to the current network. You do not need to enter the password if the device to add is new. If the device has a password, enter the management password of the device.

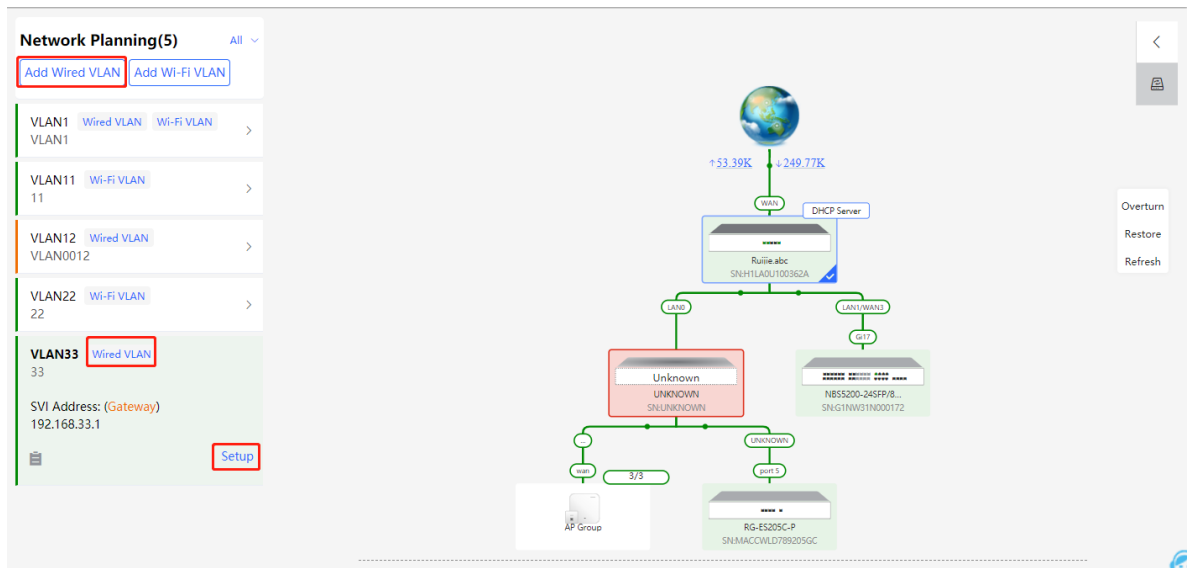
2.3 Configuring the Service Network

The wireless and wired network configurations of the current network are displayed in the lower-left of the **Overview** page. Click **Setup** to switch to the service network configuration page (**Networkwide Management > Overview > Network Planning**).



2.3.1 Configuring the Wired Network

- (1) Click **Add Wired VLAN** to add wired network configuration, or select an existing wired VLAN and click **Setup** to modify its configuration.



- (2) Configure a VLAN for wired access, specify the address pool server for access clients in this VLAN, and determine whether to create a new DHCP address pool. By default, the gateway is used as the address pool server to allocate addresses to access clients. If an access switch is available in this networking, you can select this switch as the address pool server. After setting the service parameters, click **Next**.

[Configure VLAN Parameters](#) [Wi-Fi](#) [Config](#)

* Description:

VLAN:

Address Pool Gateway
 Server

Gateway/Mask: /

DHCP Pool:

IP Range: -

(3) Select the switch to configure in the topology, select the switch ports added to this VLAN, and click **Override**.

Configure Network Planning/Add Wired VLAN

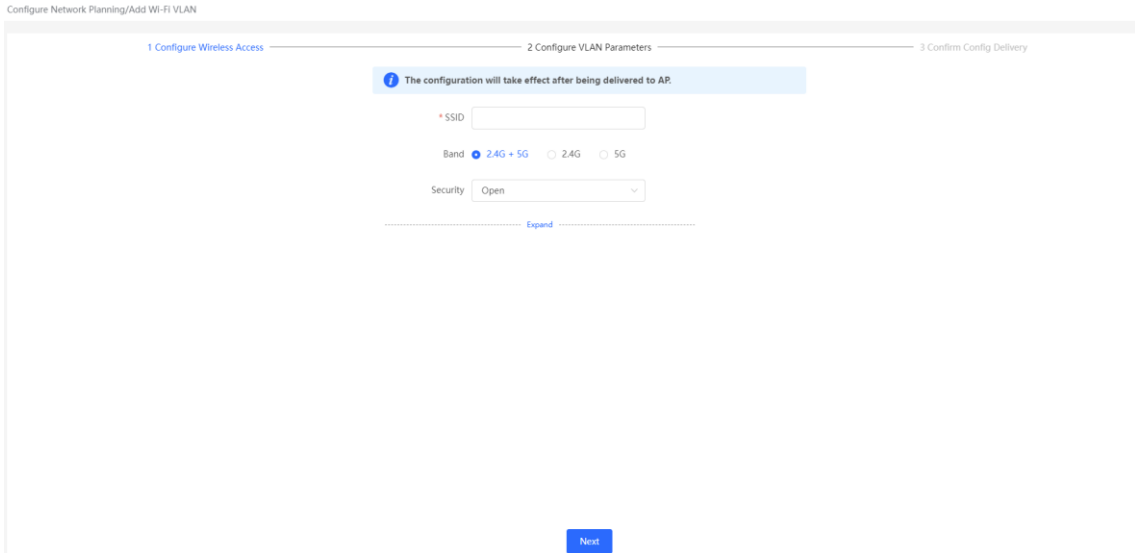
To configure (22 VLAN234 192.168.130.1~192.168.130.254) , configuration will be delivered to 2 device(s).The following configuration will be delivered:

- EG310G-E
MACCEG310GE99
Update VLAN 234.IP Address: 192.168.130.1 Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0
DHCP Pool. Start IP Address: 192.168.130.1 End IP Address:192.168.130.254
DNS: 192.168.130.1 Lease Time (Min)30
- RG-ES218GC-P
CANL428000194
Add VLAN VlanId: 234
Port Gi11 Set as Trunk Port, Native Id: 1, Allow Vlan: vlan1,333,234
Port Gi5 Set as Trunk Port, Native Id: 1, Allow Vlan: vlan1,62,234

(4) Wait a moment for the configuration to take effect.

2.3.2 Configuring the Wireless Network

- (1) Click **Add Wi-Fi VLAN** to add wireless network configuration.
- (2) Set the SSID, Wi-Fi password, and applicable bands. Click **Next**.

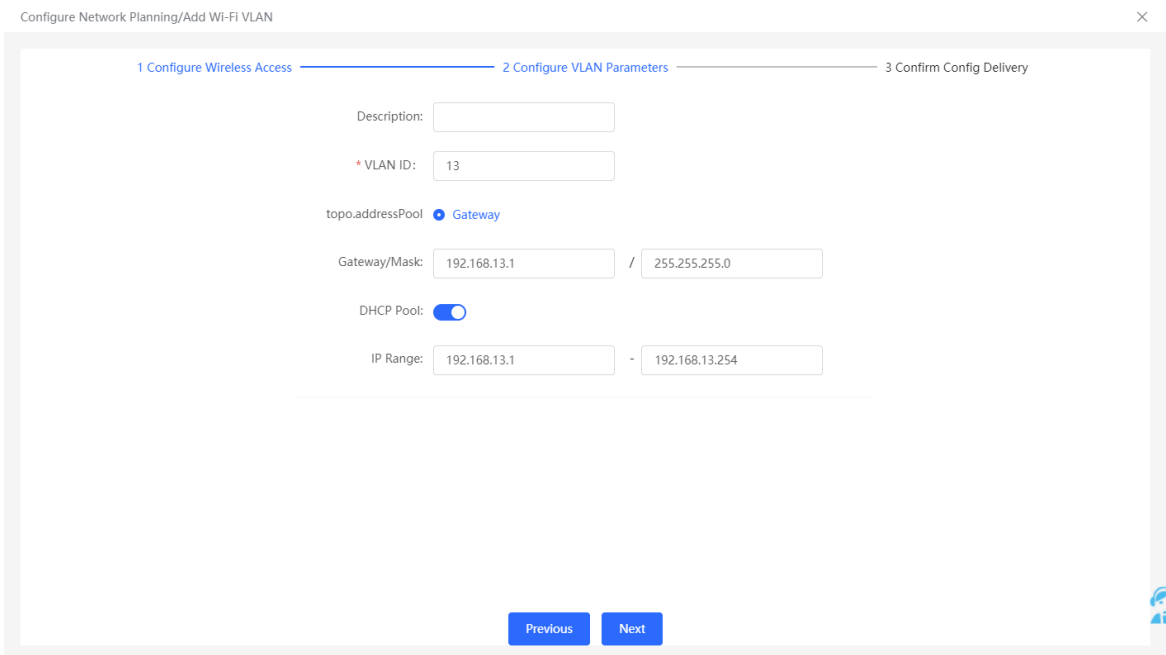


Applicable bands include 2.4 GHz, 5 GHz, and 2.4 GHz + 5 GHz.

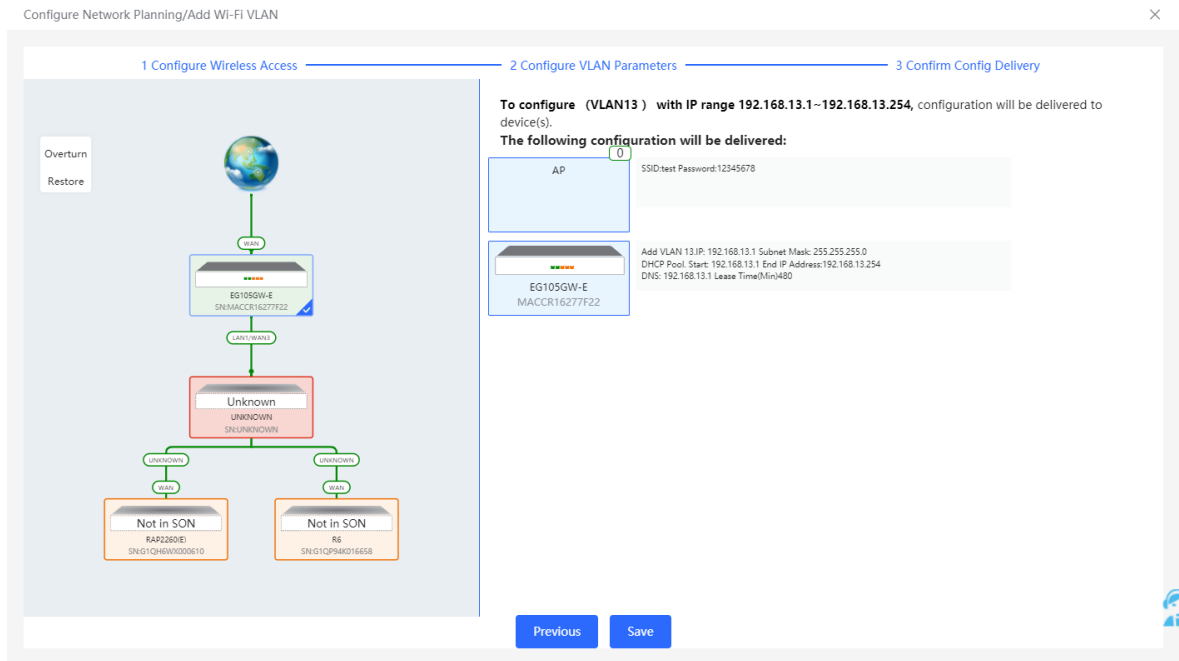
Security types include **Open**, **WPA-PSK**, **WPA2-PSK**, and **WPA_WPA2-PSK**. When the security type is set to **WPA-PSK**, **WPA2-PSK**, or **WPA_WPA2-PSK**, a Wi-Fi password is required.

Click **Expand** to configure the advanced parameters, including Hide SSID, Client Isolation, and Band Steering.

- (3) Configure a VLAN for wireless access, specify the address pool server for access clients in this VLAN, and determine whether to create a new DHCP address pool. By default, the gateway is used as the address pool server to allocate addresses to access clients. If an access switch is available in this networking, you can select this switch as the address pool server. After setting the service parameters, click **Next**.



- (4) Confirm that the configuration items to be delivered are correct and then click **Save**. Wait a moment for the configuration to take effect.



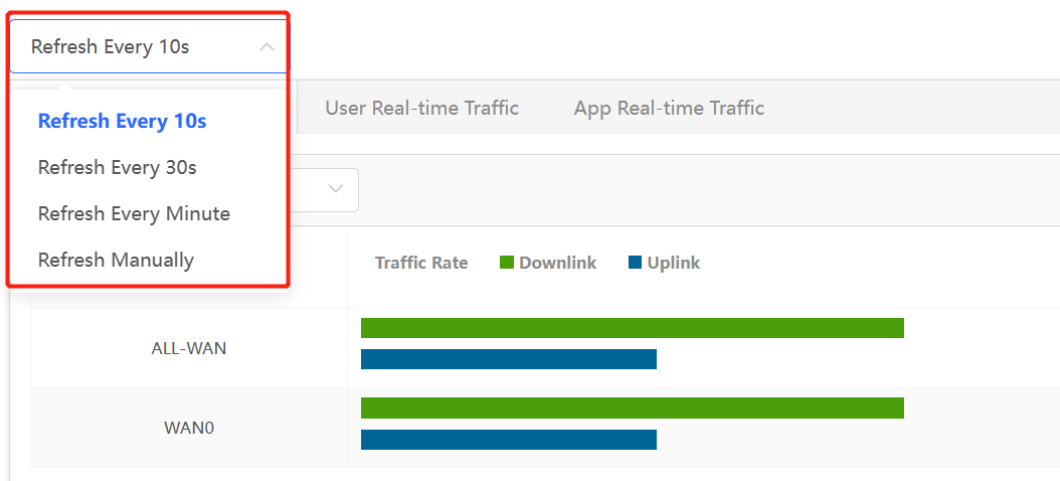
2.4 Supporting Traffic Monitoring

Traffic monitoring can be carried out based on ports, users, and applications. The real-time or historical uplink traffic, downlink traffic, and number of sessions can be displayed.

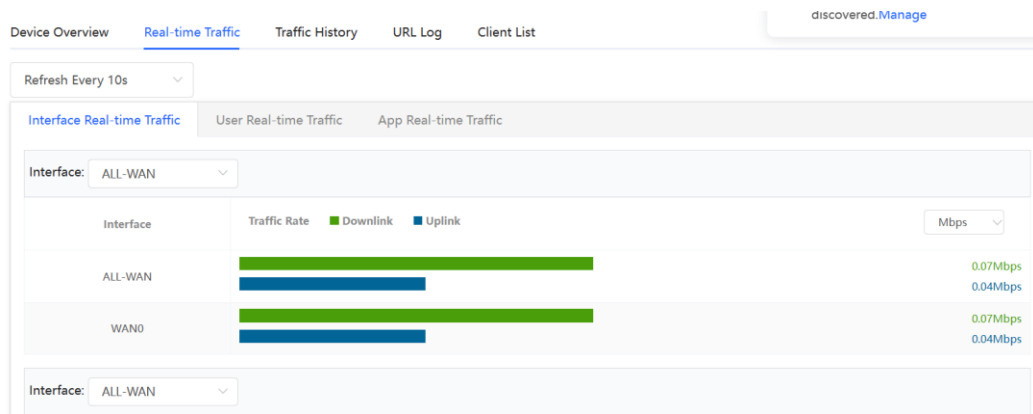
2.4.1 Viewing Real-time Traffic

Choose **Local Device > Device Overview > Real-time Traffic**

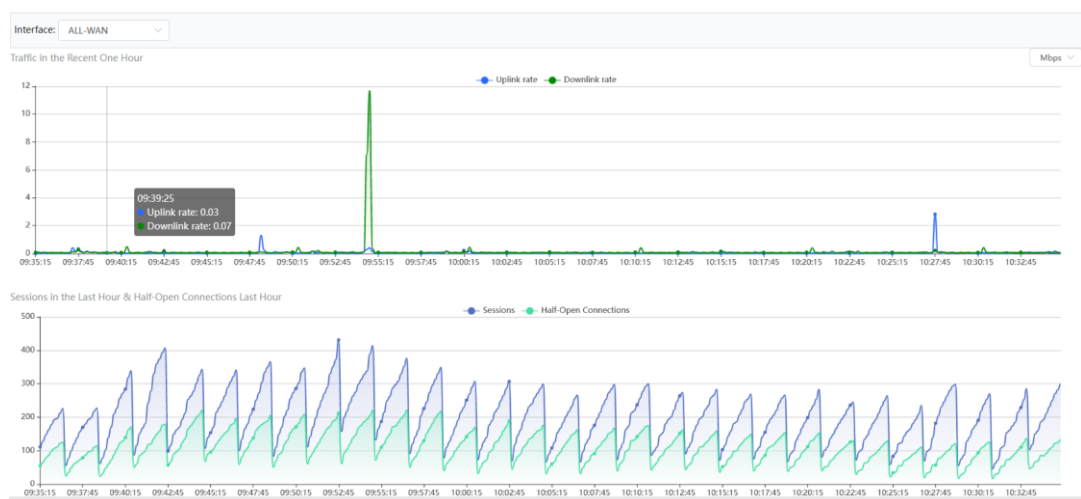
- (1) Set the refresh frequency.
Select a refresh frequency from the drop-down list.



- (2) View real-time traffic of a port.
 - a Click the **Interface Real-time Traffic** tab.
 - b Set **Interface**.
Set **Interface** to a port or **ALL-WAN**. You can view the uplink or downlink traffic of a port or the system.



- c View traffic in the last one hour.
Choose a port or **ALL-WAN** from the **Interface** drop-down list and view the traffic and sessions (including sessions of an original WAN port after LAN/WAN switching) in the last one hour.



Note
Uplink traffic and downlink traffic are color-coded in the figure. You can move the cursor over a curve to view uplink traffic and downlink traffic at a certain time.

- (3) View real-time traffic of a user.
 - a Click the **User Real-Time Traffic** tab.

The screenshot shows the 'User Real-time Traffic' tab with a table of user data. The table has columns for 'No.', 'Ip', 'Name', 'Online Duration', 'Sessions', and 'Flow Rate'. The 'Flow Rate' column includes a legend for 'Downlink' (green) and 'Uplink' (blue) with corresponding bar charts. A 'Sort by downlink traffic' dropdown and a 'Mbps' unit selector are also visible. The table shows three users with their respective IP addresses, names, online durations, and session counts.

No.	Ip	Name	Online Duration	Sessions	Flow Rate
1	192.168.110.3	192.168.110.3	16 hours 40 minutes 2 seconds	17	Downlink: 0.00Mbps, Uplink: 0.00Mbps
2	192.168.110.4	192.168.110.4	58 minutes 41 seconds	1	Downlink: 0.00Mbps, Uplink: 0.00Mbps
3	192.168.110.2	192.168.110.2	59 minutes 2 seconds	4	Downlink: 0.00Mbps, Uplink: 0.00Mbps

- b The system displays real-time traffic of users.
You can view the IP address, online duration, uplink traffic, and downlink traffic of each user.

If there are multiple users, the system displays traffic data by downlink traffic in descending order by default. The sorting mode can be switched based on uplink traffic or downlink traffic. You can set the traffic unit, number of items to be displayed on the current page, paging display, and other functions based on service requirements.

- c View traffic details of a user.



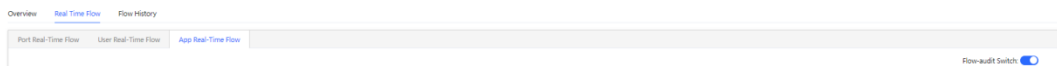
Note

Only EG3XX series devices (such as EG310G-E) support this function and **Flow-audit Switch** on the **App Real-time Traffic** tab page needs to be turned on.

Click **Detailed**. The pop-up page displays the uplink traffic and downlink traffic of each app used by the current user. You can set the sorting mode (by downlink traffic or uplink traffic), unit, and other parameters based on service requirements.

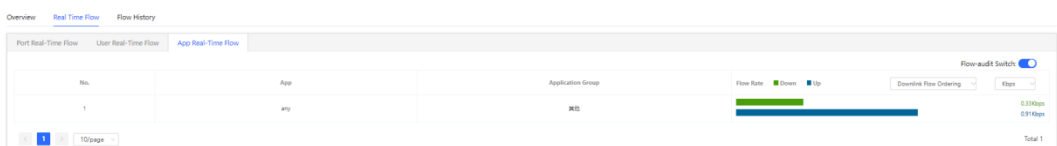


- (4) View real-time traffic of an app.
 - a Click the **App Real-time Traffic** tab.
 - b Turn on **Flow-audit Switch**.



- c The system displays real-time traffic of apps. You can view the name, application group, uplink traffic, and downlink traffic of each app.

If there are multiple apps, the system displays traffic data by downlink traffic in descending order by default. The sorting mode can be switched based on uplink traffic or downlink traffic. You can set the traffic unit, number of items to be displayed on the current page, paging display, and other functions based on service requirements.

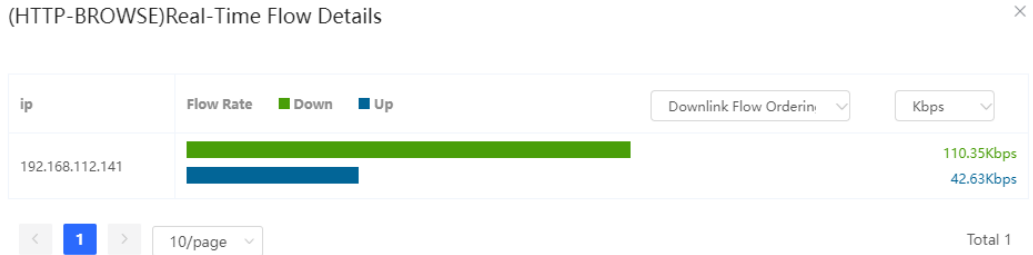


- d View traffic details of an app.

Note

Only EG3XX series devices (such as EG310G-E) support this function.

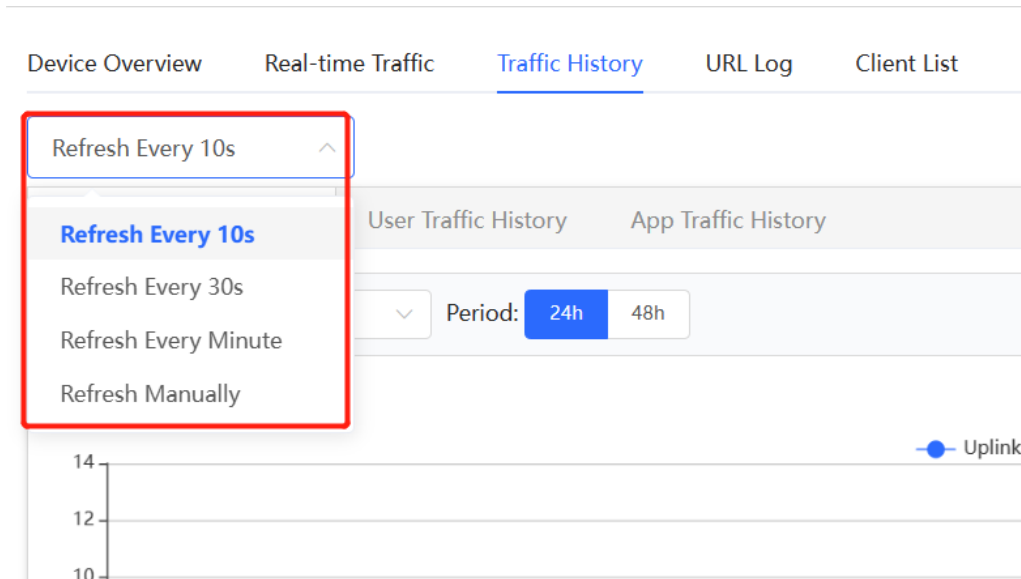
Click **Detailed**. The pop-up page displays details about the traffic of each user who uses the current app. You can set the sorting mode (by downlink traffic or uplink traffic), unit, and other parameters based on service requirements.



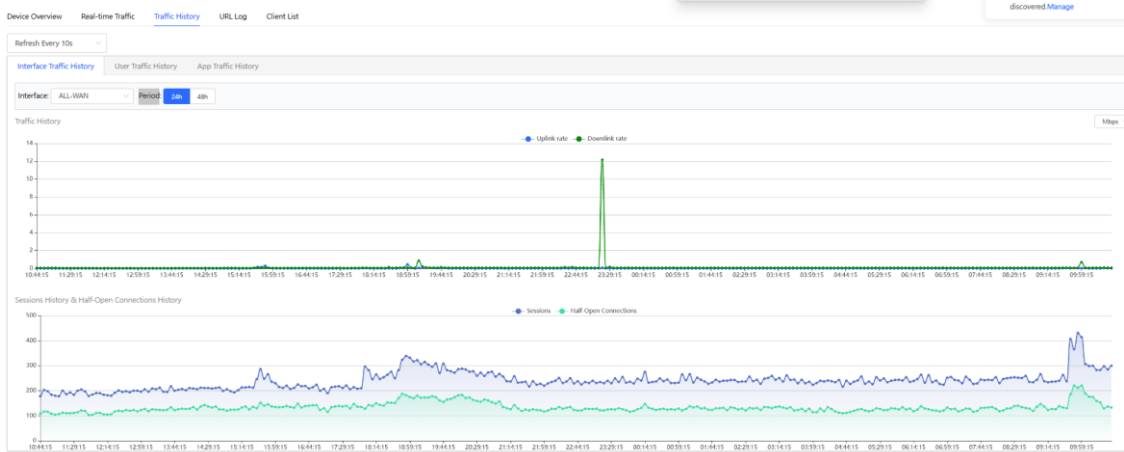
2.4.2 Viewing Historical Traffic

Choose **Local Device > Device Overview > Traffic History**

- (1) Set the refresh frequency.
Select a refresh frequency from the drop-down list.



- (2) View historical traffic of a port.
 - a Click the **Interface Traffic History** tab.
 - b Set **Interface** and **Period**.
Set **Interface** to a port or **ALL-WAN**. You can view the uplink or downlink traffic of a port or the system.
The system allows you to view historical data of 24 hours or 48 hours. Set **Period** and **Interface**. The system displays historical data of a port or all ports in the current time span.



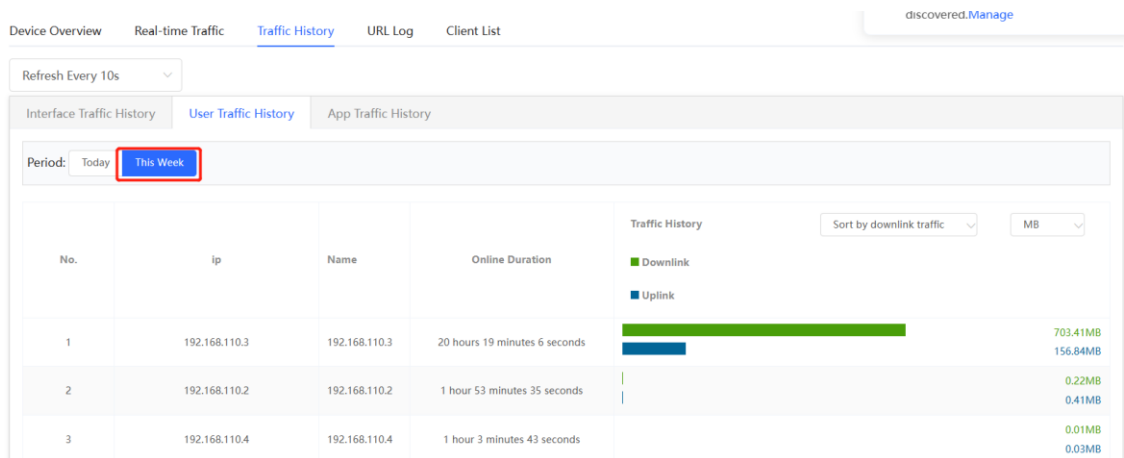
Note

Uplink traffic and downlink traffic are color-coded in the figure. You can move the cursor over a curve to view uplink traffic and downlink traffic at a certain time.

(3) View historical traffic of a user.

- a Click the **User Traffic History** tab.
- b Set **Period**.

On the **User Traffic History** tab page, you can view today's or this week's historical traffic data of a user. For example, you can click **This Week** to switch to this week's data statistics display page, as shown in the figure below.



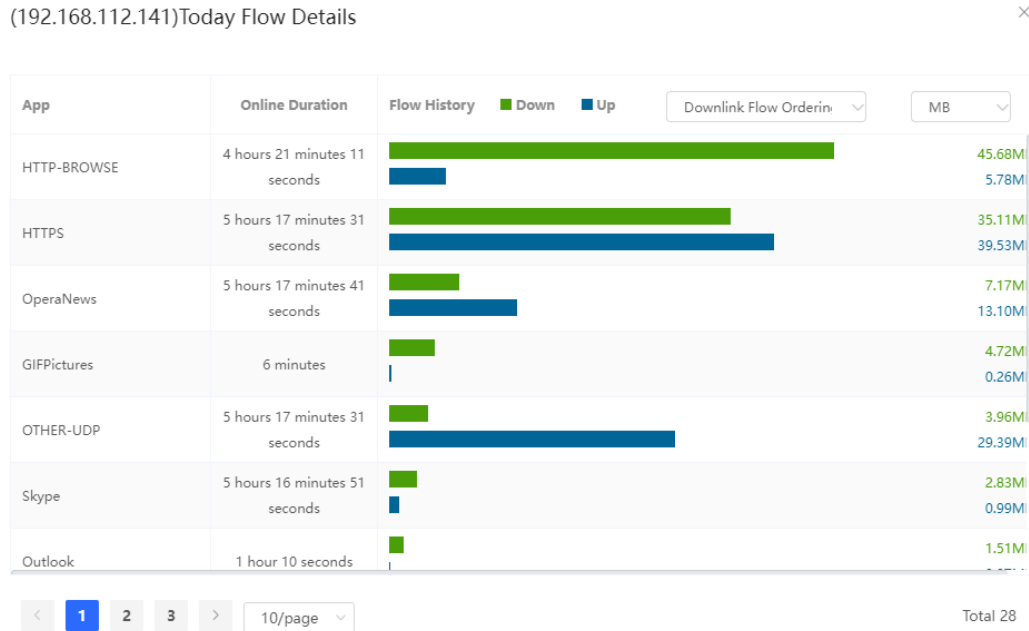
If there are multiple users, the system displays traffic data by downlink traffic in descending order by default. You can view the online duration, uplink traffic, and downlink traffic of each user in the time span. The sorting mode can be switched based on uplink traffic or downlink traffic. You can set the traffic unit, number of items to be displayed on the current page, paging display, and other functions based on service requirements.

- c View traffic details of apps used by a user.

Note

Only EG3XX series devices (such as EG310G-E) support this function and **Flow-audit Switch** on the **App Flow History** tab page needs to be turned on.

Click **Detailed**. The pop-up page displays the traffic and online duration of each app used by the current user. You can set the sorting mode (by downlink traffic or uplink traffic), unit, and other parameters based on service requirements.



- (4) View historical traffic of an app.
 - a Click the **App Flow History** tab.
 - b Turn on **Flow-audit Switch**.

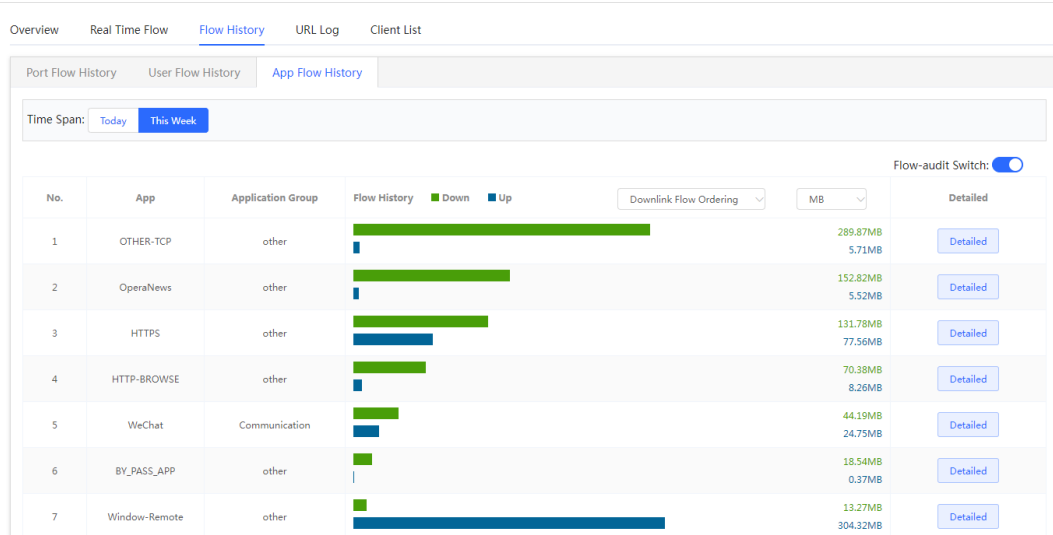
i Note

The status of **Flow-audit Switch** is consistent with that of **Flow-audit Switch** on the **App Real-Time Flow** page. After it is turned on, the app real-time flow function and app flow history function are enabled.

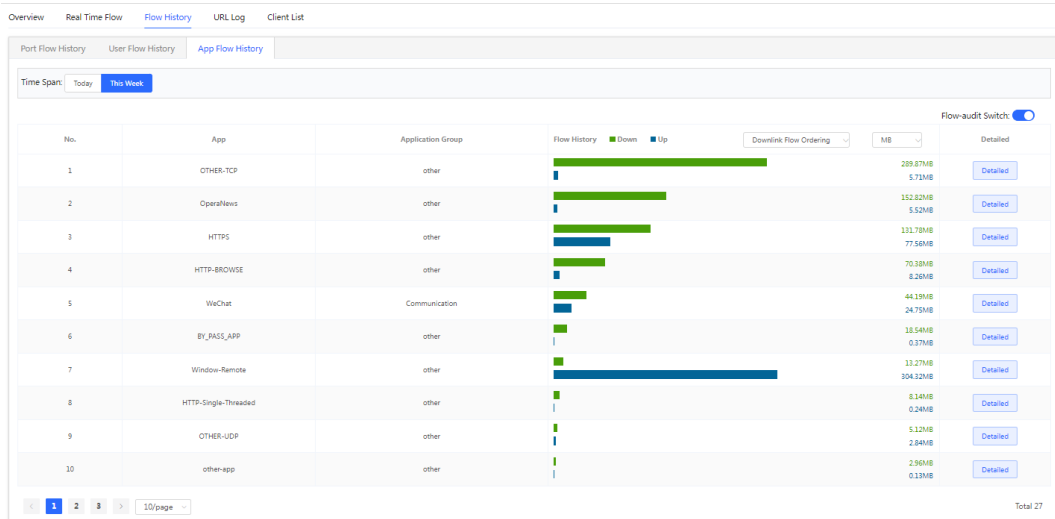
- c Set the time span.

On the **App Flow History** tab page, you can view today's or this week's historical user data.

For example, you can click **This Week** to switch to this week's data statistics display page, as shown in the figure below.



If there are multiple apps, the system displays traffic data by downlink traffic in descending order by default. You can view the name, application group, uplink traffic, and downlink traffic of each app in the time span. The sorting mode can be switched based on uplink traffic or downlink traffic. You can set the traffic unit, number of items to be displayed on the current page, paging display, and other functions based on service requirements.



d View traffic details of an app.



Note

Only EG3XX series devices (such as EG310G-E) support this function.

Click **Detailed**. The pop-up page displays details about the traffic of each user who uses the current app. You can set the sorting mode (by downlink traffic or uplink traffic), unit, and other parameters based on service requirements.

(MICROSOFT-DS)Today Flow Details

ip	Online Duration	Flow History	Downlink Flow Orderin	MB
192.168.111.9	10 hours 58 minutes 37 seconds			17.11MB 9.21MB
192.168.111.23	10 hours 58 minutes 37 seconds			6.74MB 2.47MB
192.168.111.11	1 hour 4 minutes 48 seconds			0.80MB 0.64MB
192.168.111.26	59 minutes 22 seconds			0.01MB 0.01MB

< 1 > 10/page Total 4

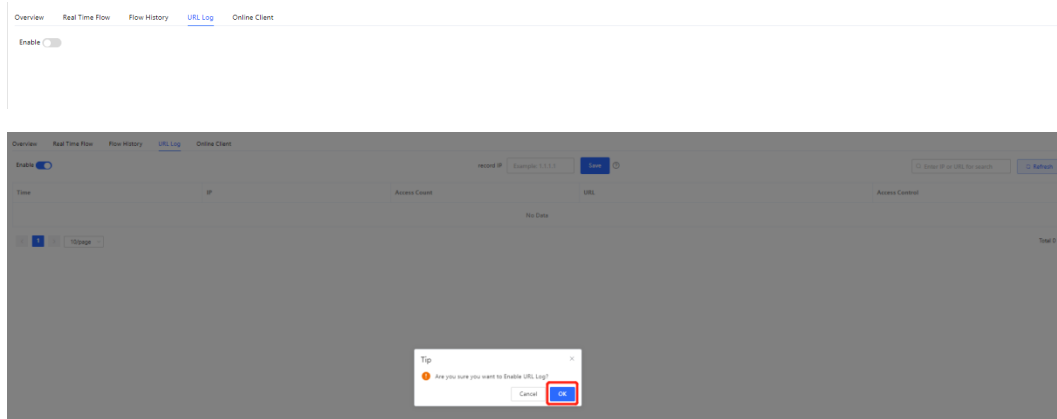
2.5 Supporting the URL Logging Function

URL logs record and display website domain names accessed by devices connected to LAN ports within a certain minute, access count, and audit results.

Note
Only EG3XX series devices (such as EG310G-E) support this function.

Choose **Local Device > Device Overview > URL Log**.

- Enable the URL logging function.
Click **Enable** and then click **OK**.



- (Optional) Configure **record IP**.
The system records access records of all devices connected to LAN ports by default. If you need to view access records of a single device, set **record IP**.
Enter the device IP address in **record IP** and click **Save**.

Device Overview Real-time Traffic Traffic History **URL Log** Client List

Enable Record IP Only Example: 1.1.1.1 Save

Time	IP	Access Count	URL	Action
No Data				

< 1 > 10/page Total 0

Note
 If you need to restore access records of all devices connected to LAN ports, clear information in **Record IP Only** and click **Save**.

- (3) Check access records.
 The system displays detailed access records, including the time, IP address.
 You can search for access records by IP address or URL.

Device Overview Real-time Traffic Traffic History **URL Log** Client List

Enable Record IP Only Example: 1.1.1.1 Save

Time	IP	Access Count	URL	Action
2023-05-11 14:35	192.168.110.3	1	https://mon.zijieapi.com	Allow
2023-05-11 14:35	192.168.110.3	1	https://s3-imfile.feishucdn.com	Allow
2023-05-11 14:35	192.168.110.3	1	https://downloads.dell.com	Allow
2023-05-11 14:35	192.168.110.3	1	https://array001.prod.do.dsp.mp.microsoft.com	Allow
2023-05-11 14:35	192.168.110.3	1	https://content-autofill.googleapis.com	Allow

< 1 > 10/page Total 5

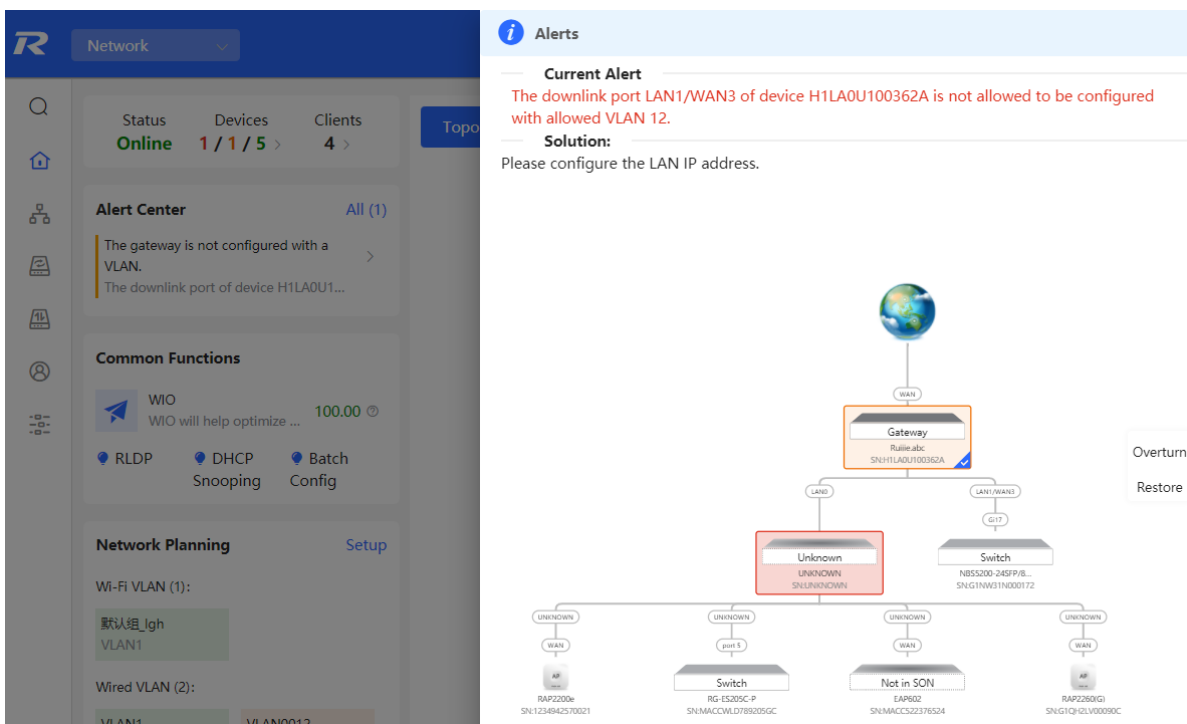
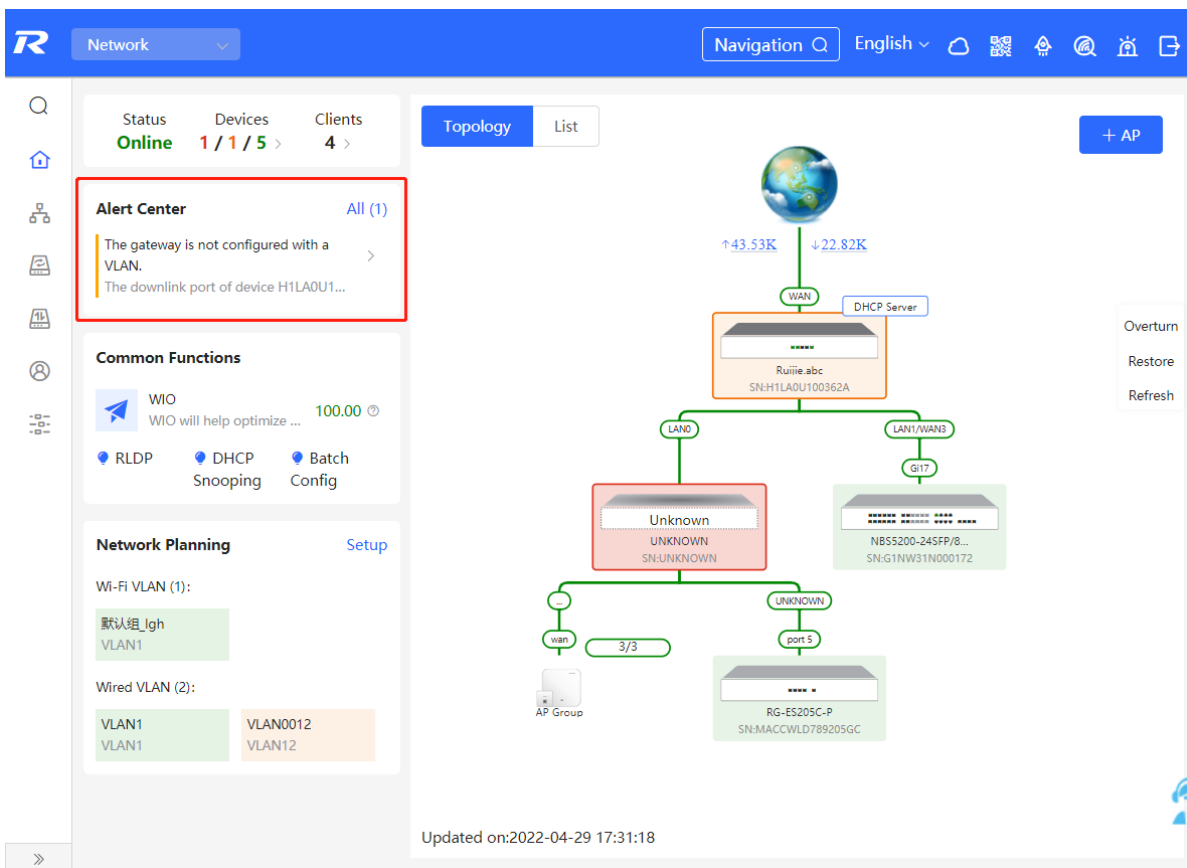
Device Overview Real-time Traffic Traffic History **URL Log** Client List

Enable Record IP Only Example: 1.1.1.1 Save

Time	IP	Access Count	URL	Action
2023-05-11 14:36	192.168.110.3	1	http://182.254.116.117	Allow
2023-05-11 14:36	192.168.110.3	1	http://182.254.116.117	Allow
2023-05-11 14:36	192.168.110.3	1	http://182.254.116.117	Allow
2023-05-11 14:36	192.168.110.3	1	http://182.254.116.117	Allow
2023-05-11 14:36	192.168.110.3	1	http://182.254.116.117	Allow
2023-05-11 14:36	192.168.110.3	1	http://182.254.116.117	Allow
2023-05-11 14:36	192.168.110.3	1	https://dellupdater.dell.com	Allow

2.6 Processing Alerts

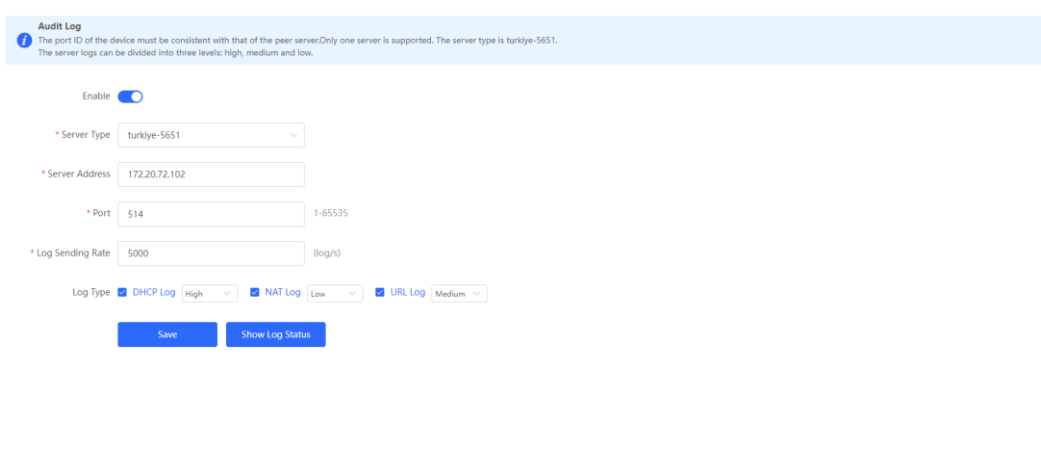
If a network exception occurs, alert message on this exception and the corresponding solution are displayed on the **Overview** page. Click the alert message in the **Alert Center** section to view the faulty device, problem details, and its solution. Troubleshoot and process the alert according to the solution.



2.7 Configuring the Audit Log

After the audit log function is enabled and configured, the system will generate the DHCP lease time logs, URL logs of online users, and NAT logs.

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Audit Log**.



- (1) Click **Enable** to enable the audit log function.

Note

The system will clear the logs if you enable the audit log function and then disable it.

- (2) Configure the following parameters related to the audit log function.

Parameter	Description
Server Type	Configure the log output format. Currently DHCP logs, URL logs and NAT logs only support Türkiye-5651 mode.
Server Address	Configure the log server address. Only IPv4 addresses are supported.
Port	Configure the server port ID, which can be customized. The default port ID is 514.
Log Sending Rate	Configure the log sending rate at which the device sends the audit logs to the server. The default rate is 5000 logs per second and the customized rate ranges from 1 to 10000 logs per second.
Log Type	Configure the log type sent to the server, including DHCP logs, NAT logs and URL logs. You can specify the sending priority for the logs: High, Medium, and Low. If the log type is in the high-priority list, its cache line will be prioritized and the logs will be sent to the server preferentially.

- (3) Click **Save**.

Click **Show Log Status** to view the status of the audit log function, including the server IP address, server connection status, sending history of each log type (including the logs in the three statuses: Received, Sent, and Discarded).

The screenshot displays the 'Show Log Status' interface. It features a vertical grey bar on the left side. The main content area shows the following information:

- Server: 192.168.111.2:514
- Server Type: turkiye-5651
- Server Status: Connected
- Log Sending Rate: 5000 (log/s)

Log Type	Received	Sent	Discarded
NAT Log	4889	4889	0
DHCP Log	12	12	0
URL Log	1739	1739	0

At the bottom right, there are two blue buttons: 'Refresh' and 'Cancel'.

3 Network Settings

3.1 Switching the Work Mode

3.1.1 Work Mode

For details, see Section [1.4 Work Mode](#).

3.1.2 Self-Organizing Network Discovery

When setting the work mode, you can set whether to enable the self-organizing network discovery function. This function is enabled by default.

After the self-organizing network discovery function is enabled, the device can be discovered in the network and discover other devices in the network. Devices network with each other based on the device status and synchronize global configuration. You can log in to the Web management page of any device in the network to check information about all devices in the network. After this function is enabled, clients can maintain and manage the current network more efficiently. You are advised to keep this function enabled.

If the self-organizing network discovery function is disabled, the device will not be discovered in the network and it runs in standalone mode. After logging in to the Web page, you can configure and manage only the currently logged in device. If only one device is configured or global configuration does not need to be synchronized to the device, you can disable the self-organizing network discovery function.

Note

In AC mode, the self-organizing network discovery function is enabled by default.

After the self-organizing network discovery function is enabled, you can view the self-organizing role of the device on the Device Details page.

The menus on the Web page vary depending on whether the self-organizing network discovery function is enabled. (For details, see Section [1.7 Switching Between Management Pages](#).) Find the configuration entry for this function according to the instructions in Configuration Steps below.

3.1.3 Configuration Steps

Choose **Local Device** > **Device Overview** > **Device Overview** > **Device Details**.

Click the current work mode to edit the work mode.

Caution

After you switch the work mode, the device will restore factory settings and restart. Please proceed with caution.

Device Details

Device Model: EG310G-E	Device Name: Ruijie	SN: MACCEG310GE99
MAC Address: 00:D0:F8:18:66:49	Working Mode: Router	Role: Master AC
Hardware Version: 1.00	Software Version: ReyeeOS 1.225.1704	

AC function switch: If a device works in the router mode and the self-organizing network discovery function is enabled, you can enable or disable the AC function. After the AC function is enabled, the device in the router

mode supports the virtual AC function and can manage downlink devices. If this function is disabled, the device needs to be elected as an AC in self-organizing network mode and then manage downlink devices.

Description:

1. The device IP address may change upon mode change.
2. Change the endpoint IP address and ping the device.
3. Enter the new IP address into the address bar of the browser to access EWEB.
4. The system menu varies with different work modes.

Work Mode ?

Self-Organizing ? **Tip**

Network

AC ?

3.1.4 Viewing the Self-Organizing Role

Choose **Local Device > Device Overview > Device Overview > Device Details**.

After the self-organizing network discovery function is enabled, you can view the self-organizing role of the device on the **Device Details** page.

Master AP/AC: The device functions as an AC to manage downlink devices.

Slave AP: The device connects to the AC in self-organizing mode and is managed by the AC. Slave APs are uniformly managed by the master AP/AC. Some wireless network configurations cannot be modified separately in local mode, and must be delivered by the master AP/AC.

Device Details		
Device Model: EG310G-E	Device Name: Ruijie	SN: MACCEG310GE99
MAC Address: 00:D0:F8:18:66:49	Working Mode: Router	Role: Master AC
Hardware Version: 1.00	Software Version: ReyeeOS 1.225.1704	

3.2 Port Settings

You can choose **Port Settings** to set port parameters and view the port information.

3.2.1 Setting the Port Parameters

Choose **Local Device > Network > Port Settings > Basics**.

Basics [Port Info](#)

Port Settings
Configure port status, duplex mode, rate and flow control.

Port List

Port	Status	Duplex Mode/Rate		Flow Control		Action
		Config Status	Actual Status	Config Status	Actual Status	
LAN0	Enable	Auto/Auto	Unknown/Unknown	Disable	Unknown	Edit
LAN1/WAN3	Enable	Auto/Auto	Unknown/Unknown	Disable	Unknown	Edit
LAN2/WAN2	Enable	Auto/Auto	Unknown/Unknown	Disable	Unknown	Edit
LAN3/WAN1	Enable	Auto/Auto	Unknown/Unknown	Disable	Unknown	Edit
WAN	Enable	Auto/Auto	Full-Duplex/100M	Disable	Disable	Edit

(1) Choose the target port and click **Edit**.

Port:LAN0 ✕

Status:

Rate:

Work Mode:

Flow Control:

(2) Set the port parameters and click **OK**.

3.2.2 Viewing the Port Information

Choose **Local Device > Network > Port Settings > Port Info**.

Basics [Port Info](#) [Clear All](#)

The flow data will be updated every 5 minutes. [Refresh](#)

Port	Rate	Rx/Tx Speed (kbps)	Rx/Tx Bytes	Rx/Tx Packets	CRC/FCS Error Packets	Corrupted/Oversized Packets	Conflicts
LAN0	Disconnected	0/0	0.00/0.00	0/0	0/0	0/0	0
LAN1/WAN3	Disconnected	0/0	882.06K/1.19M	5257/4578	0/0	0/0	0
LAN2/WAN2	Disconnected	0/0	0.00/0.00	0/0	0/0	0/0	0
LAN3/WAN1	Disconnected	0/0	0.00/0.00	0/0	0/0	0/0	0
WAN	100M	8/0	9.34M/2.76M	62191/10698	0/0	0/0	0

3.3 Configuring the WAN Ports

Choose **Local Device > Network > WAN**.

You can configure multi-line access for the device to allow multiple lines to work simultaneously. After you switch to multi-line access, you need to specify the egress provider of the lines and set the load balancing mode, in addition to setting basic network parameters for the WAN ports.

 Caution

The number of lines supported varies with the product. The actual configuration prevails.

3.3.1 Configuring the Internet Access Mode

Choose **Local Device > Network > WAN > WAN0**.

The device can access the WAN in one of the following three methods: static IP, DHCP, and PPPoE dialing. Select a proper method based on the actual broadband line type. For details, see Section [1.5 Configuration Wizard \(Router Mode\)](#).

i
WAN

network.lines

Three Lines

Four Lines

WAN0

WAN1

Load Settings

Line Detection

* Internet

DHCP
▼

No username or password is required for DHCP clients.

IP Address 10.52.48.153

Subnet Mask 255.255.248.0

Gateway 10.52.48.1

DNS Server 192.168.58.94

----- Advanced Settings -----

Save

3.3.2 Modifying the MAC Address

Choose **Local Device > Network > WAN > WAN0 > Advanced Settings**.

Sometimes, the provider restricts Internet access of devices with unknown MAC addresses out of security considerations. In this case, you can change the MAC addresses of the WAN ports to valid MAC addresses.

Click **Advanced Settings**, enter a MAC address, and click **Save**. You do not need to modify the default MAC address unless otherwise specified.

----- Advanced Settings -----

* MTU Range: 576-1500. [MTU Detection](#)

* MAC Address

802.1Q Tag

Private Line ?

NAT Mode ?

3.3.3 Modifying the MTU

Choose **Local Device > Network > WAN > WAN0 > Advanced Settings**.

1. Modifying the MTU

MTU specifies the maximum transmission unit allowed to pass a WAN port. By default, the MTU of a WAN port is 1500 bytes. Sometimes, large data packets are limited in transmission speed or prohibited in the ISP network, leading to slow network speed or even network disconnection. If this occurs, you can set the MTU to a smaller value.

----- Advanced Settings -----

* MTU Range: 576-1500. [MTU Detection](#)

* MAC Address

802.1Q Tag

Private Line ?

NAT Mode ?

If the MTU value is unknown, click **MTU Detection** to configure the one-click MTU detection, and adjust the MTU settings based on the results obtained from MTU detection.

2. Detecting the MTU

Click **MTU Detection** to configure the one-click MTU detection to determine the MTU between two communication devices.

Enter the destination IP/domain name, retry count, ICMP echo request timeout, minimum MTU, maximum MTU, and click **Start** to start the detection.

×

MTU Detection

* IP Address/Domain

* Retry Count

* ICMP Echo Request s
Timeout

* Min. MTU

* Max. MTU

Result

3.3.4 Configuring the Private Line

Choose **Local Device > Network > WAN > WAN0 > Advanced Settings**.

Turn on **Private Line** and determine whether to set the current WAN line as a private line. Generally, private lines are used for access to specific internal networks but not the Internet. Private lines provide higher network security.

----- Advanced Settings -----

* MTU Range: 576-1500. [MTU Detection](#)

* MAC Address

802.1Q Tag

Private Line ?

NAT Mode ?

3.3.5 Configuring the VLAN Tag

Choose **Local Device > Network > WAN > WAN0 > Advanced Settings**.

Some ISPs require that packets transmitted to their networks carry VLAN IDs. In this case, you can enable the VLAN tag function and set a **VLAN ID** and **Priority** for the WAN port. By default, the VLAN tag function is disabled. You are advised to keep the VLAN tag function disabled unless otherwise specified.

----- Advanced Settings -----

* MTU Range: 576-1500. [MTU Detection](#)

* MAC Address

802.1Q Tag

* VLAN ID

* Priority ▾

Private Line ?

NAT Mode ?

3.3.6 Configuring the Multi-Link Load Balancing Mode

Choose **Local Device > Network > WAN > Load Settings > Load Balancing Settings**.

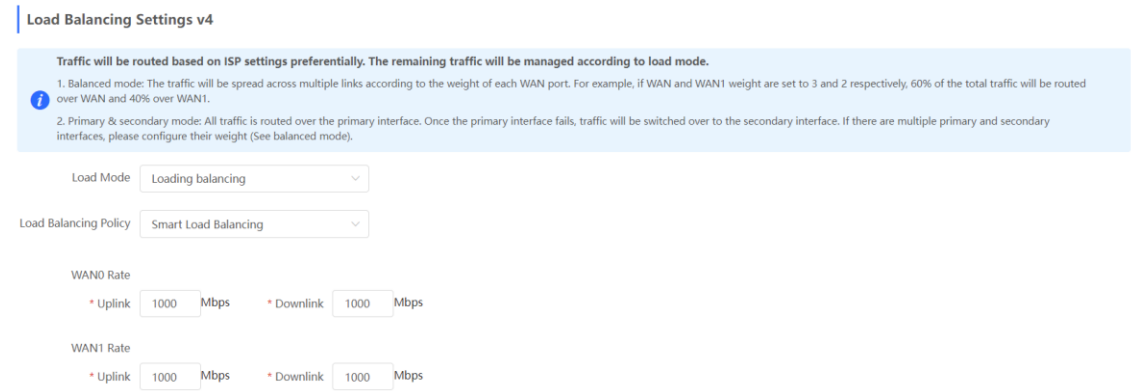
When multiple links are available, some traffic is forwarded along the link selected based on the address library and the remaining traffic is distributed to other links in load balancing mode.

Table 3-1 Load balancing modes

Load Balancing Mode	Description
Balanced	<p>The traffic will be distributed across multiple links according to the weight of each WAN port. Larger traffic will be distributed to the WAN port with a higher weight.</p> <p>When you select this mode, you must specify the weight of each WAN port. For example, if the weight of WAN and WAN 1 ports is set to 3 and 2 respectively, then, 60% of the total traffic will be routed over WAN and 40% over WAN 1.</p>
Primary & Secondary	<p>All traffic is routed over the primary interface. Once the primary interface fails, traffic will be switched over to the secondary interface.</p> <p>If there are multiple primary or secondary interfaces, the weight of these interfaces must be set. (See balanced mode.)</p>

The system supports IPv4 and IPv6 multi-link load balancing. IPv4 multi-link load balancing is enabled by default, while IPv6 multi-link load balancing needs to be enabled manually.

1. Configuring IPv4 Multi-Link Balancing



- (1) Select a load balancing mode from the **Load Mode** drop-down list.
- (2) Select a loading balancing policy from the **Load Balancing Policy** drop-down list.

Table 3-2 Description of Load Balancing Policies (IPv4)

Load Balancing Policy	Description
Based on Connections	After you enable this policy, the traffic is routed over multiple links based on the links. Packets with the same source IP address, destination IP address, source port, destination port, and protocol are routed over the same link.
Based on Src IP Address	After you enable this policy, the traffic is routed over multiple links based on the source IP address. The traffic from the same user (same source IP address) will be routed to the same interface. This policy prevents traffic from the same user from being routed to different links, lowering the risks of network access exceptions.
Based on Src and Dest IP Address	After you enable this policy, the traffic is routed over multiple links based on the source IP address and destination. The traffic of the same source IP address and destination IP address will be routed to the same interface.
Smart Load Balancing	After you enable this feature, the traffic is routed over multiple links based on the link bandwidth, the actual loads of the links, application recognition and traffic prediction.

(2) Set the uplink and downlink bandwidths or the weight for each WAN port.

- When the load balancing policy is set to **Based on Connections**, **Based on Src IP Address**, or **Based on Src and Dest IP Address**, a weight must be set for each WAN port.

 Note

The higher the value of the weight, the more traffic is directed to the WAN port.

Load Mode

Load Balancing Policy

If you fail to access online bank service, please select Based on Src IP Address.

* WAN0 Weight

* WAN1 Weight

- When the load balancing policy is set to **Smart Load Balancing**, the uplink and downlink bandwidths must be set for each WAN port.

Load Mode

Load Balancing Policy

WAN0 Rate

* Uplink Mbps * Downlink Mbps

WAN1 Rate

* Uplink Mbps * Downlink Mbps

(3) Click **Save**.

2. Configuring IPv6 Multi-Link Balancing

Load Balancing Settings v6

Traffic will be routed based on ISP settings preferentially. The remaining traffic will be managed according to load mode.

i 1. Balanced mode: The traffic will be spread across multiple links according to the weight of each WAN port. For example, if WAN and WAN1 weight are set to 3 and 2 respectively, 60% of the total traffic will be routed over WAN and 40% over WAN1.
 2. Primary & secondary mode: All traffic is routed over the primary interface. Once the primary interface fails, traffic will be switched over to the secondary interface. If there are multiple primary and secondary interfaces, please configure their weight (See balanced mode).

Enable

Load Mode

Load Balancing Policy
If you fail to access online bank service, please select Based on Src IP Address.

* WAN0 Weight

* WAN1 Weight

Save

- (1) Toggle on **Enable** to enable the IPv6 multi-link load balancing mode.
- (2) Select a load balancing mode from the **Load Mode** drop-down list.
- (3) Select a loading balancing policy from the **Load Balancing Policy** drop-down list.

Table 3-3 Description of Load Balancing Policies (IPv6)

Load Balancing Policy	Description
Based on Connections	After you enable this policy, the traffic is routed over multiple links based on the links. Packets with the same source IP address, destination IP address, source port, destination port, and protocol are routed over the same link.
Based on Src IP Address	After you enable this policy, the traffic is routed over multiple links based on the source IP address. The traffic from the same user (same source IP address) will be routed to the same interface. This policy prevents traffic from the same user from being routed to different links, lowering the risks of network access exceptions.

Load Balancing Policy	Description
Based on Src and Dest IP Address	After you enable this policy, the traffic is routed over multiple links based on the source IP address and destination. The traffic of the same source IP address and destination IP address will be routed to the same interface.

- (4) Set a weight for each WAN port.
The valid range of weight is 1 to 100000.

i Note
The higher the value of the weight, the more traffic is directed to the WAN port.

- (5) Click **Save**.

3.3.7 Configuring Link Detection

Choose **Local Device > Network > WAN > Line Detection**.

After configuring multiple WAN ports, use the link detection function to check whether lines are connected to the external network. If the network is down, the system does not select a route based on the interface, such as load balancing, policy-based routing, and ISP routing.

The system supports IPv4 and IPv6 WAN link detection, which can be enabled separately.

1. Configuring IPv4 WAN Link Detection

- (1) On the **IPv4 WAN Link Detection** page, toggle on **Enable** to enable IPv4 WAN link detection.
- (2) In the WAN port list, select a WAN port for link detection, and click **Edit**.

IPv4 WAN Link Detection


Enable

Interface	Detection Interval	Rounds for Going Online	Rounds for Going Offline	Detected Destination IP	Status	Action
WAN0	5s	8	3	114.114.114.114 www.baidu.com	Online	Edit
WAN1	5s	8	3	114.114.114.114 www.baidu.com	Offline	Edit

- (3) Configure the parameters of the link detection function.

Table 3-4 Link Detection

Parameter	Description
Detection Interval	The time interval of connectivity test.
Rounds for Going Online	The system periodically sends a ping message to a detection destination IP address at the specified interval. If the ping succeeds and the number of consecutive successful pings reaches the set number of Rounds for Going Online , the WAN port is set to be online.

Parameter	Description
Rounds for Going Offline	The system periodically sends a ping message to a detection destination IP address at the specified interval. If the ping fails and the number of consecutive unsuccessful pings reaches the set number of Rounds for Going Offline , the WAN port is set to be offline.
Detected Dest IP	<p>The destination IP address to which the system sends ping messages. You can set up to three destination IP addresses. The system sends ping messages to one of the IP addresses randomly during detection.</p> <hr/> <p> Note</p> <p>For RG-EG105G-V2 and RG-EG210G, the default destination IP address is 114.114.114.114, www.google.com, or 8.8.8.8.</p> <p>For other products, the default destination IP address is 114.114.114.114 or www.google.com.</p>

(4) Click **OK**.

3. Configuring IPv6 WAN Link Detection

- (1) On the **IPv6 WAN Link Detection** page, toggle on **Enable** to enable IPv6 WAN link detection.
- (2) In the WAN port list, select a WAN port for link detection, and click **Edit**.

IPv6 WAN Link Detection

Enable

Interface	Detection Interval	Rounds for Going Online	Rounds for Going Offline	Detected Destination IP	Status	Action
WAN0	5s	8	3	240c::6666 240c::6644 2400:3200:1	Offline	Edit
WAN1	5s	8	3	240c::6666 240c::6644 2400:3200:1	Offline	Edit

- (3) Configure the link detection parameters.

WAN0 Edit
×

* Detection Interval
(unit: s)

* Rounds for Going
Online

* Rounds for Going
Offline

Detected Destination IP	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="2001:4860:4860::8888"/>	Add
	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="2001:4860:4860::8844"/>	Delete

Parameter	Description
Detection Interval	The time interval of connectivity test.
Rounds for Going Online	The system periodically sends a ping message to a detection destination IP address at the specified interval. If the ping succeeds and the number of consecutive successful pings reaches the set number of Rounds for Going Online , the WAN port is set to be online.
Rounds for Going Offline	The system periodically sends a ping message to a detection destination IP address at the specified interval. If the ping fails and the number of consecutive unsuccessful pings reaches the set number of Rounds for Going Offline , the WAN port is set to be offline.
Detected Dest IP	The destination IP address (IPv6) to which the system sends ping messages. You can set up to three destination IP addresses. The system sends ping messages to one of the IP addresses randomly during detection.

(4) Click **OK**.

3.3.8 Configuring NAT Mode

Choose **Local Device > Network > WAN > WAN0 > Advanced Settings**.

When an intranet needs to communicate with an extranet, Network Address Translation (NAT) must be configured to convert the private IP address into a globally unique IP address, so that the private network can access the public network.

Toggle on **NAT Mode** to enable the NAT mode. When the NAT mode is disabled, this router operates in router mode to forward data packets, enabling mutual access between hosts connected to the LAN and the WAN ports of this router.

----- [Advanced Settings](#) -----

* MTU Range: 576-1500. [MTU Detection](#)


* MAC Address

802.1Q Tag

Private Line ?

NAT Mode ?

[Save](#)

 **Caution**
 Disabling NAT mode may potentially impact the functionality of the self-organizing network (SON) feature.

3.4 Configuring the LAN Ports

3.4.1 Modifying the LAN Port IP Address

Choose **Local Device > Network > LAN > LAN Settings**.

Click **Edit**. In the dialog box that appears, enter the IP address and subnet mask, and then click **OK**. After you modify the LAN port IP address, you need to enter the new IP address in the browser to log in to the device again before you can configure and manage this device.

[LAN Settings](#) DHCP Clients Static IP Addresses DHCP Option DNS Proxy

LAN Settings + Add Delete Selected

Up to 8 entries can be added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	IP	Subnet Mask	VLAN ID	Remark	DHCP Server	Start	IP Count	Lease Time(Min)	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	172.26.1.244	255.255.255.0	Default VLAN	-	Disabled	172.26.1.1	254	30	Edit Delete

Add×

* IP Address

* Subnet Mask

* VLAN ID

Remarks

MAC Address

DHCP Server

* Start IP Address

* IP Count

* Lease Time (Min)

DNS Server - ⓘ

3.4.2 Modifying the MAC Address

Choose **Local Device > Network > LAN > LAN Settings**.

If a static Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) entry (binding between IP address and MAC address of the gateway) is configured to prevent ARP attacks to clients in the LAN, the gateway IP address remains unchanged but its MAC address changes when the gateway is replaced. As a result, the client may fail to learn the gateway MAC address. You can modify the static ARP entry of the client to prevent this problem. You can also change the LAN port MAC address of the new device to the MAC address of the original device to allow clients in the LAN to access the Internet normally.

Click **Edit**. In the dialog box that appears, enter the MAC address, and then click **OK**. You do not need to modify the default LAN port MAC address unless otherwise specified.

Add×

* IP Address

* Subnet Mask

* VLAN ID

Remarks

MAC Address

DHCP Server

* Start IP Address

* IP Count

* Lease Time (Min)

DNS Server - ?

3.5 Configuring VLAN

3.5.1 VLAN Overview

Virtual Local Area Network (VLAN) is a communication technology that divides a physical LAN into multiple logical broadcast domains. Each VLAN has independent broadcast domains. Hosts in the same VLAN can directly communicate with each other, while hosts in different VLANs cannot as they are isolated at Layer 2. Compared with traditional Ethernet, VLAN has the following advantages:

- Control broadcast storms: Broadcast packets can only be forwarded inside a VLAN. This saves bandwidth as the performance of a VLAN is not affected by broadcast storms of other VLANs.

- Enhance LAN security: As a VLAN is divided into multiple broadcast domains, packets of different VLANs in a LAN are isolated. Different VLAN users cannot directly communicate, enhancing network security.
- Simplify network management: The VLAN technology can be used to divide the same physical network into different logical networks. When the network topology changes, you only need to modify the VLAN configuration, simplifying network management.

3.5.2 Creating a VLAN

Choose **Local Device > Network > LAN > LAN Settings**.

A LAN can be divided into multiple VLANs. Click **Add** and create a VLAN.

LAN Settings DHCP Clients Static IP Addresses DHCP Option DNS Proxy

LAN Settings + Add Delete Selected

Up to 8 entries can be added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	IP	Subnet Mask	VLAN ID	Remark	DHCP Server	Start	IP Count	Lease Time(Min)	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	172.26.1.244	255.255.255.0	Default VLAN	-	Disabled	172.26.1.1	254	30	Edit Delete

Add
×

* IP Address

* Subnet Mask

* VLAN ID

Remarks

MAC Address

DHCP Server

* Start IP Address

* IP Count

* Lease Time (Min)

DNS Server -

Table 3-5 VLAN Configuration

Parameter	Description
IP	Configure an IP address for the VLAN interface. This IP address is used as the default gateway for the LAN devices that need to access the Internet.
Subnet Mask	Configure an IP address subnet mask for the VLAN interface.
VLAN ID	Configure the VLAN ID.
Remark	Enter the VLAN description.

Parameter	Description
MAC Address	Configure an MAC address for the VLAN interface.
DHCP Server	Enable the DHCP server function. After this function is enabled, devices in the LAN can automatically obtain IP addresses. You also need to specify the start address for IP address allocation by the DHCP server, the number of IP addresses that can be allocated, and the address lease. You can also configure DHCP Options. For details, see Section 3.7.3 Configuring the DHCP Server .

 Caution

The VLAN configuration is associated with the uplink configuration. Exercise caution when you perform this operation.



3.5.3 Configuring a Port VLAN

Choose **Local Device > Network > Port VLAN**.

This page displays the VLAN division of the current port. Create VLANs on the **LAN Settings** page and then configure the port based on the VLANs on this page. For details, see Section [3.4.2 Creating a VLAN](#).








Click the check box under a port and select the relationship between VLAN and port from the drop-down list box.

- **UNTAG:** Configure the VLAN as the native VLAN of the port. When the port receives packets from the specified VLAN, the port removes the VLAN ID before forwarding the packets. When the port receives packets without a VLAN ID, the port adds this VLAN ID to the packets before forwarding them. You can set only one VLAN of the port to UNTAG.
- **TAG:** Configure the port to allow packets with this VLAN ID to pass. This VLAN is not the native VLAN. When the port receives packets from the specified VLAN, it forwards the packets with the original VLAN ID.
- **Not Join:** Configure the port to deny packets with this VLAN ID to pass. For example, if you set VLAN 10 and VLAN 20 to **Not Join** for port 2, port 2 will not receive packets from VLAN 10 and VLAN 20.

 **Port VLAN**
Please choose [LAN Settings](#) to create a VLAN first and configure port settings based on the VLAN. 

Port VLAN

Connected Disconnected

							
	Port 0	Port 1	Port 2	Port 3	Port 4	Port 5	Port 6
Default VLAN	UNTAG	UNTAG	UNTAG	TAG	UNTAG	UNTAG	UNTAG
VLAN 10	TAG	TAG	TAG	Not Join	TAG	TAG	TAG
	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;"> <p>TAG</p> <p>UNTAG</p> </div>						
	<input type="button" value="Save"/>						

3.6 Configuring Rate Test

i Note

Only EG3XX series devices (such as EG310GH-E) support this function.

You can use the rate test function to easily monitor the transmission rate of individual ports. In the case of ports with low transmission rates, you can identify and address potential issues to ensure that service quality remains high.

Choose **Local Device > Network > Rate Test**.

i Rate Test

Available WAN0 WAN1

Start Test

WAN0 WAN1

Latency/ms: 0 Jitter/ms: 0 Packet loss/%: 0

0 Mbps

- (1) Select the WAN port to be tested. You can click **Select All** to select all WAN ports for the rate test.
- (2) Click **Start Test**.

After the rate test is complete, the system will display the test results, including latency, jitter, and packet loss.


3.7 Configuring DNS

3.7.1 Local DNS

When the WAN interface runs DHCP or PPPoE protocol, the device automatically obtains the DNS server address. If the upper-layer device does not deliver the DNS server address or the DNS server needs to be changed, you can manually configure a new DNS server.

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Local DNS**.

Local DNS server: Configure the DNS server address used by the local device. If multiple addresses exist, separate them with spaces.

 The device will get the DNS server address from the uplink device.

Local DNS server

3.7.2 DNS Proxy


DNS proxy is optional configuration. By default, the device obtains the DNS server address from the upper-layer device.

Choose **Local Device > Network > LAN > LAN Settings**.

DNS Proxy: By default, the DNS proxy is disabled, and the DNS address delivered by the ISP is used. If the DNS configuration is incorrect, the device may fail to parse domain names and network access will fail. It is recommended to keep the DNS proxy disabled.

DNS Server: Enable clients to access the Internet by using the DNS server address delivered by the upper-layer device. The default settings are recommended. After the DNS proxy is enabled, you need to enter the DNS server IP address. The DNS settings vary with the region. Consult the local ISP for details.

LAN Settings DHCP Clients Static IP Addresses DHCP Option DNS Proxy

 DNS proxy is not required. The device will obtain the DNS server address from the uplink device by default.

Enable

* DNS Server

3.8 Configuring IPv6

3.8.1 IPv6 Overview

Internet Protocol Version 6 (IPv6) is the next-generation IP protocol designed by Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) to substitute IPv4. It is used to compensate insufficient IPv4 network addresses.

3.8.2 IPv6 Basics

1. IPv6 Address Format

IPv6 extends 32-bit IPv4 address into 128 bits, providing wider address space than IPv4.

The basic format of an IPv6 address is X:X:X:X:X:X:X. It is represented as eight groups of four hexadecimal digits (0-9, A-F), each group representing 16 bits. The groups are separated by colons (:). In this format, each X represents a group of four hexadecimal digits.

Samples of IPv6 addresses are 2001:ABCD:1234:5678:AAAA:BBBB:1200:2100, 800:0:0:0:0:0:1, and 1080:0:0:0:8:800:200C:417A.

The digit 0 in an IPv6 address can be suppressed as follows:

- Leading zeros in each 16-bit field are suppressed. For example, 2001:00CD:0034:0078:000A:000B:1200:2100 can be suppressed to 2001:CD:34:78:A:B:1200:2100.
- The long sequence of consecutive all-zero fields in some IPv6 addresses can be replaced with two colons (::). For example, 800:0:0:0:0:0:0:1 can be represented as 800::1. The two colons (::) can be used only when all the 16 bits in a group are 0s, and it can appear only once in an IPv6 address.

2. IPv6 Prefix

IPv6 addresses are typically composed of two logical parts:

- Network prefix: n bits, corresponding to the network ID in IPv4 addresses
- interface ID: $(128 - n)$ bits, corresponding to the host ID in IPv4 addresses

A slash (/) is used to separate the length of network prefix from an IPv6 address. For example, 12AB::CD30:0:0:0/60 indicates that the 60-bit network prefix in the address is used for route selection. IPv6 prefixes can be obtained from the IPv6 DHCP server, along with IPv6 addresses. A downlink DHCP server can also automatically obtain IPv6 prefixes from its uplink DHCP server.

3. Special IPv6 Addresses

There are some special IPv6 addresses:

fe80::/8: loopback address, similar to the IPv4 address 169.254.0.0/16

fc00::/7: local address, similar to IPv4 addresses 10.0.0.0/8, 172.16.0.0/16, and 192.168.0.0/16

ff00::/12: multicast address, similar to the IPv4 address 224.0.0.0/8

4. NAT66

IPv6-to-IPv6 Network Address Translation (NAT66) is a process of converting the IPv6 address in the IPv6 data packet header into another IPv6 address. NAT66 can be implemented by converting the prefix in an IPv6 address

in an IPv6 data packet header into another IPv6 address prefix. NAT66 enables mutual access between an internal network and an external public network.

3.8.3 IPv6 Address Allocation Modes


- Manual configuration: IPv6 addresses, prefixes, and other network parameters are configured manually.
- Stateless Address Autoconfiguration (SLAAC): The link-local address is generated based on the interface ID, and the IPv6 address is automatically allocated based on the prefix information in the Router Advertisement (RA) packet.
- Stateful address allocation (DHCPv6): Two DHCPv6 allocation methods are as follows:
 - Automatic DHCPv6 allocation: The DHCPv6 server automatically allocates IPv6 addresses, prefixes, and other network parameters.
 - Automatic allocation of DHCPv6 Prefix Delegations (PDs): The lower-layer network device submits a prefix allocation application to the upper-layer network device. The upper-layer network device allocates an appropriate address prefix to the lower-layer device. The lower-layer device further divides the obtained prefix (usually less than 64 bits) into 64-bit prefixed subnet segments and advertises the address prefixes to the user link directly connected to the IPv6 host through the RA packet, implementing automatic address configuration for hosts.

3.8.4 Enabling the IPv6 Function

Choose **Local Device** > **Network** > **IPv6 Address**.

Turn on **Enable** to enable the IPv6 function.

IPv6 Address

 1. When IPv6 is enabled, The MTU of IPV4 WAN port need higher than 1280.
2. If you want to set more than one IPv6 LAN, please choose Port VLAN to set only one VLAN to UNTAG and set the other VLANs to Not Join.

Enable

3.8.5 Configuring an IPv6 Address for the WAN Port

Choose **Local Device** > **Network**> **IPv6 Address** > **WAN Settings**.

After you enable the IPv6 function, you can set related parameters on the **WAN Settings** tab. The number of **WAN_V6** tabs indicates the number of WAN ports on the current device.

Enable

[WAN Settings](#) LAN Settings DHCPv6 Clients

WAN_V6

* Internet

No username or password is required for DHCP clients.

IPv6 Address

IPv6 Prefix

Gateway

DNS Server

NAT66

----- Advanced Settings -----

* Default Preference

Table 3-6 IPv6 address configuration for WAN port

Parameter	Description
Internet	Configure a method for the WAN port to obtain an IPv6 address. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● DHCP: The current device functions as the DHCPv6 client, and it applies for an IPv6 address and prefix from the uplink network device. ● Static IP: You need to manually configure a static IPv6 address, gateway address, and DNS server. ● Null: The IPv6 function is disabled on the WAN port.
IPv6 Address	When Internet is set to DHCP , the automatically obtained IPv6 address is displayed. When Internet is set to Static IP , you need to configure this parameter manually.
IPv6 Prefix	When Internet is set to DHCP , the IPv6 address prefix automatically obtained by the current device is displayed.

Parameter	Description
Gateway	When Internet is set to DHCP , the automatically obtained gateway address is displayed. When Internet is set to Static IP , you need to configure this parameter manually.
DNS Server	When Internet is set to DHCP , the automatically obtained DNS server address is displayed. When Internet is set to Static IP , you need to configure this parameter manually.
NAT66	If the current device cannot access the Internet through DHCP or cannot obtain the IPv6 prefix, you need to enable the NAT66 function to allocate IPv6 addresses to clients on the internal network.
Default Preference	Set the default route preference for the current line. A smaller value indicates a higher preference. For the same destination address, the route with the highest preference is selected as the optimal route.

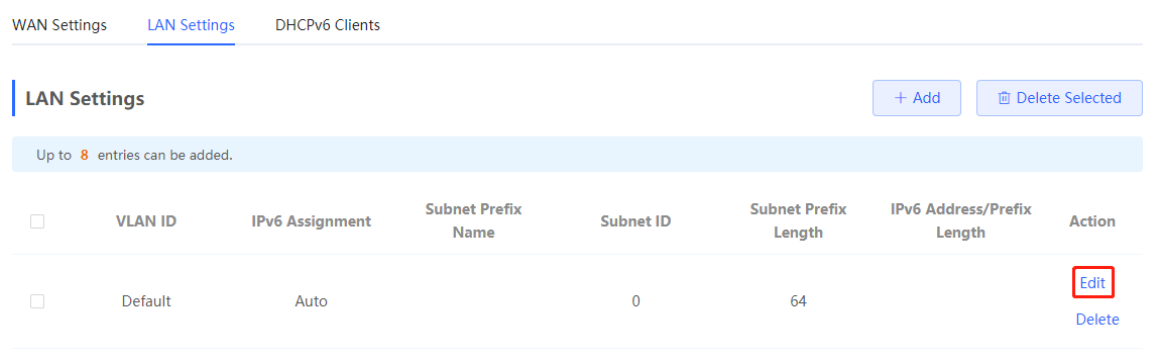
 Caution

The RG-EG105G and RG-EG105G-P does not support the NAT66 function.

3.8.6 Configuring an IPv6 Address for the LAN Port

Choose **Local Device** > **Network** > **IPv6 Address** > **LAN Settings**.

When the device accesses the Internet through DHCP, it can obtain LAN port IPv6 addresses from the uplink device and allocate IPv6 addresses to the clients in the LAN based on the IPv6 address prefix. If the uplink device cannot allocate an IPv6 address prefix to the device, you need to manually configure an IPv6 address prefix for the LAN port and enable the NAT66 function to allocate IPv6 addresses to the clients in the LAN. For details, see Section [3.6.5 Configuring an IPv6 Address for the WAN Port](#).



Click **Edit** next to the default VLAN, and set **IPv6 Address/Prefix Length** to a local address with no more than 64 bits. This address is also used as the IPv6 address prefix.

You can use either of the following methods to allocate IPv6 addresses to clients:

- **Auto**: Allocate IPv6 addresses to clients in DHCPv6 or SLAAC mode.

- **DHCPv6**: Allocate IPv6 addresses to clients through DHCPv6.
- **SLAAC**: Allocate IPv6 addresses to clients through SLAAC.
- **Null**: Do not allocate addresses to clients.

You should select an allocation method based on the protocol supported by clients on the internal network. If you are not sure about the supported protocol, select **Auto**.

Edit ×

IPv6 Assignment ?

IPv6 Address/Prefix ?

Length

----- [Advanced Settings](#) -----

Click **Advanced Settings** to configure more address attributes.

Edit ×

IPv6 Assignment ?

IPv6 Address/Prefix ?

Length

----- [Advanced Settings](#) -----

Subnet Prefix Name ?

Subnet Prefix Length ?

Subnet ID ?

* Lease Time(Min) ?

DNS Server


Table 3-7 IPv6 address configuration for LAN port

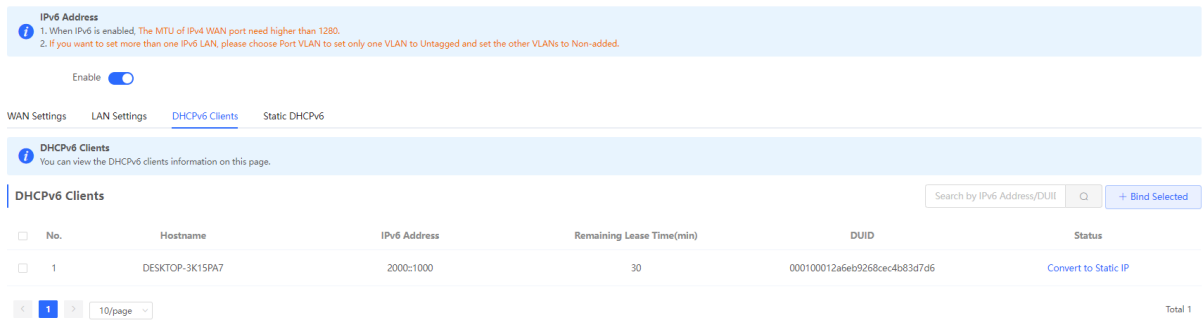
Parameter	Description
Subnet Prefix Name	Specify the interface from which the prefix is obtained, such as WAN_V6 or WAN1_V6 . By default, the device obtains prefixes from all interfaces.
Subnet Prefix Length	Specify the length of the subnet prefix. The value is in the range of 48 to 64.
Subnet ID	Configure the subnet ID in the hexadecimal format. The value 0 indicates auto increment.
Lease Time(Min)	Set the lease of the IPv6 address, in minutes.
DNS Server	Configure the IPv6 DNS server address.

3.8.7 Viewing the DHCPv6 Client

Choose **Local Device > Network > IPv6 Address > DHCPv6 Clients**.

When the device functions as a DHCPv6 server to allocate IPv6 addresses to clients, you can view the information about the client that obtains an IPv6 address from the device on the current page. The client information includes the host name, IPv6 address, remaining lease time, and DHCPv6 Unique Identifier (DUID).

Enter the DUID in the search bar and click  to quickly find relative information of the specified DHCPv6 client.

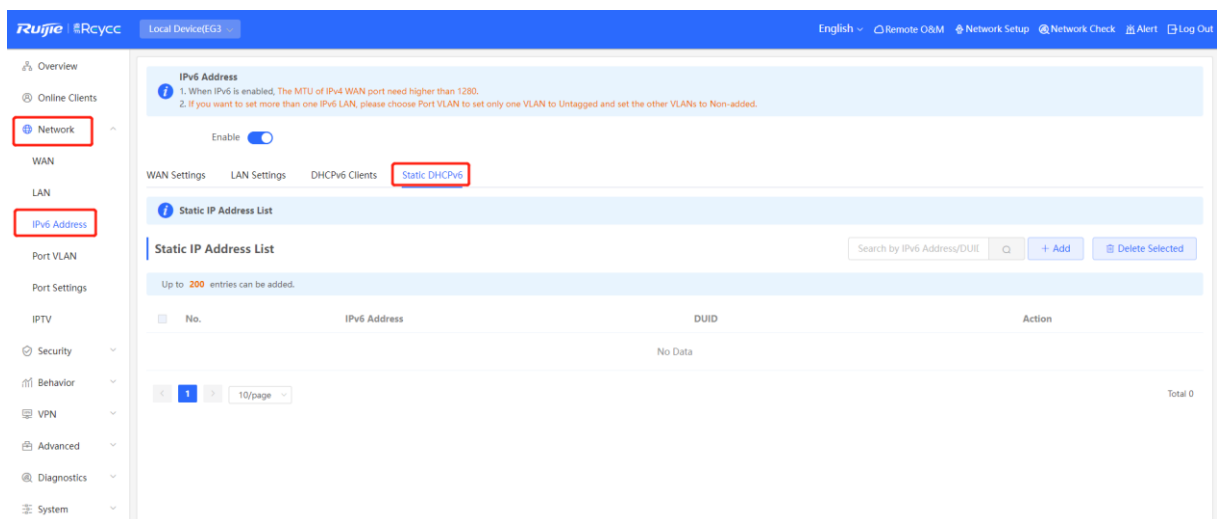


- Click **Convert to Static IP** to convert the IP binding of a client with an IP address to static binding. Then the DHCP server assigns a static IP address to the client.
- Click **Bind Selected** to convert the IP binding of multiple clients with IP addresses to static binding. Then the DHCP server assigns static IP addresses to the clients.

3.8.8 Configuring the Static DHCPv6 Address

Configure the IPv6 address statically bound to the DUID of a client so that the client can obtain the specified address each time.

Choose **Local Device > Network > IPv6 Address > Static DHCPv6**.



(1) Click **Add**.

The modal dialog titled 'Add' contains two input fields: '* IPv6 Address' with the example '2000::1' and '* DUID' with the example '0003000100d0f819685f'. At the bottom, there are 'Cancel' and 'OK' buttons.

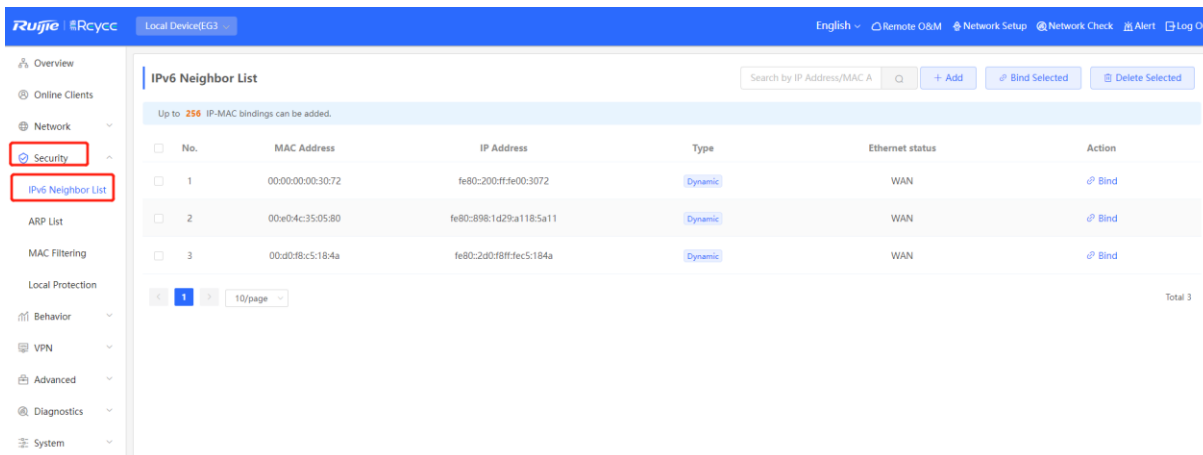
(2) Enter the IPv6 address and DUID.

(3) Click **OK**.

3.8.9 Configuring the IPv6 Neighbor List

In IPv6, Neighbor Discovery Protocol (NDP) is an important basic protocol. NDP replaces the ARP and ICMP route discovery protocols of IPv4, and supports the following functions: address resolution, neighbor status tracking, duplicate address detection, router discovery, and redirection.

Choose **Local Device > Security > IPv6 Address > IPv6 Neighbor List**.



(1) Click **Add** and manually add the interface, IPv6 address and MAC address of the neighbor.

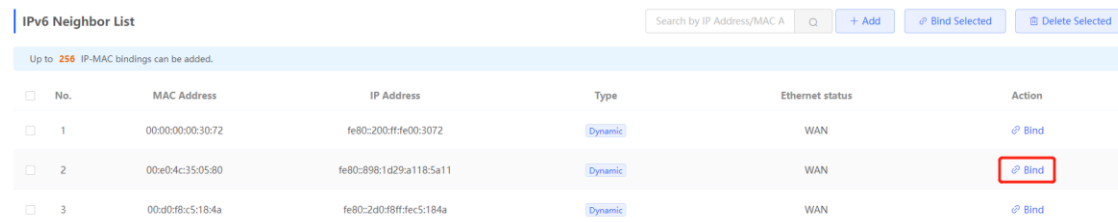
Add ✕

* Interface

* IPv6 Address

* MAC Address

(2) Select the MAC address and IP address to be bound, and click **Bind** in the **Action** column to bind the IP address to the MAC address to prevent ND attacks.



3.9 Configuring a DHCP Server

3.9.1 DHCP Server Overview

After the DHCP server function is enabled in the LAN, the device can automatically deliver IP addresses to clients, so that clients connected to the LAN ports of the device or connected to Wi-Fi can access the Internet using the obtained addresses.

See Section [3.6.6 Configuring an IPv6 Address for the LAN Port](#) for more information about the DHCPv6 server function.

3.9.2 Address Allocation Mechanism

The DHCP server allocates an IP address to a client in the following way:

- (1) When the device receives an IP address request from a DHCP client, the device searches the DHCP static address allocation list. If the MAC address of the DHCP client is in the DHCP static address allocation list, the device allocates the corresponding IP address to the DHCP client.
- (2) If the MAC address of the DHCP client is not in the DHCP static address allocation list or the IP address that the DHCP client applies is not in the same network segment as the LAN port IP address, the device selects an IP address not used from the address pool and allocates the address to the DHCP client.
- (3) If no IP address in the address pool is allocable, the client will fail to obtain an IP address.

3.9.3 Configuring the DHCP Server

1. Configuring Basic Parameters

Choose **Local Device > Network > LAN > LAN Settings**.

DHCP Server: The DHCP server function is enabled by default in the router mode. You are advised to enable the function if the device is used as the sole router in the network. When multiple routers are connected to the upper-layer device through LAN ports, disable this function.

 **Caution**

If the DHCP server function is disabled on all devices in the network, clients cannot automatically obtain IP addresses. You need to enable the DHCP server function on one device or manually configure a static IP address for each client for Internet access.

Start: Enter the start IP address of the DHCP address pool. A client obtains an IP address from the address pool. If all the addresses in the address pool are used up, no IP address can be obtained from the address pool.

IP Count: Enter the number of IP addresses in the address pool.

Lease Time(Min): Enter the address lease term. When a client is connected, the leased IP address is automatically renewed. If a leased IP address is not renewed due to client disconnection or network instability, the IP address will be reclaimed after the lease term expires. After the client connection is restored, the client can request an IP address again. The default lease term is 30 minutes.

LAN Settings DHCP Clients Static IP Addresses DHCP Option DNS Proxy

LAN Settings ?

LAN Settings + Add Delete Selected

Up to 8 entries can be added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	IP	Subnet Mask	VLAN ID	Remark	DHCP Server	Start	IP Count	Lease Time(Min)	Action
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.110.1	255.255.255.0	Default VLAN	-	Enabled	192.168.110.1	254	30	Edit Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	192.168.120.1	255.255.255.0	10	-	Enabled	192.168.120.1	254	30	Edit Delete

Edit



* IP Address

* Subnet Mask

Remarks

MAC Address

DHCP Server

* Start IP Address

* IP Count

* Lease Time (Min)

DNS Server 192.168.110.1 ?

Cancel

OK

1. Configuring DHCP Option

Choose **Local Device > Network > LAN > DHCP**.

The DHCP Option configuration is shared by all LAN ports. You can configure DHCP Option based on actual needs.

LAN Settings
DHCP Clients
Static IP Addresses
DHCP Option
DNS Proxy

DHCP Option
DHCP option settings are applied to all LAN ports.

DNS Server

Option 43 ?

Option 138

Option 150

Gateway

Save

Table 3-8 DHCP Option configuration

Parameter	Description
DNS Server	Enter the DNS server address provided by the ISP.
Option 43	When the AC (wireless controller) and the AP are not in the same LAN, the AP cannot discover the AC through broadcast after obtaining an IP address from the DHCP server. To enable the AP to discover the AC, you need to configure Option 43 carried in the DHCP response packet on the DHCP server.
Option 138	Enter the IP address of the AC. Similar to Option 43, when the AC and AP are not in the same LAN, you can configure Option 138 to enable the AP to obtain the IPv4 address of the AC.
Option 150	Enter the IP address of the TFTP server. The TFTP server allocates addresses to clients.

3.9.4 Viewing the DHCP Client

Choose **Local Device > Network > LAN > DHCP Clients**.

View the client addresses automatically allocated by thorough DHCP. Find the target client and click **Convert to Static IP** in the **Status** column, or select desired clients and click **Batch Convert**. The dynamic address allocation relationship is added to the static address allocation list, so that the host can obtain the bound IP address for each

connection. For details on how to view the static address allocation list, see Section [3.7.5 Configuring Static IP Addresses](#).

LAN Settings **DHCP Clients** Static IP Addresses DHCP Option DNS Proxy

View DHCP clients. ⓘ

DHCP Clients Search by Hostname/IP Addr: Refresh + Batch Convert

Up to 500 IP-MAC bindings can be added.

No.	Hostname	IP Address	MAC Address	Remaining Lease Time(min)	Status
1	*	192.168.110.7	b2:7f:c3:23:5f:4e	4	Convert to Static IP
2	EAP662G-00023B	192.168.110.2	aa:11:aa:00:02:3b	3	Convert to Static IP
3	RG-ES218GC-P-563cd9	192.168.110.4	80:05:88:56:3c:d9	2	Convert to Static IP
4	DESKTOP-PJE70H1	192.168.110.3	f8:e4:3b:60:c3:f4	20	Convert to Static IP

1 10/page Total 4

3.9.5 Configuring Static IP Addresses

Choose **Local Device > Network > LAN Static IP Addresses**.

The page displays all configured static IP addresses.

Click **Add**. In the pop-up window, enter the device name, MAC address and IP address of the client to be bound, and click **OK**. After a static IP address is bound, the bound IP address will be obtained each time the client connects to the network.

LAN Settings DHCP Clients **Static IP Addresses** DHCP Option DNS Proxy

Static IP Address List ⓘ

Static IP Address List Search by IP Address/MAC A: Batch Import Batch Export **+ Add** Delete Selected

Up to 500 entries can be added.

No.	Device Name	IP Address	MAC Address	Action
1	11 ↗	192.168.110.2	f8:e4:3b:60:c3:f4	Edit Delete

1 10/page Total 1

Add
×

Device Name

* IP Address

* MAC Address

3.10 Configuring Routes

3.10.1 Configuring Static Routes

Static routes are manually configured by the user. When a data packet matches a static route, the packet will be forwarded according to the specified forwarding mode.

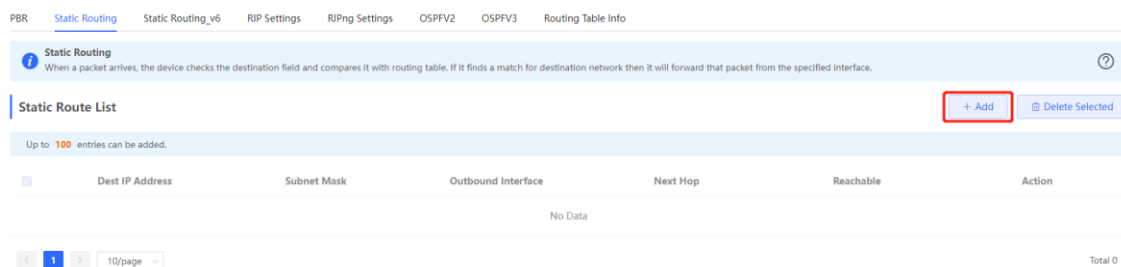
Caution

Static routes cannot automatically adapt to changes of the network topology. When the network topology changes, you need to reconfigure the static routes.

1. Configuring IPv4 Static Routing

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Routing > Static Routing**.

Click **Add**. In the dialog box that appears, enter the destination address, subnet mask, outbound interface, and next-hop IP address to create a static route.



Add
×

* Dest IP Address

* Subnet Mask

* Outbound Interface ▾

* Next Hop

Table 3-9 Static route configuration

Parameter	Description
Dest IP Address	Specify the destination network to which the data packet is to be sent. The device matches the data packet based on the destination address and subnet mask.
Subnet Mask	Specify the subnet mask of the destination network. The device matches the data packet based on the destination address and subnet mask.
Outbound Interface	Specify the interface that forwards the data packet.
Next Hop	Specify the IP address of the next hop in the route for the data packet. If the outbound interface accesses the Internet through PPPoE dialing, you do not need to configure the next-hop address.

After a static route is created, you can find the relevant route configuration and reachability status in the static route list. The **Reachable** parameter specifies whether the next hop is reachable, based on which you can determine whether the route takes effect. If the value is **No**, check whether the outbound interface in the current route can ping the next-hop address.

Static Route List
+ Add
Delete Selected

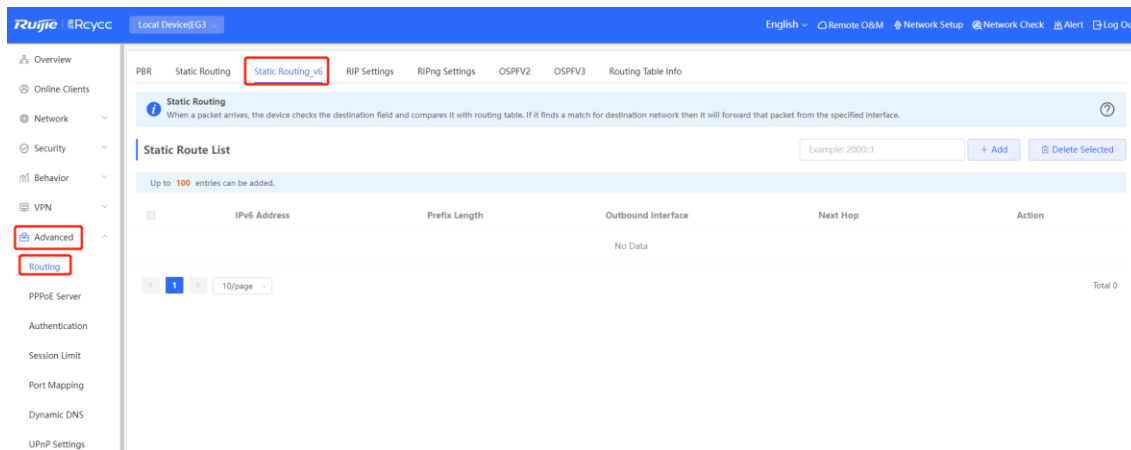
Up to **100** entries can be added.

	Dest IP Address	Subnet Mask	Outbound			
<input type="checkbox"/>	192.168.2.0	255.255.255.0	WAN	172.26.1.1	No	Edit Delete

The route is unreachable. Please initiate a Ping test from the outbound interface to the next hop.

2. Configuring the IPv6 Static Route

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Routing > Static Routing_v6**.



(1) Click **Add**.

Add
×

* IPv6 Address/Prefix ?

Length

* Outbound Interface ▼

* Next Hop

(2) Configure an IPv6 static route of the device.

Table 3-10 Description of IPv6 Static Routing Configuration Parameters

Parameter	Description
IPv6 Address/Prefix Length	Destination network of the packet. The destination address of the packet is matched according to the IPv6 address and prefix length.
Outbound Interface	Interface that forwards the packet.
Next Hop	IP address of the next routing node to which the packet is sent.

(3) Click **OK**.

3.10.2 Configuring PBR

Policy-based routing (PBR) is a mechanism for routing and forwarding based on user-specified policies. When a router forwards data packets, it filters the packets according to the configured rules, and then forwards the matched packets according to the specified forwarding policy. The PBR feature enables the device to formulate rules according to specific fields (source or destination IP address and protocol type) in the data packets, and forward the data packets from a specific interface.

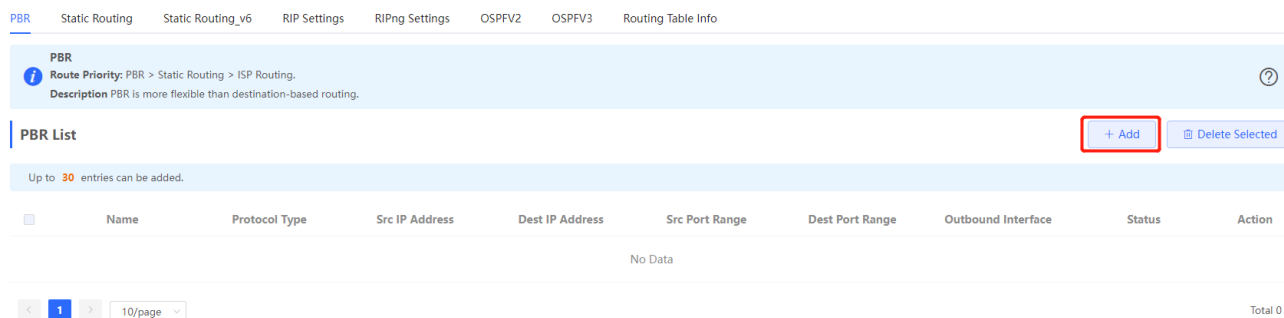
In a multi-line scenario, if the device is connected to the Internet and the internal network through different lines, the traffic will be evenly routed over the lines if no routing settings are available. In this case, access data to the internal network may be sent to the external network, or access data to the external network may be sent to the internal network, resulting in network exceptions. To prevent these exceptions, you need to configure PBR to control data isolation and forwarding on the internal and external networks.

The device can forward data packets using either of the following three policies: PBR, address-based routing, and static routing. When all the policies exist, PBR, static routing, and address-based routing have descending order in priority. For details on address-based routing, see [Section 3.2.6 Configuring the Multi-Line Load Balancing Mode](#).

1. Configuring IPv4 PBR

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Routing > PBR**.

Click **Add** to add a PBR rule.



Add PBR ×

* Name

Protocol Type

Src IP/IP Range

Dest IP/IP Range

Outbound Interface

Traffic Assurance ?

Effective State



Table 3-11 Description of IPv4 PBR Configuration Parameters

Parameter	Description
Name	Specify the name of the PBR rule, which uniquely identifies a PBR rule. The name must be unique for each rule.
Protocol Type	Specify the protocol to which the PBR rule is effective. You can set this parameter to IP , ICMP , UDP , TCP , or Custom .
Protocol Number	When Protocol Type is set to Custom , you need to enter the protocol number.
Src IP/IP Range	Configure the source IP address or IP address range for matching PBR entries. The default value is All IP Addresses. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● All IP Addresses: Match all the source IP addresses. ● Custom: Match the source IP addresses in the specified IP range.
Custom Src IP	When Src IP/IP Range is set to Custom , you need to enter a single source IP address or a source IP range.

Parameter	Description
Dest IP/IP Range	Configure the destination IP address or IP address range for matching PBR entries. The default value is All IP Addresses. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● All IP Addresses: Match all the destination IP addresses. ● Custom: Match the destination IP addresses in the specified IP range.
Custom Dest IP	When Dest IP/IP Range is set to Custom, you need to enter a destination source IP address or a destination IP range.
Src Port Range	This parameter is available only when Protocol Type is set to TCP or UDP. This parameter specifies the source port range for packet matching using PBR.
Dest Port Range	This parameter is available only when Protocol Type is set to TCP or UDP. This parameter specifies the destination port range for packet matching using PBR.
Outbound Interface	Specify the interface that forwards the data packet based on the hit PBR rule.
Traffic Assurance	When an outbound interface is unreachable, the traffic will be automatically routed to other reachable outbound interfaces.
Status	Turn on Status to specify whether to enable the PBR rule. If Status is turned off, this rule does not take effect.



Note

If you want to restrict the access device to access only the specified internal network, you can set the outbound interface in the corresponding route to the WAN port in the private line network. For details on how to set the private line network, see Section [3.2.4 Configuring the Private Line](#).

All the created PBR policies are displayed in the PBR list, with the latest policy listed on the top. The device matches the policies according to their sorting in the list. You can manually adjust the policy matching sequence by clicking  or  in the **Match Order** column.

PBR List + Add Delete Selected

Up to **30** entries can be added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Protocol Type	Src IP Address	Dest IP Address	Src Port Range	Dest Port Range	Outbound Interface	Status	Match Order	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	test1	IP	2.2.2.2	3.3.3.3	-	-	WAN	Enable 	↓	Edit Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	test	IP	1.1.1.1	2.2.2.2	-	-	WAN	Enable 	↑	Edit Delete

4. Configuring IPv6 PBR

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Routing > PBR_v6**.

PBR Static Routing **PBR_v6** Static Routing_v6 RIP Settings RiPng Settings OSPFV2 OSPFV3 Routing Table Info

PBR
Route Priority: PBR v6 > Static Routing v6.
Description PBR is more flexible than destination-based routing.

PBR List [+ Add](#) [Delete Selected](#)

Up to 30 entries can be added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Protocol Type	Src IP Address	Dest IP Address	Src Port Range	Dest Port Range	Outbound Interface	Traffic Assurance	Effective State	Action
No Data										

< 1 > 10/page Total 0

Click **Add** to add a PBR rule.

PBR List [+ Add](#) [Delete Selected](#)

Up to 30 entries can be added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Protocol Type	Src IP Address	Dest IP Address	Src Port Range	Dest Port Range	Outbound Interface	Traffic Assurance	Effective State	Action
No Data										

< 1 > 10/page Total 0

Add PBR



* Name

Protocol Type

Src IP/IP Range

Dest IP/IP Range

Outbound Interface

Traffic Assurance

Effective State

Cancel

OK



Table 3-12 Description of IPv6 PBR Configuration Parameters

Parameter	Description
Name	Specify the name of the PBR rule, which uniquely identifies a PBR rule. The name must be unique for each rule.
Protocol Type	Specify the protocol to which the PBR rule is effective. You can set this parameter to IP , ICMPv6 , UDP , TCP , or Custom .
Protocol Number	When Protocol Type is set to Custom , you need to enter the protocol number.

Parameter	Description
Src IP/IP Range	Configure the source IP address or IP address range for matching PBR entries. The default value is All IP Addresses. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● All IP Addresses: Match all the source IP addresses. ● Custom: Match the source IP addresses in the specified IP range.
Custom Src IP	When Src IP/IP Range is set to Custom , you need to enter a single source IP address or a source IP range.
Dest IP/IP Range	Configure the destination IP address or IP address range for matching PBR entries. The default value is All IP Addresses. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● All IP Addresses: Match all the destination IP addresses. ● Custom: Match the destination IP addresses in the specified IP range.
Custom Dest IP	When Dest IP/IP Range is set to Custom, you need to enter a destination source IP address or a destination IP range.
Src Port Range	This parameter is available only when Protocol Type is set to TCP or UDP. This parameter specifies the source port range for packet matching using PBR.
Dest Port Range	This parameter is available only when Protocol Type is set to TCP or UDP. This parameter specifies the destination port range for packet matching using PBR.
Outbound Interface	Specify the interface that forwards the data packet based on the hit PBR rule.
Traffic Assurance	When an outbound interface is unreachable, the traffic will be automatically routed to other reachable outbound interfaces.
Status	Turn on Status to specify whether to enable the PBR rule. If Status is turned off, this rule does not take effect.

 Note

If you want to restrict the access device to access only the specified internal network, you can set the outbound interface in the corresponding route to the WAN port in the private line network. For details on how to set the private line network, see Section [3.3.4 Configuring the Private Line](#).

All the created PBR policies are displayed in the PBR list, with the latest policy listed on the top. The device matches the policies according to their sorting in the list. You can manually adjust the policy matching sequence by clicking  or  in the **Match Order** column.

策略路由列表										+ 添加	批量删除
最大支持配置 30 条数据。											
<input type="checkbox"/>	规则名称	协议类型	源IP地址	目的IP地址	源端口范围	目的端口范围	出接口	接口断网保障	生效状态	操作	
<input type="checkbox"/>	test	ICMPV6	所有IP	所有IP	-	-	WAN0	开启	开启	修改 删除	

2. Typical Configuration Example

● Networking Requirements

Two lines with different bandwidths are deployed for an enterprise. Line A (WAN 1) is used for access to the Internet and Line B (WAN 2) is used for access to the specific internal network (10.1.1.0/24). The enterprise wants to configure PBR to guarantee correct data flows between the internal and external networks, isolate devices in the specified address range (172.26.31.1 to 172.26.31.200) from the external network, and allow these devices to access the specific internal network only.

● Configuration Roadmap

- Configure the private line.
- Add a PBR policy for access to the internal network.
- Add a PBR policy for access to the external network.
- Add a PBR policy to restrict specific devices to access the internal network only.

● Configuration Steps

(1) Configure WAN 2 as the private line for the internal network.

When you configure networking parameters for WAN 2 port, click **Advanced Settings**, turn on **Private Line**, and click **Save**. For details, see Section [3.2.4 Configuring the Private Line](#).

----- Advanced Settings -----

* MTU Range: 576-1500. [MTU Detection](#)

* MAC Address

802.1Q Tag

Private Line ?

NAT Mode ?

(2) Add a PBR policy to forward data packets destined to the external network through WAN 1 port.

Choose **Advanced > Routing > PBR** and click **Add**. In the dialog box that appears, create a PBR policy and set **Outbound Interface** to **WAN1**.

Add PBR

* Name: Public

Protocol Type: IP

Src IP/IP Range: All IP Addresses

Dest IP/IP Range: All IP Addresses

Outbound Interface: WAN1

Status:

Cancel OK

- (3) Add a PBR policy to forward data packets destined to the internal network through WAN 2 port. In this policy, set **Custom Dest IP** to 10.1.1.1-10.1.1.254 and **Outbound Interface** to WAN2.

Add PBR

* Name: Private

Protocol Type: IP

Src IP/IP Range: All IP Addresses

Dest IP/IP Range: Custom

* Custom Dest IP: 10.1.1.1-10.1.1.254

Outbound Interface: WAN2

Status:

Cancel OK

- (4) Add a PBR policy to restrict devices in the IP range 172.26.31.1 to 172.26.31.200 to access the internal private line only. In this policy, set **Src IP/IP Range** to **Custom**, **Custom Src IP** to 172.26.31.1-172.26.31.200, and **Outbound Interface** to WAN2.

Add PBR

* Name

Protocol Type

Src IP/IP Range

* Custom Src IP

Dest IP/IP Range

Outbound Interface

Status

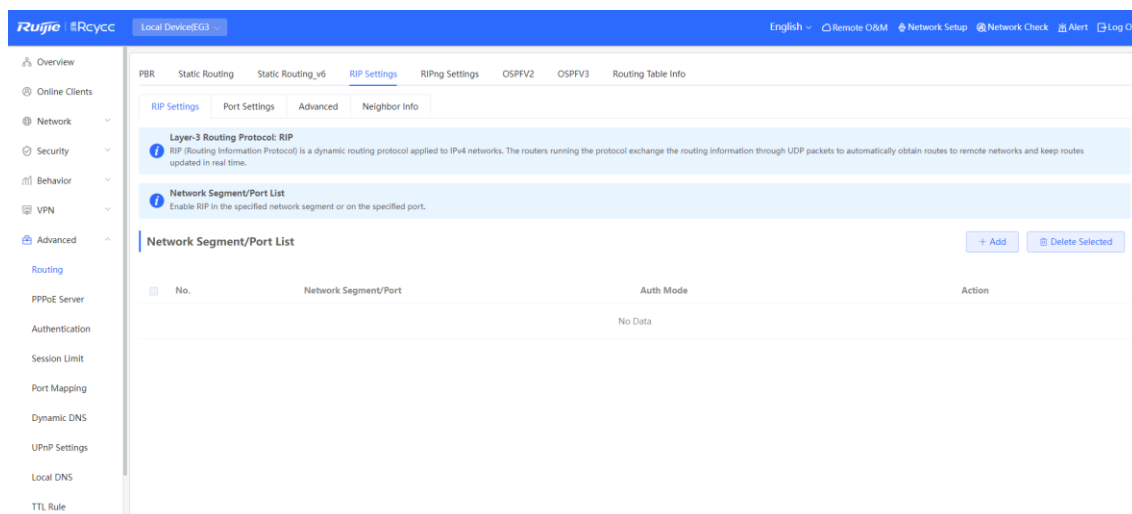
3.10.3 Configuring RIP

Routing Information Protocol (RIP) is applicable to small and medium-sized networks and is a dynamic routing protocol that is easy to configure. RIP measures the network distance based on the number of hops and selects a route based on the distance. RIP uses UDP port 520 to exchange the routing information.

1. Configuring RIP Basic Functions

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Routing > RIP Settings**

Click **Add** and configure the network segment and interface.



Add
×

Type Network Segment Port

* Port

Auth Mode

* Auth Key

Table 3-13 RIP Configuration Parameters

Parameter	Description
Type	<p>Network Segment: Enable RIP in the specified network segment. The IP addresses of this network segment are added to the RIP routing table. The device and its RIP-enabled neighbor devices learn the routing table from each other.</p> <p>Port: Enable RIP on the specified port. All the IP addresses of this port are added to the RIP routing table. The device and its RIP-enabled neighbor devices learn the routing table from each other.</p>
Network Segment	<p>Enter the network segment, for example, 10.1.0.0/24, when Type is set to Network Segment.</p> <p>RIP will be enabled on all interfaces of the device covered by this network segment.</p>
Port	<p>Select a VLAN interface or physical port when Type is set to Port.</p>

Auth Mode	<p>No Authentication: The protocol packets are not authenticated.</p> <p>Encrypted Text: The protocol packets are authenticated, and the authentication key is transmitted with the protocol packets in the form of encrypted text.</p> <p>Plain Text: The protocol packets are authenticated, and the authentication key is transmitted with the protocol packets in the form of plain text.</p>
Auth Key	<p>Enter the authentication key to authenticate protocol packets when Auth Mode is set to Encrypted Text or Plain Text.</p>

2. Configuring the RIP Port

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Routing > RIP Settings >> Port Settings**

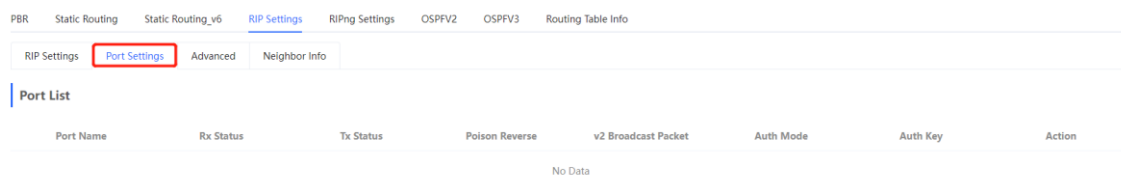


Table 3-14 Configuration Parameters in the Port List

Parameter	Description
Port Name	Name of the port where RIP is enabled.
Rx Status	RIP version of packets currently received.
Tx Status	RIP version of packets currently transmitted.
Poison Reverse	After the port learns the route, the route overhead is set to 16 (indicating that the route is unreachable), and the route is sent back to the neighbor from the original port to avoid a loop.
v2 Broadcast Packet	<p>When a neighbor does not support multicast, broadcast packets can be sent.</p> <p>You are advised to disable RIPv2 broadcast packets to improve network performance.</p>

Auth Mode	<p>No Authentication: The protocol packets are not authenticated.</p> <p>Encrypted Text: The protocol packets are authenticated, and the authentication key is transmitted with the protocol packets in the form of encrypted text.</p> <p>Plain Text: The protocol packets are authenticated, and the authentication key is transmitted with the protocol packets in the form of plain text.</p>
Auth Key	Enter the authentication key to authenticate protocol packets when Auth Mode is set to Encrypted Text or Plain Text .
Action	Click Edit to modify RIP settings of the port.

3. Configuring the RIP Global Configuration

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Routing > RIP Settings >> Advanced**, click **Edit Config**, and configure RIP global configuration parameters.

PBR Static Routing Static Routing_v6 **RIP Settings** RIPng Settings OSPFV2 OSPFV3 Routing Table Info

RIP Settings Port Settings **Advanced** Neighbor Info

i Improper timers may cause route flapping. Therefore, RIP timers must be consistent on the devices connected to the same network. You are not advised to reset the RIP timers unless you have specific needs.

RIP Global Config Edit Config

RIP Version	Equal-cost Load Balancing	Route Advertisement	Administrative Distance	Update Timer	Invalid Timer	Flush Timer
Default	Off	Off	1 (Default)	30 s	180 s	120 s

Edit Config
×

RIP Version ?

Equal-cost Load

Balancing

Route Advertisement

Administrative v

Distance

* Update Timer s (5-2147483647)

* Invalid Timer s (5-2147483647)

* Flush Timer s (5-2147483647)

Table 3-15 RIP Global Configuration Parameters

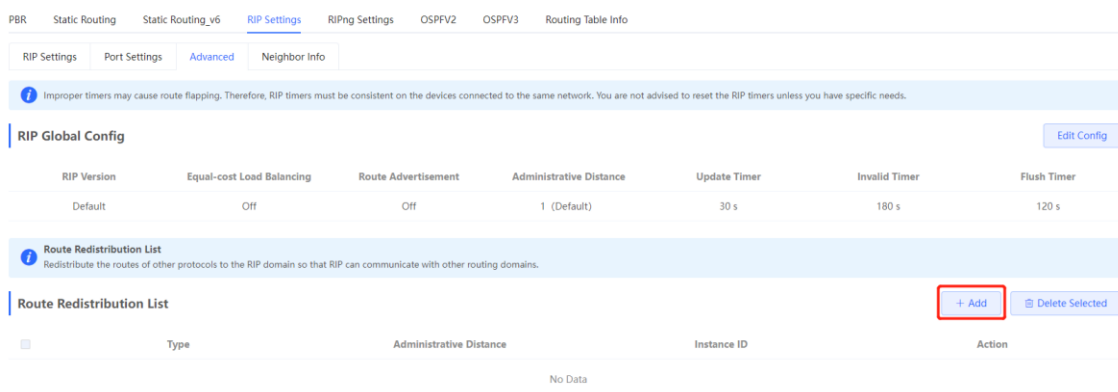
Parameter	Description
RIP Version	<p>Default: Select RIPv2 for sending packets and RIPv1/v2 for receiving packets.</p> <p>V1: Select RIPv1 for sending and receiving packets.</p> <p>V2: Select RIPv2 for sending and receiving packets.</p>

Parameter	Description
Route Advertisement	After route advertisement is enabled, the current device generates a default route and sends it to the neighbor.
Administrative Distance	Redistribute routes of other protocols to the RIP domain so that RIP can interwork with other routing domains.
Update Timer	RIP update cycle. The routing information is updated every 30 seconds by default.
Invalid Timer	If no update is received before a route becomes invalid, the route is considered unreachable. The default value is 180 seconds.
Flush Timer	If no update is received before the flush timer of an invalid route expires, the route is completely deleted from the RIP routing table. The default value is 120 seconds.

4. Configuring the RIP Route Redistribution List

Redistribute routes of other protocols to the RIP domain so that RIP can interwork with other routing domains.

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Routing > RIP Settings >> Advanced**, click **Add** in **RIP Redistribution List**, and select the type and administrative distance.



Add
×

* Type OSPF Routing ▼

* Administrative Distance 0 (Administrative Distance) ▼

* Instance ID Select ▼

Cancel
OK

Table 3-16 RIP Route Redistribution Parameters

Parameter	Description
Type	Direct Routing OSPF Routing Static Routing
Administrative Distance	A smaller administrative distance indicates a higher priority. The default value is 0 . The value ranges from 0 to 16.
Instance ID	Select the instance ID of OSPF that needs to be redistributed. OSPFv2 needs to be enabled on the local device.

5. Configuring the Passive Interface

If an interface is configured as a passive interface, it will suppress RIP update packets. If the connected peer device does not run RIP, you are advised to enable the passive interface.

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Routing > RIP Settings >> Advanced**, click **Add** in **Passive Interface** and select a passive interface.

Passive Interface
RIP update packets will be suppressed on the passive interface. If the device connected to the interface does not adopt RIP, you are advised to enable this function.

Passive Interface + Add Delete Selected

Port Name	Action
No Data	

Add ×

* Passive Interface

6. Configuring the Neighbor Route

When the router cannot process broadcast packets, another router can be designated as the neighbor to establish a RIP direct link.

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Routing > RIP Settings >> Advanced**, click **Add** in **Neighbor Route**, and enter the IP address of the neighbor router.

Neighbor Route
If a router cannot forward broadcast packets, another router is designated as the neighbor to establish a RIP direct link.

Neighbor Route + Add Delete Selected

Address	Action
No Data	

Add ×

* Neighbor Route

3.10.4 Configuring RIPng

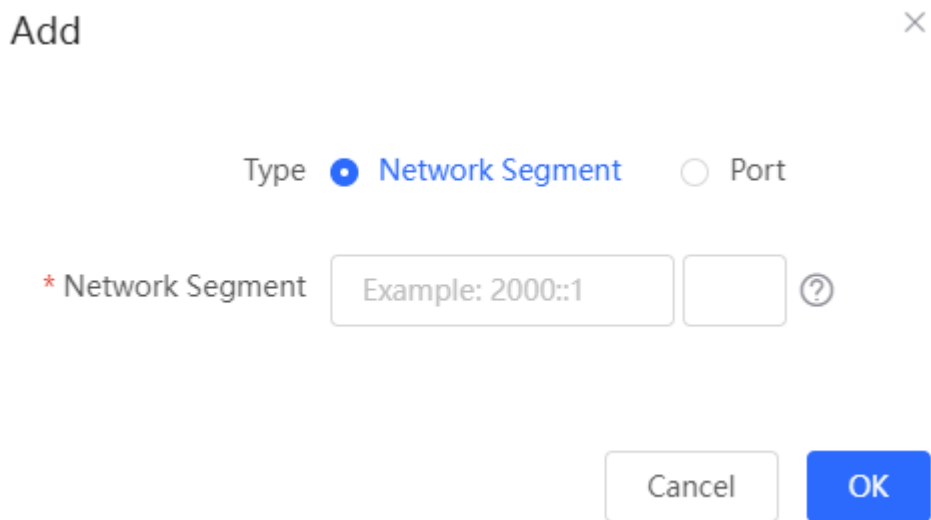
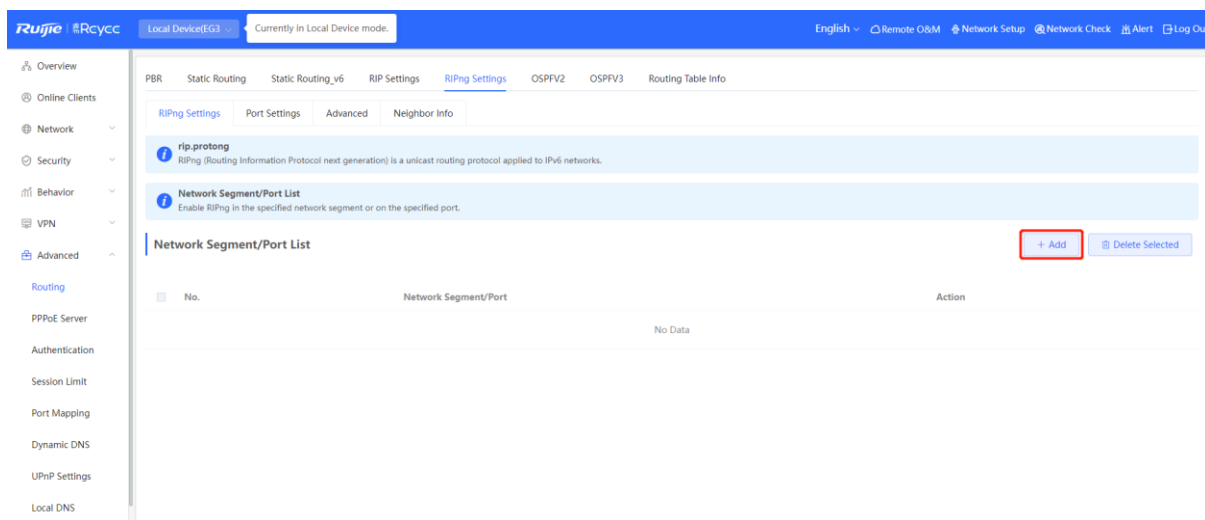
RIP Next Generation (RIPng) provides the routing function for IPv6 networks.

RIPng uses UDP port 512 to exchange the routing information.

1. Configuring RIPng Basic Functions

Choose **Local Device** > **Advanced** > **Routing** > **RIPng Settings**

Click **Add**, set **Type** to **Network Segment** or **Port**, and specify the network segment or port accordingly.



Add
×

Type Network Segment Port

* Port ▼

Cancel

OK

Table 3-17 RIPng Configuration Parameters

Parameter	Description
Type	<p>Network Segment: Enable RIP in the specified network segment. The IP addresses of this network segment are added to the RIP routing table, and the device and its RIP-enabled neighbor devices learn the routing table from each other.</p> <p>Port: Enable RIP on the specified port. All the IP addresses of this port are added to the RIP routing table, and the device and its RIP-enabled neighbor devices learn the routing table from each other.</p>
Network Segment	<p>Enter the IPv6 address and prefix length when Type is set to Network Segment.</p> <p>RIPng will be enabled on all interfaces of the device covered by this network segment.</p>
Port	<p>Select a VLAN interface or physical port when Type is set to Port.</p>

2. Configuring the RIPng Port

RIPng poison reverse: After the port learns the route, the route overhead is set to **16** (indicating that the route is unreachable), and the route is sent back to the neighbor from the original port to avoid a loop.

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Routing > RIPng Settings > Port Settings**, click **Edit**, and enable IPv6 poison reverse.

RIPng Settings **Port Settings** Advanced Neighbor Info

Port List

Port Name	IPv6 Poison Reverse	Action
VLAN 1	Off	Edit

Edit ×

* Port Name

IPv6 Poison Reverse

3. Configuring the RIPng Global Configuration

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Routing > RIPng Settings >> Advanced**, click **Edit Config** in **RIPng Global Config**, and configure RIPng global configuration parameters.

Improper timers may cause route flapping. Therefore, RIPng timers must be consistent on the devices connected to the same network. You are not advised to reset the RIPng timers unless you have specific needs.

RIPng Global Config Edit Config						
Equal-cost Load Balancing	Route Advertisement	Administrative Distance	Update Timer	Invalid Timer	Flush Timer	
Off	Off	1 (Default)	30 s	180 s	120 s	

Edit Config



Equal-cost Load

Balancing

Route Advertisement

Administrative Distance

* Update Timer s (1-65535)

* Invalid Timer s (1-65535)

* Flush Timer s (1-65535)

Cancel

OK

4. Configuring the RIPng Route Redistribution List

Redistribute routes of other protocols to the RIPng domain to interwork with other routing domains.

Choose **Local Device** > **Advanced** > **Routing** > **RIPng Settings** > **Advanced**, click **Add** in **Route Redistribution List**, and configure RIPng route redistribution.

Route Redistribution List
Redistribute the routes of other protocols to the RIP domain so that RIP can communicate with other routing domains.

Route Redistribution List + Add Delete Selected

Type	Administrative Distance	Action
No Data		

Add
×

* Type Select ▼

* Administrative 0 (Administrative Distance) ▼

Distance

Cancel
OK

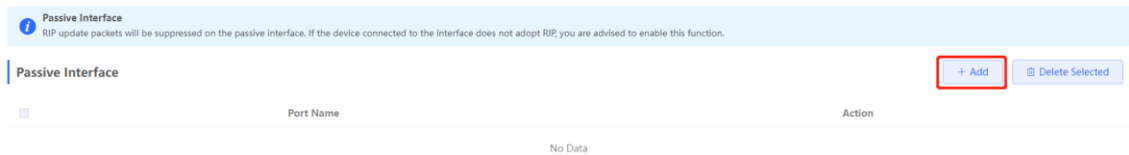
Table 3-18 RIP Route Redistribution Parameters

Parameter	Description
Type	Direct Routing OSPF Routing Static Routing
Administrative Distance	Value range: 0-16. The default value is 0.

5. Configuring the RIPng Passive Interface

If an interface is configured as a passive interface, it will suppress RIPng update packets. If the connected peer device does not run RIP, you are advised to enable the passive interface.

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Routing > RIPng Settings > Advanced**, click **Add** in **Passive Interface**, and select a passive interface.



Add ×

* Passive Interface

6. Configuring the IPv6 Aggregate Route

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Routing > RIPng Settings > Advanced**, click **Add** in **RIPng Aggregate Routing**, and enter the IPv6 address or length. The length of IPv6 address prefix ranges from 0 bit to 128 bits.

RIPng Aggregate Routing
Create an aggregate RIPng route announcement.

RIPng Aggregate Routing

	Address	Action
☐	No Data	

Add ×

* IPv6 Aggregate
Routing

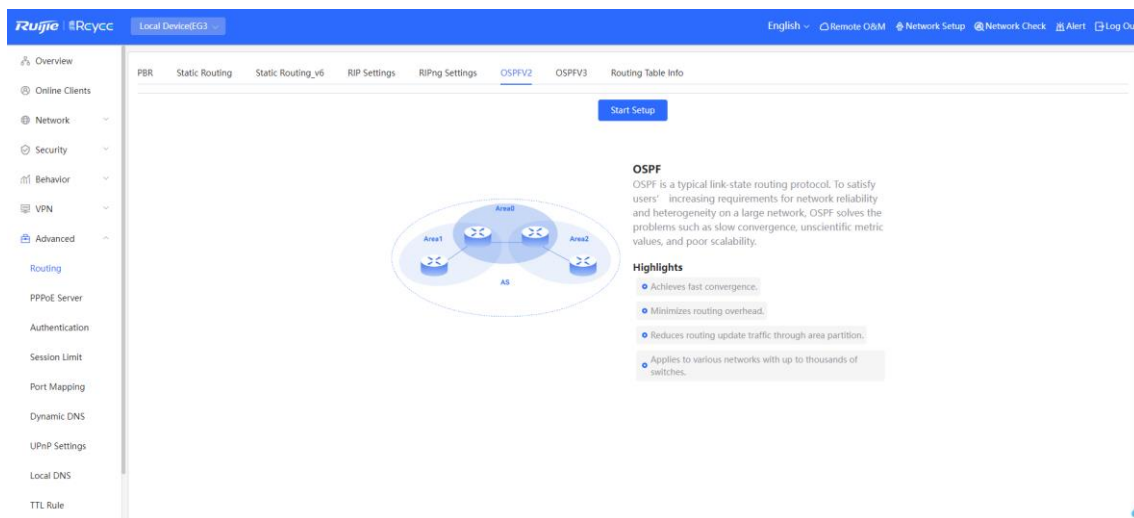
3.10.5 OSPF v2

Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) can be applied to large-scale networks. IPv4 uses OSPFv2, and IPv6 uses OSPFv3.

OSPF is a typical link-state routing protocol, which can solve the problems of slow route update, inaccurate measurement, and poor scalability in large networks. It is suitable for networks of various sizes, and even a network with up to thousands of devices.

1. Configuring OSPFv2 Basic Parameters

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Routing > OSPFV2**, click **Start Setup**, and then configure an instance and an interface respectively.



- (1) Configure an instance.
 - a Configure basic parameters for an instance.

① ————— ② ————— ③
Configure the instance. **Configure the interface.** Operation succeeded.

* Instance ID

* Router ID ?


Advertise Default Route

Import External Route Static Route Redistribution
 Direct Route Redistribution
 RIP Redistribution

..... [Details](#)

[Previous](#) [Next](#)

Table 3-19 Description of Basic OSPF Instance Configuration Parameters

Parameter	Description
Instance ID	Create an OSPF instance based on the service type. The instance only takes effect locally, and does not affect packet exchange with other devices.
Router ID	It identifies a router in an OSPF domain. <hr/>  Caution Router IDs within the same domain must be unique. The same configuration may cause neighbor discovery failures.
Advertise Default Route	Generate a default route and send it to the neighbor. After this function is enabled, you need to enter the metric and select a type. The default metric is 1 . Type 1: The metrics displayed on different routers vary. Type 2: The metrics displayed on all routers are the same.
Import External Route	Redistribute routes of other protocols to the OSPF domain to interwork with other routing domains. If Static Route Redistribution is selected, enter the metric, which is 20 by default. If Direct Route Redistribution is selected, enter the metric, which is 20 by default. If RIP Redistribution is selected, enter the metric, which is 20 by default.

- b Click **Details** to display detailed configurations.

----- Details -----

Distance

Intra-Area
Optional.Default:110

Inter-Area
Optional.Default:110

External
Optional.Default:110

LSA

Generation Delay
Optional.Defaul

Received Delay
Optional.Default

SPF Calculation

Waiting Interval
Optional.Default

Min Interval
Optional.Default:50

Max Interval
Optional.Default:50

Graceful Restart

Graceful Restart

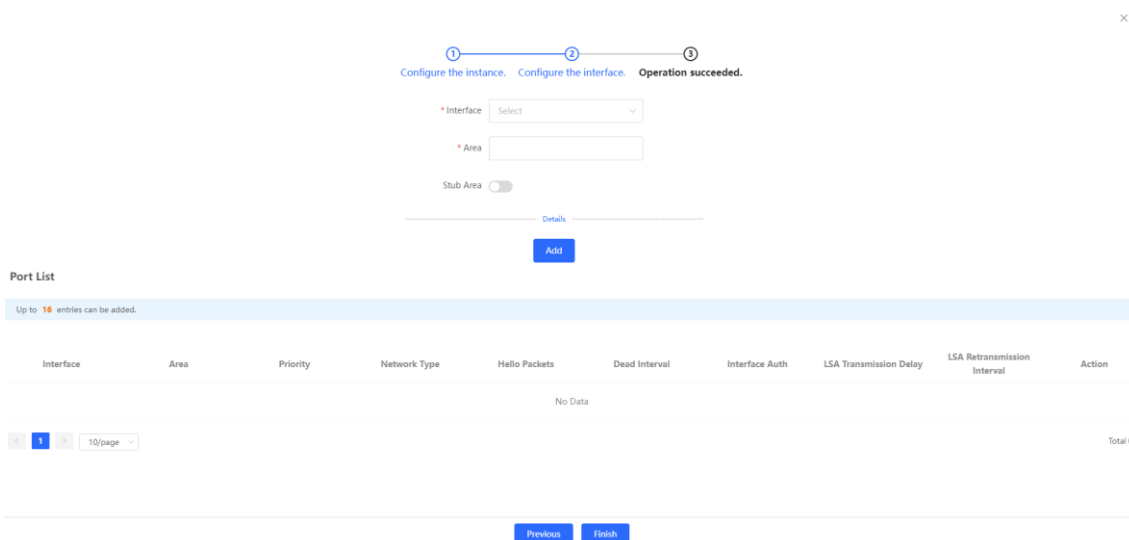
Helper

Table 3-20 Description of Detailed OSPF Instance Configuration Parameters

Parameter	Description
Distance	It is used for protocol selection. By default, the intra-area, inter-area, and external distances are all 110 .
LSA	Frequent network changes and route flapping may occupy too much network bandwidth and device resources. The LSA generation and reception delays are specified in OSPF by default. The default value is 1000 ms.

Parameter	Description
SPF Calculation	<p>When the link state database (LSDB) changes, OSPF recalculates the shortest path, and sets the interval to prevent frequent network changes from occupying a large number of resources</p> <p>Waiting Interval: When the state changes, the timer is triggered. The delay is calculated for the first time after the timer expires. The default value is 0 ms.</p> <p>Min Interval: As the number of changes increases, the time of each interval will increase according to the algorithm, and the default value is 50 ms.</p> <p>Max Interval: When the calculated interval reaches the maximum interval, the subsequent interval is always equal to the maximum interval. If the time from the last calculation exceeds the maximum interval and the LSDB is not updated, the timer is disabled.</p>
Graceful Restart	<p>Graceful Restart (GR) can avoid route flapping caused by traffic interruption and active/standby board switchover, thus ensuring the stability of key services.</p> <p>Graceful Restart Helper: The Graceful Restart Helper function is enabled when this switch is turned on.</p> <p>LSA Check: LSA packets outside the domain are checked when this switch is turned on.</p> <p>Max Wait Time: Timing starts after the device receives the GR packet from the peer device. If the peer device does not complete GR within Max Wait Time, the device exits the GR Helper mode. The default value is 1800 seconds.</p>

(2) Configure an interface.



c Configure basic parameters for an OSPFv2 interface.

Table 3-21 Description of Basic OSPFv2 Interface Configuration Parameters

Parameter	Description
Interface	Select the OSPF-enabled L3 interface.
Area	Configure the area ID. Value range: 0-4294967295
Stub Area	<p>If Stub Area is enabled, you need to configure the area type and inter-area route isolation.</p> <p>Stub area: Routers at the edge of the area do not advertise routes outside the area, and the routing table in the area is small.</p> <p>Not-So-Stubby Area (NSSA): A few external routes can be imported.</p> <p>Inter-area route isolation: After this function is enabled, inter-area routes will not be imported to this area.</p>
Details	Expand the detailed configuration.

d Click **Details** to display detailed configurations.

----- Details -----

Priority

Network Type ▾

Hello Packets

Dead Interval

LSA Transmission

Delay

LSA Retransmission

Interval

Interface Auth ▾

Ignore MTU Check

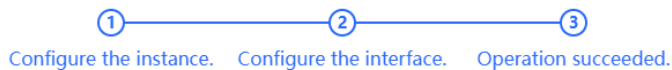
Table 3-22 Description of Detailed OSPFv2 Interface Configuration Parameters

Parameter	Description
Priority	It is 1 by default.
Network Type	Broadcast Unicast Multicast Non-Broadcast Multiple Access
Hello Packets	Interval for periodic transmission, which is used to discover and maintain OSPF neighbor relationship. The default value is 10 seconds.

Parameter	Description
Dead Interval	Time after which the neighbor becomes invalid. The default value is 40 seconds.
LSA Transmission Delay	LSA transmission delay of the interface. The default value is 1 second.
LSA Retransmission Interval	Time after which LSA is retransmitted after LSA is lost. The default value is 5 seconds.
Interface Auth	<p>No Auth: The protocol packets are not authenticated. It is the default value.</p> <p>Plain Text: The protocol packets are authenticated, and the authentication key is transmitted with the protocol packets in the form of plain text.</p> <p>MD5: The protocol packets are authenticated, and the authentication key is MD5 encrypted and then transmitted with the protocol packets.</p>
Ignore MTU Check	Enabled by default.

e Click **Add** to add an interface to **Interface List**.

(3) Click **Finish**.



Operation succeeded.

Disable

After you create an instance and an interface, choose **Local Device > Advanced > Routing > OSPFV2** to check the current **Instance List**.

PBR Static Routing Static Routing_v6 RIP Settings RIPng Settings OSPFV2 OSPFV3 Routing Table Info

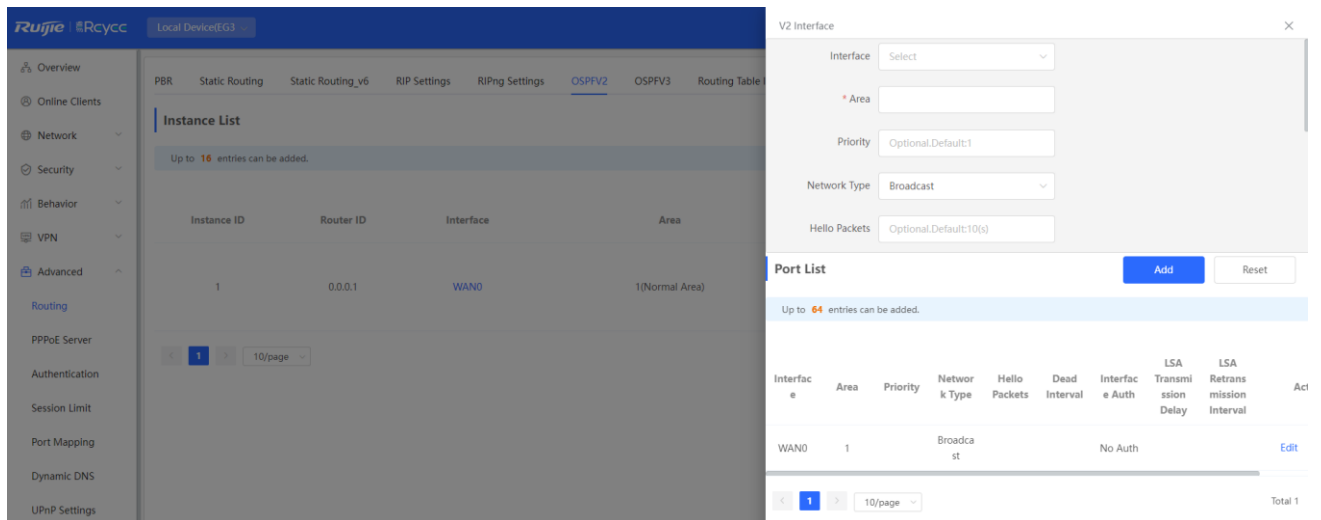
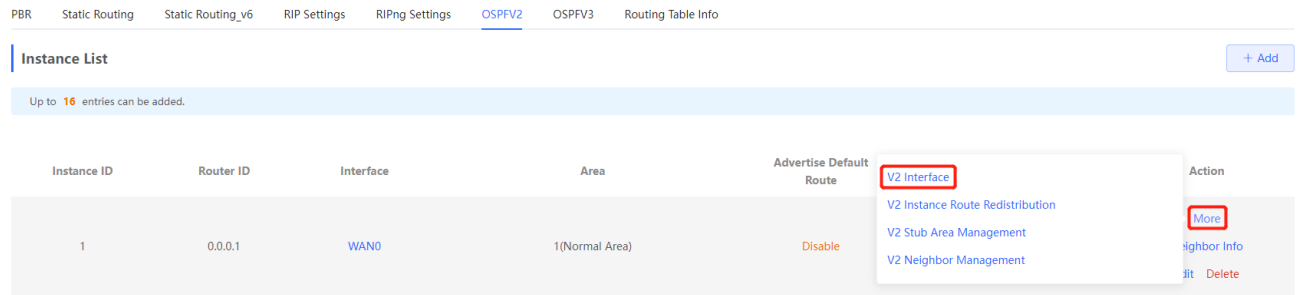
Instance List + Add

Up to 16 entries can be added.

Instance ID	Router ID	Interface	Area	Advertise Default Route	Import External Route	Action
1	0.0.0.1	WAN0	1(Normal Area)	Disable	Static Route Redistribution : Off Direct Route Redistribution : Off RIP Redistribution : Off	More Neighbor Info Edit Delete

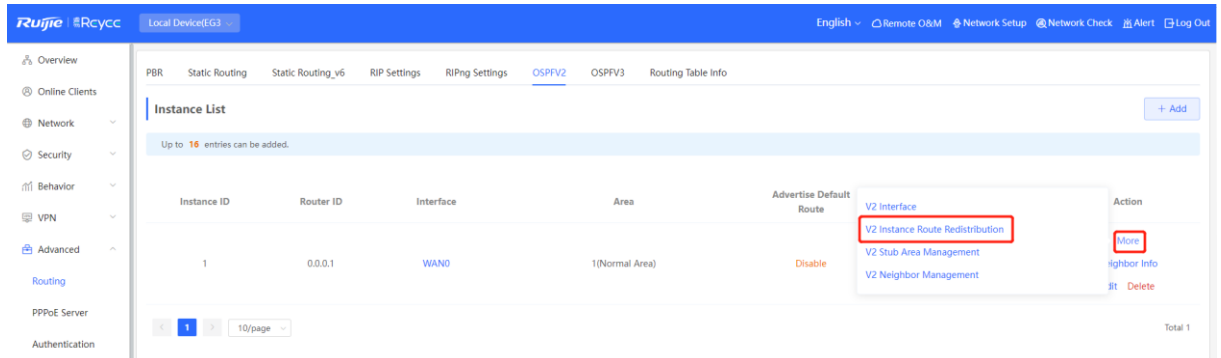
2. Adding an OSPFv2 Interface

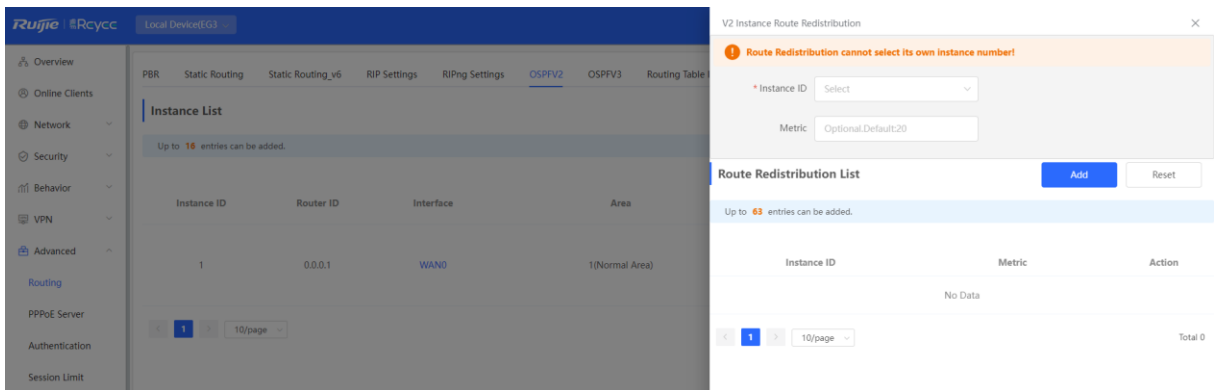
Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Routing > OSPFV2**, select the instance to be configured in **Instance List**, and choose **More > V2 Interface**.



3. Redistributing OSPFv2 Instance Routes

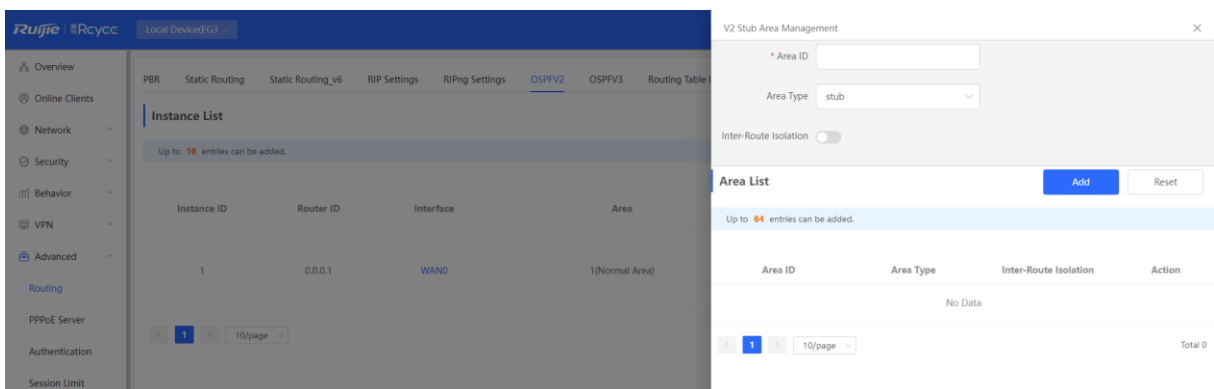
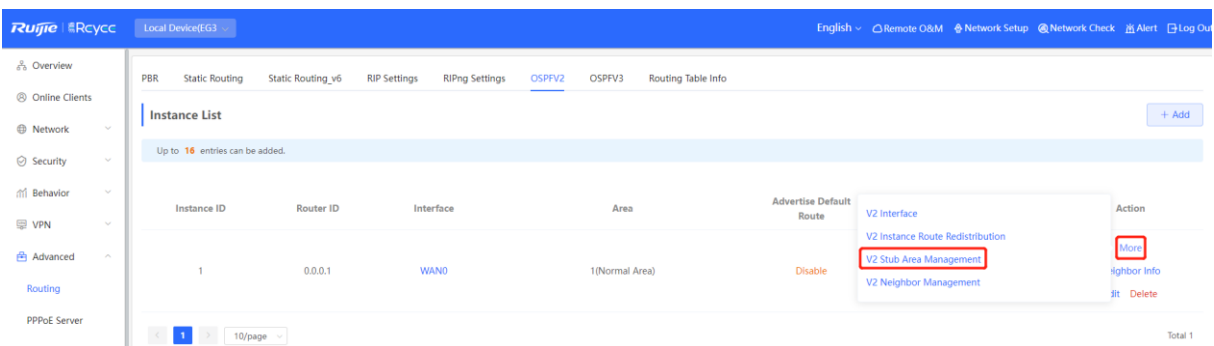
Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Routing > OSPFV2**, select the instance to be configured in **Instance List**, and choose **More > V2 Instance Route Redistribution**.





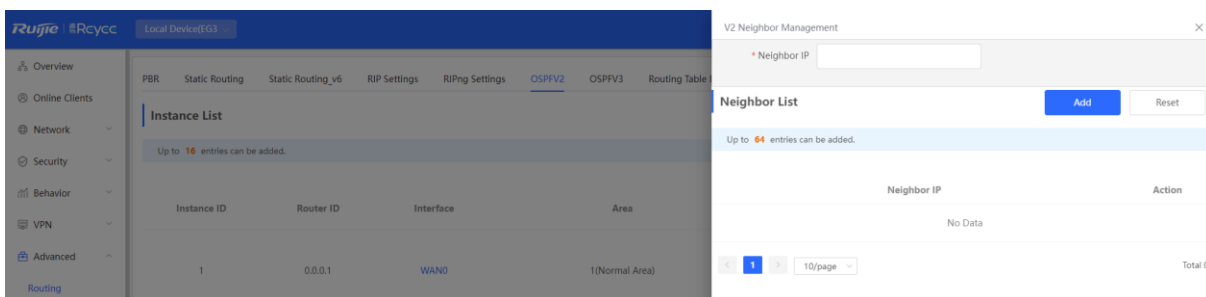
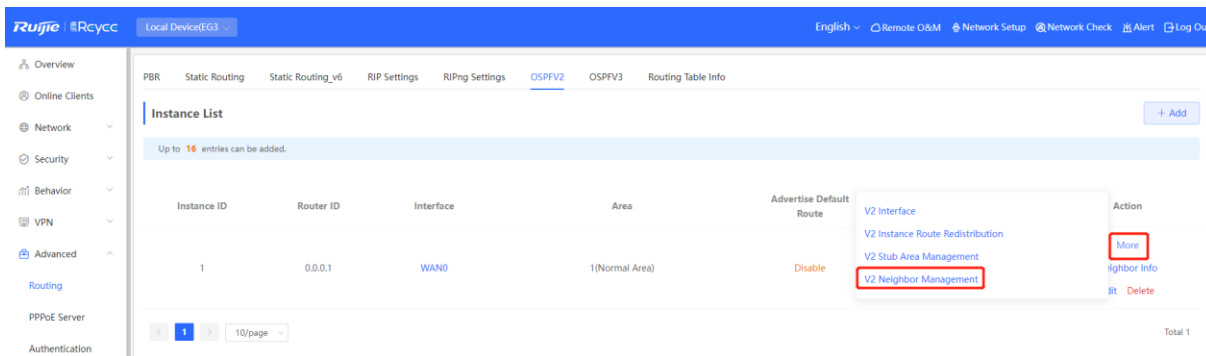
4. Managing OSPFv2 Stub Areas

Choose **Local Device** > **Advanced** > **Routing** > **OSPFV2**, select the instance to be configured in **Instance List**, and choose **More** > **V2 Stub Area Management**.



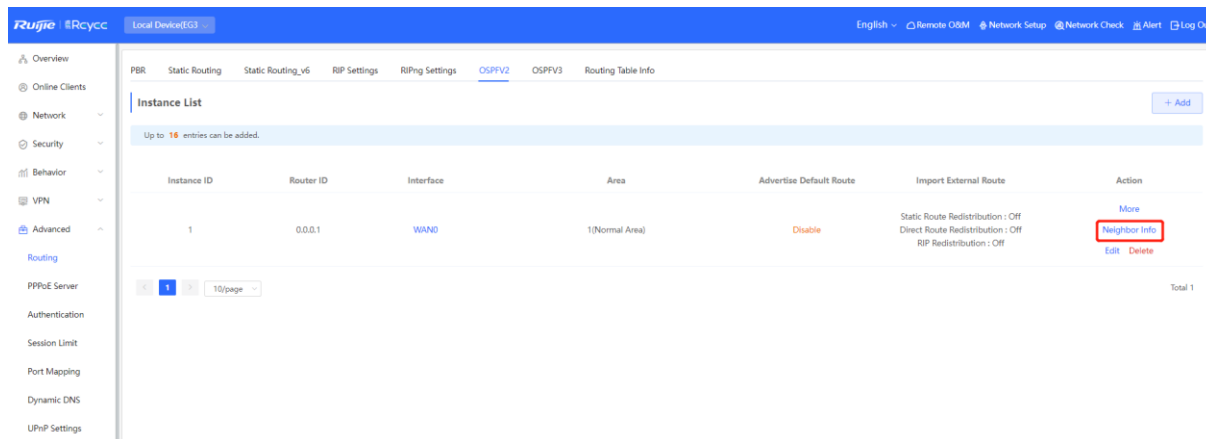
5. Managing OSPFv2 Neighbors

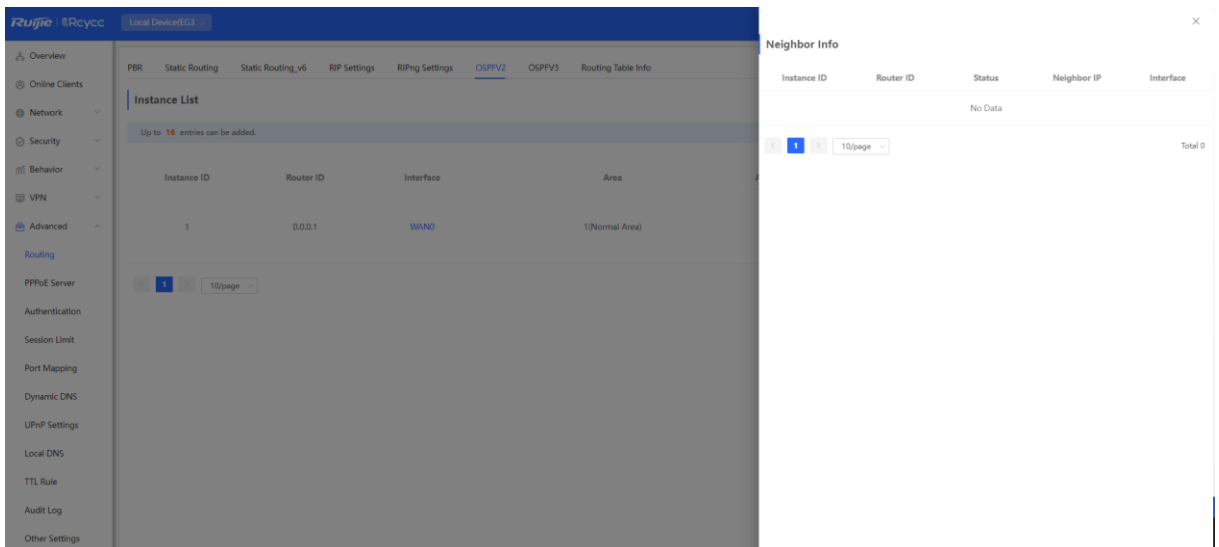
Choose **Local Device** > **Advanced** > **Routing** > **OSPFV2**, select the instance to be configured in **Instance List**, and choose **More** > **V2 Neighbor Management**.



6. Viewing OSPFv2 Neighbor Information

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Routing > OSPFV2**, select the instance to be configured in **Instance List**, and click **Neighbor Info**.





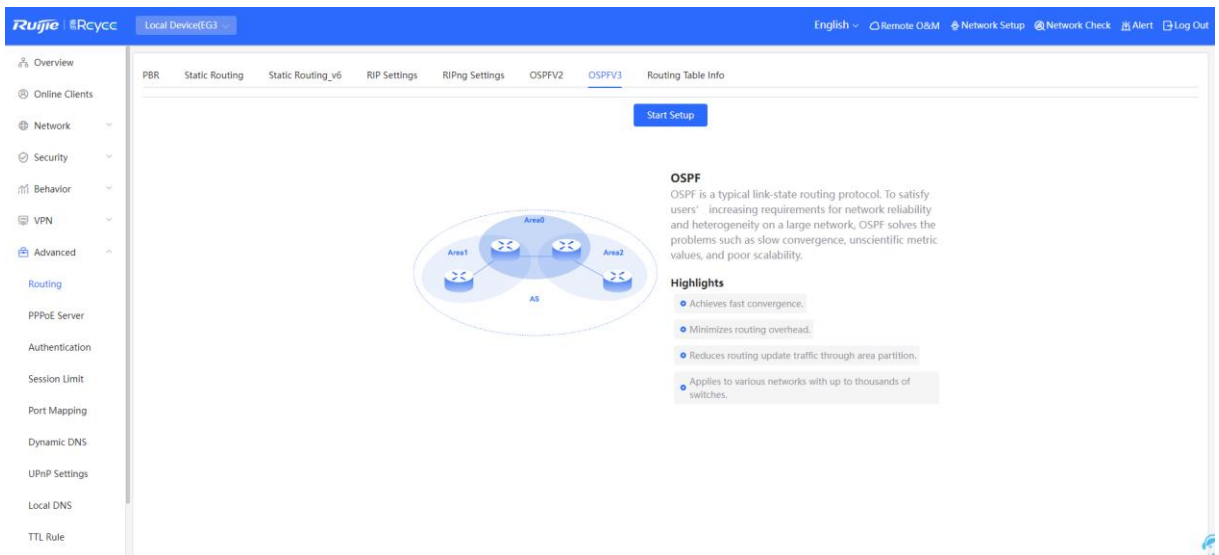
3.10.6 OSPF v3

Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) can be applied to large-scale networks. IPv4 uses OSPFv2, and IPv6 uses OSPFv3.

1. Configuring OSPFv3 Basic Parameters

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Routing > OSPFV3**, click **Start Setup**, and then configure an instance and an interface respectively.

(1) Configure an instance.



a Configure basic parameters for an instance.

1 ————— 2 ————— 3
 Configure the instance. **Configure the interface.** Operation succeeded.

* Router ID ?

Advertise Default
Route

Import External Route Static Route Redistribution
 Direct Route Redistribution
 RIP Redistribution

----- [Details](#) -----

[Previous](#)

[Next](#)

Table 3-23 Description of Basic OSPF Instance Configuration Parameters

Parameter	Description
Instance ID	Create an OSPF instance based on the service type. The instance only takes effect locally, and does not affect packet exchange with other devices.
Router ID	It identifies a router in an OSPF domain. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Caution Router IDs within the same domain must be unique. The same configuration may cause neighbor discovery failures.</p> </div>

Parameter	Description
Advertise Default Route	<p>Generate a default route and send it to the neighbor.</p> <p>After this function is enabled, you need to enter the metric and select a type. The default metric is 1.</p> <p>Type 1: The metrics displayed on different routers vary.</p> <p>Type 2: The metrics displayed on all routers are the same.</p>
Import External Route	<p>Redistribute routes of other protocols to the OSPF domain to interwork with other routing domains.</p> <p>If Static Route Redistribution is selected, enter the metric, which is 20 by default.</p> <p>If Direct Route Redistribution is selected, enter the metric, which is 20 by default.</p> <p>If RIP Redistribution is selected, enter the metric, which is 20 by default.</p>

- b Click **Details** to display detailed configurations.

----- Details -----

Distance

Intra-Area
Optional.Default:110

Inter-Area
Optional.Default:110

External
Optional.Default:110

LSA

Generation Delay
Optional.Defau

Received Delay
Optional.Default

SPF Calculation

Waiting Interval
Optional.Default

Min Interval
Optional.Default:50

Max Interval
Optional.Default:50

Graceful Restart

Graceful Restart

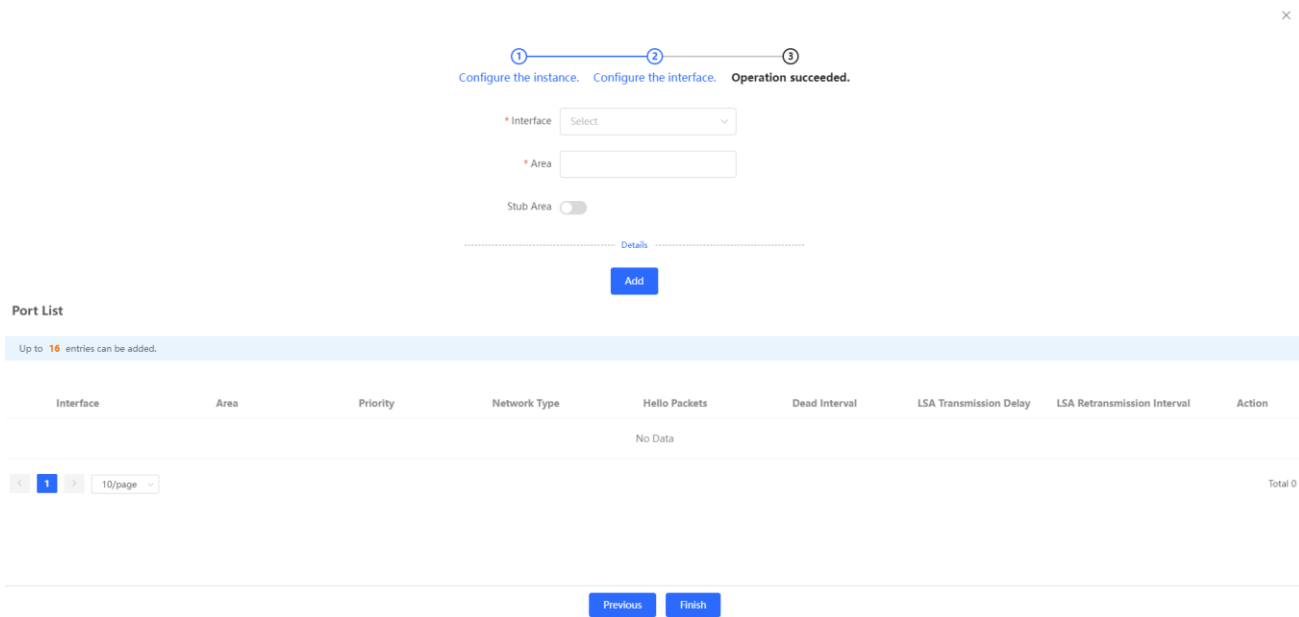
Helper

Table 3-24 Description of Detailed OSPF Instance Configuration Parameters

Parameter	Description
Distance	It is used for protocol selection. By default, the intra-area, inter-area, and external distances are all 110 .
LSA	Frequent network changes and route flapping may occupy too much network bandwidth and device resources. The LSA generation and reception delays are specified in OSPF by default. The default value is 1000 ms.

Parameter	Description
SPF Calculation	<p>When the link state database (LSDB) changes, OSPF recalculates the shortest path, and sets the interval to prevent frequent network changes from occupying a large number of resources</p> <p>Waiting Interval: When the state changes, the timer is triggered. The delay is calculated for the first time after the timer expires. The default value is 0 ms.</p> <p>Min Interval: As the number of changes increases, the time of each interval will increase according to the algorithm, and the default value is 50 ms.</p> <p>Max Interval: When the calculated interval reaches the maximum interval, the subsequent interval is always equal to the maximum interval. If the time from the last calculation exceeds the maximum interval and the LSDB is not updated, the timer is disabled.</p>
Graceful Restart	<p>Graceful Restart (GR) can avoid route flapping caused by traffic interruption and active/standby board switchover, thus ensuring the stability of key services.</p> <p>Graceful Restart Helper: The Graceful Restart Helper function is enabled when this switch is turned on.</p> <p>LSA Check: LSA packets outside the domain are checked when this switch is turned on.</p> <p>Max Wait Time: Timing starts after the device receives the GR packet from the peer device. If the peer device does not complete GR within Max Wait Time, the device exits the GR Helper mode. The default value is 1800 seconds.</p>

(2) Configure an interface.



- a Configure basic parameters for an interface.

Table 3-25 Description of Basic OSPF Interface Configuration Parameters

Parameter	Description
Interface	Select the OSPF-enabled L3 interface.
Area	Configure the area ID. Value range: 0-4294967295
Stub Area	<p>If Stub Area is enabled, you need to configure the area type and inter-area route isolation.</p> <p>Stub area: Routers at the edge of the area do not advertise routes outside the area, and the routing table in the area is small.</p> <p>Not-So-Stubby Area (NSSA): A few external routes can be imported.</p>

- b Click **Details** to display detailed configurations.

----- Details -----

Priority

Network Type

Hello Packets

Dead Interval

LSA Transmission Delay

LSA Retransmission Interval

Ignore MTU Check

Table 3-26 Description of Detailed OSPF Interface Configuration Parameters

Parameter	Description
Priority	It is 1 by default.
Network Type	Broadcast Unicast Multicast Non-Broadcast Multiple Access
Hello Packets	Interval for periodic transmission, which is used to discover and maintain OSPF neighbor relationship. The default value is 10 seconds.
Dead Interval	Time after which the neighbor becomes invalid. The default value is 40 seconds.

Parameter	Description
LSA Transmission Delay	LSA transmission delay of the interface. The default value is 1 second.
LSA Retransmission Interval	Time after which LSA is retransmitted after LSA is lost. The default value is 5 seconds.
Interface Auth	<p>No Auth: The protocol packets are not authenticated. It is the default value.</p> <p>Plain Text: The protocol packets are authenticated, and the authentication key is transmitted with the protocol packets in the form of plain text.</p> <p>MD5: The protocol packets are authenticated, and the authentication key is MD5 encrypted and then transmitted with the protocol packets.</p>
Ignore MTU Check	Enabled by default.

c Click **Add** to add an interface to **Interface List**.

(2) Click **Finish**.



Operation succeeded.

Disable

After you complete configuration, choose **Advanced > Routing > OSPFV3** to check **Instance List**.

PBR Static Routing Static Routing_v6 RIP Settings RIPng Settings OSPFV2 OSPFV3 Routing Table Info

OSPFv3

Up to 1 entries can be added.

Router ID	Interface	Area	Advertise Default Route	Import External Route	Distance	SPF Calculation	Graceful Restart Helper	Action
0.0.0.11	WAN0	1(Normal Area)	Disable	Static Route Redistribution : Off Direct Route Redistribution : Off RIP Redistribution : Off			Disable	More Neighbor Info Edit Delete

< 1 > 10/page Total 1

2. Adding an OSPFv3 Interface

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Routing > OSPFV3**, select the instance to be configured in **Instance List**, and choose **More > V3 Interface**.

PBR Static Routing Static Routing_v6 RIP Settings RIPng Settings OSPFV2 **OSPFV3** Routing Table Info

OSPFV3

Up to 1 entries can be added.

Router ID	Interface	Area	Advertise Default Route	Import External Route	Distance	SPF Calculation	Graceful Restart	Action
0.0.0.11	WAN0	1(Normal Area)	Disable	Static Route Redistribution : Off Direct Route Redistribution : Off RIP Redistribution : Off		V3 Interface V3 Stub Area Management		More Neighbor Info Edit Delete

< 1 > 10/page Total 1

V3 Interface

Interface: Select
* Area:
Priority: Optional.Default:1
Network Type: Broadcast
Hello Packets: Optional.Default:10(s)

Port List

Up to 64 entries can be added.

Interface	Area	Priority	Network Type	Hello Packets	Dead Interval	LSA Transmission Delay	LSA Retransmission Interval	Action
WAN0	1		Broadcast					Edit Delete

< 1 > 10/page Total 1

3. Managing OSPFv3 Stub Areas

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Routing > OSPFV3**, select the instance to be configured in **Instance List**, and choose **More > V3 Stub Area Management**.

Ruijie RCycc Local Device(EG3) English Remote O&M Network Setup Network Check Alert Log Out

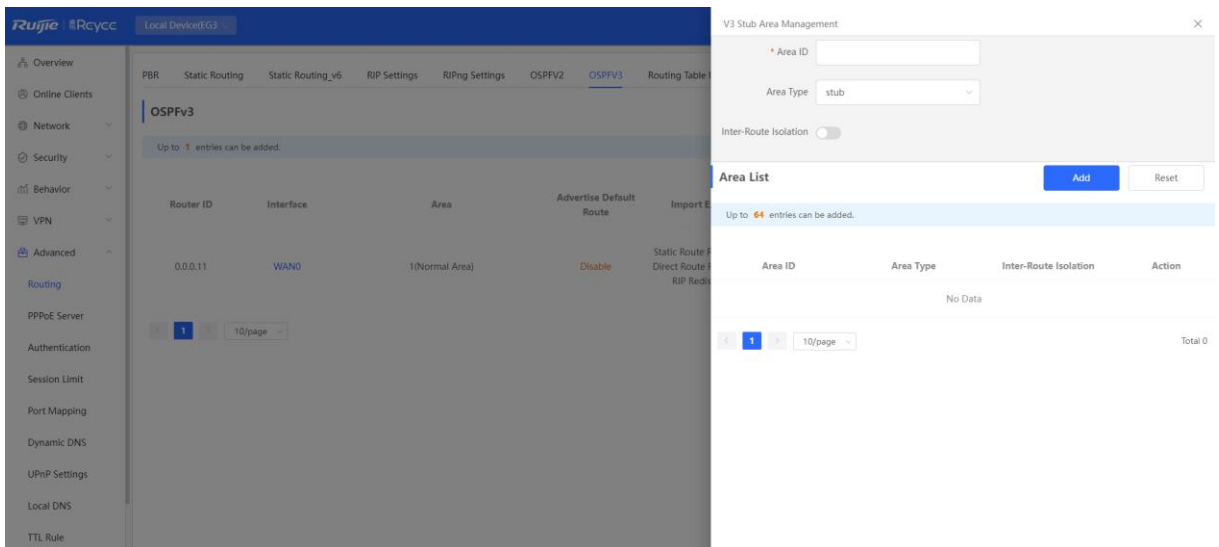
PBR Static Routing Static Routing_v6 RIP Settings RIPng Settings OSPFV2 **OSPFV3** Routing Table Info

OSPFV3

Up to 1 entries can be added.

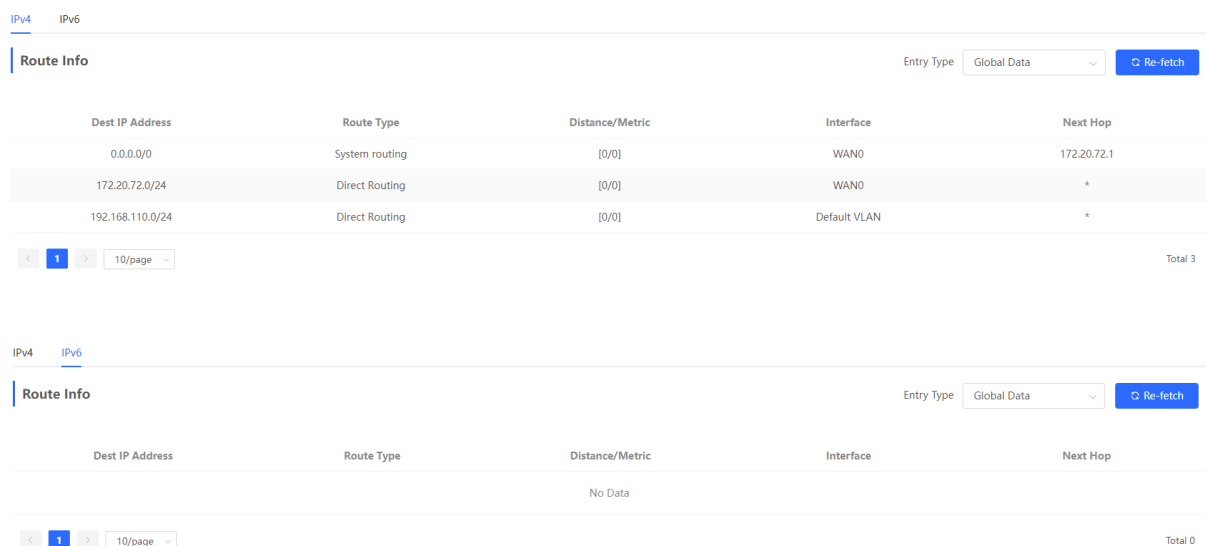
Router ID	Interface	Area	Advertise Default Route	Import External Route	Distance	SPF Calculation	Graceful Restart	Action
0.0.0.11	WAN0	1(Normal Area)	Disable	Static Route Redistribution : Off Direct Route Redistribution : Off RIP Redistribution : Off		V3 Interface V3 Stub Area Management		More Neighbor Info Edit Delete

< 1 > 10/page Total 1



3.10.7 Viewing Routing Tables

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Routing > Routing Table Info** to view IPv4 and IPv6 routing table details.



3.11 Configuring ARP Binding and ARP Guard

3.11.1 Overview

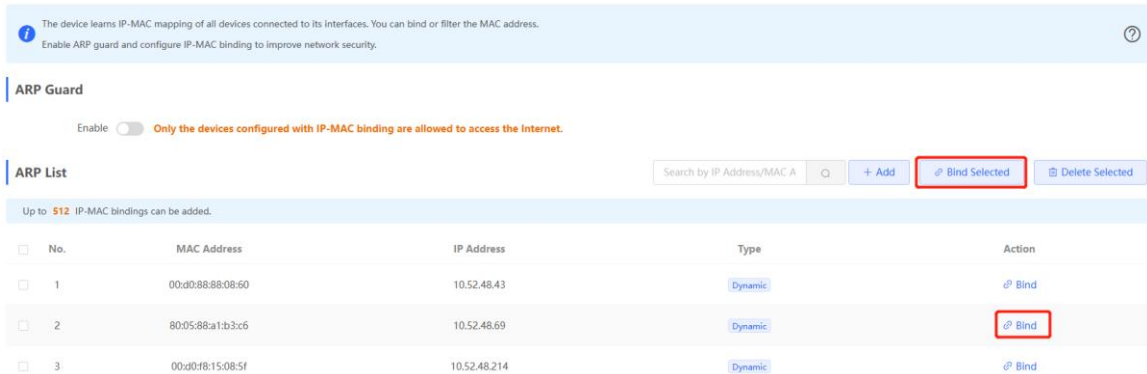
The device learns the IP address and MAC address of the network devices connected to its interfaces and generates the corresponding ARP entries. You can enable ARP guard and configure IP-MAC binding to restrict Internet access of LAN hosts and improve network security.

3.11.2 Configuring ARP Binding

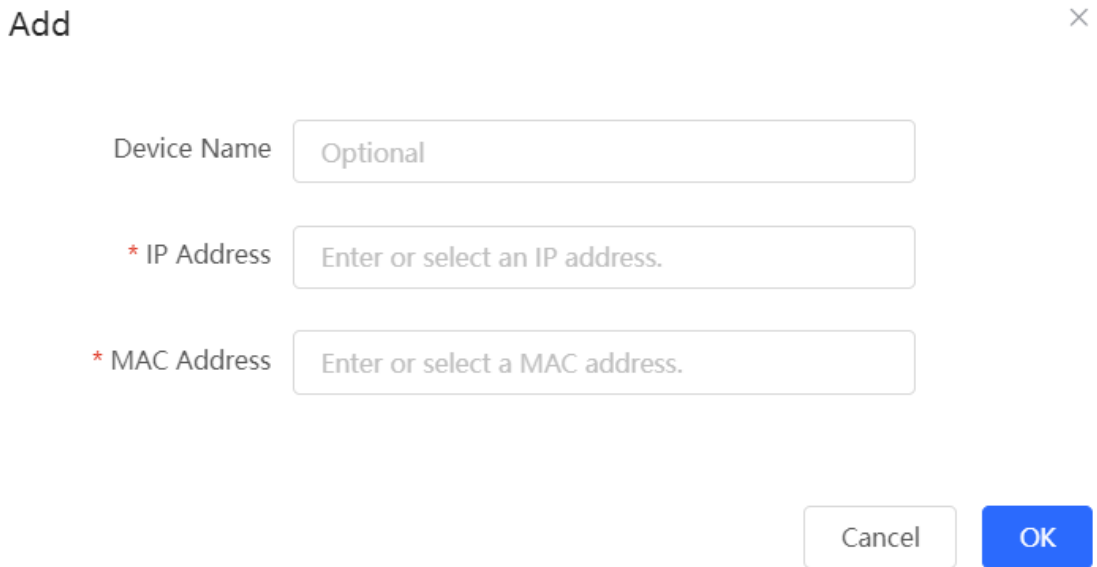
Choose **Local Device > Security > ARP List**.

Before you enable ARP guard, you must configure the binding between IP addresses and MAC addresses in either of the following ways:

- (1) Select a dynamic ARP entry in the ARP list and click **Bind**. You can select multiple entries to be bound at one time and click **Bind Selected** to bind them.



- (2) Click **Add**, enter the device name, IP address and MAC address to be bound, and click **OK**. The input box can display existing address mappings in the ARP list. You can click a mapping to automatically enter the address mapping.



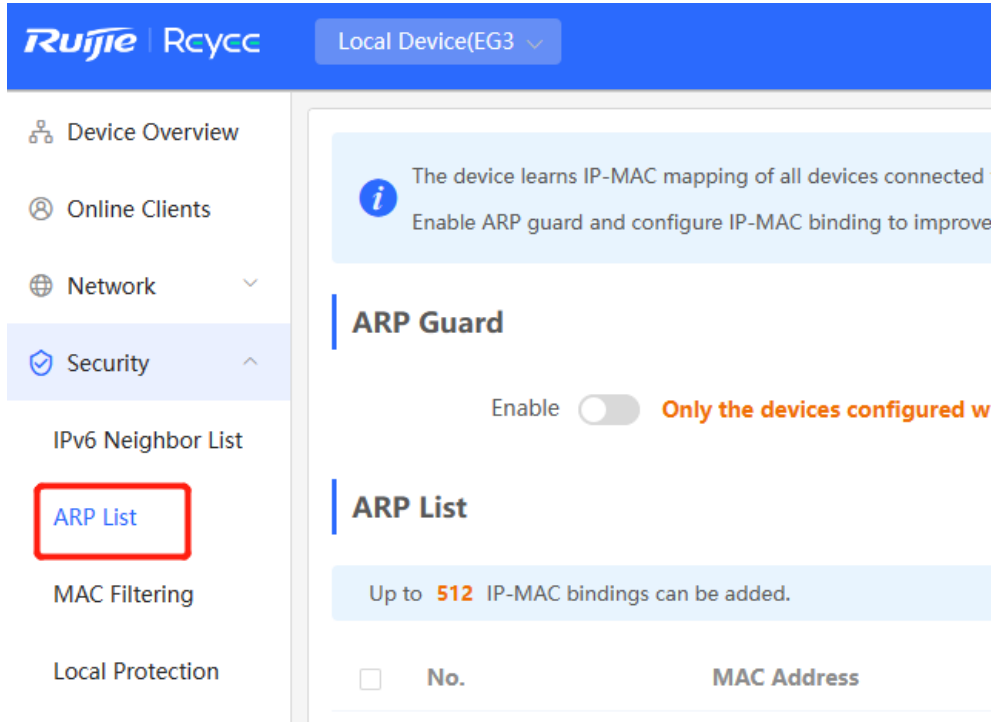
To remove the binding between a static IP address and a MAC address, click **Delete** in the **Action** column.



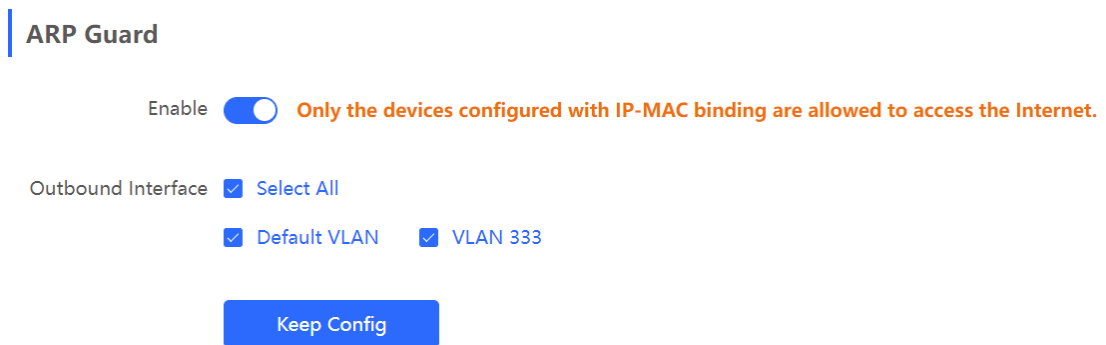
3.11.3 Configuring ARP Guard

After ARP guard is enabled, only LAN hosts with IP-MAC binding can access the external network. For details on how to configure ARP binding, see Section [3.10.2 Configuring ARP Binding](#).

- (1) Choose **Local Device > Security > ARP List**.



- (2) Turn on **Enable** in the **ARP Guard** section to enable ARP guard.



- (3) Set the range for the function to take effect.

If you select **Select All**, the ARP guard function will take effect on all clients on the LAN. If you select a specified port, the ARP guard function will take effect only on clients connected to the port.

3.12 Configuring MAC Address Filtering

3.12.1 Overview

You can enable MAC address filtering and configure an **Allowlist** or **Blocklist** to effectively control Internet access from LAN hosts.

- **Allowlist:** Allow only hosts whose MAC addresses are in the filter rule list to access the Internet.
- **Blocklist:** Deny hosts whose MAC addresses are in the filter rule list from accessing the Internet.

3.12.2 Configuration Steps

Choose **Local Device > Security > MAC Filtering**.

- (1) Click **Add**. In the dialog box that appears, enter the MAC address and remarks. The input box can display existing address mappings in the ARP list. You can click a mapping to automatically enter the MAC address. Click **OK**. A filter rule is created.

- (2) Turn on **MAC Filtering**, set **Filtering Type**, and click **Save**.

MAC Filtering

MAC Filtering

The following hosts are not allowed to access
the Internet.

Filtering Type

Save

3.13 Configuring the PPPoE Server

3.13.1 Overview

Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet (PPPoE) is a network tunneling protocol that encapsulates PPP frames inside Ethernet frames. When the router functions as a PPPoE server, it provides the access service to LAN users and supports bandwidth management.

3.13.2 Global Settings

Choose **Local Device** > **Advanced** > **PPPoE Server** > **Global Settings**.

Set **PPPoE Server** to **Enable** and configure PPPoE server parameters.

Global Settings Account Settings Account Management Exceptional IP Address Online Clients

Global Settings

i 1. MAC binding and MAC filtering are not valid for PPPoE clients.
 2. The IP address of the PPPoE server cannot overlap with any interface IP range.
 3. The authentication function is not valid for PPPoE clients.

PPPoE Server Enable Disabled

Mandatory PPPoE Dialup Enable Disable

* Local Tunnel IP

* IP Range

VLAN

Primary DNS Server

Secondary DNS Server

* Unanswered LCP Range: 1-60
 Packet Limit

Auth Mode PAP CHAP
 MSCHAP MSCHAP2

Table 3-27 PPPoE server configuration

Parameter	Description
PPPoE Server	Specify whether to enable the PPPoE server function.
Mandatory PPPoE Dialup	Specify whether LAN users must access the Internet through dialing.
Local Tunnel IP	Set the point-to-point address of the PPPoE server.
IP Range	Specify the IP address range that can be allocated by the PPPoE server to authenticated users.
VLAN	Set the VLAN of the current PPPoE server.
Primary/Secondary DNS Server	Specify the DNS server address delivered to authenticated users.
Unanswered LCP Packet Limit	When the number of LCP packets not answered in one link exceeds the specified value, the PPPoE server automatically disconnects the link.

Parameter	Description
Auth Mode	Select at least one authentication mode from the following: PAP, CHAP, MSCHAP, and MSCHAP2.

3.13.3 Configuring a PPPoE User Account

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > PPPoE Server > Account Settings**.

Click **Add** to create a PPPoE authentication user account. The currently created PPPoE authentication user accounts are displayed in the **Account List** section. Find the target account and click **Edit** to modify the account information. Find the target account and click **Delete** to delete the account.

Add
✕

* Username

* Password

Expire Date

Remarks

Status

Rate Limiting

* Account Management

Table 3-28 PPPoE user account configuration

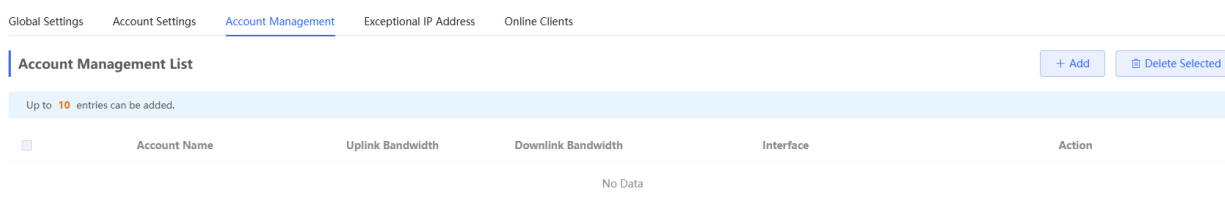
Parameter	Description
Username/Password	Set the username and password of the authentication account for Internet access through PPPoE dialing.
Expire Date	Set the expiration date of the authentication account. After the account expires, it can no longer be used for Internet access through PPPoE authentication.
Remark	Enter the account description.
Status	Specify whether to enable this user account. If the account is disabled, the account is invalid and cannot be used for Internet access through PPPoE authentication.
Rate Limiting	Specify whether to apply flow control on the account. If flow control is enabled, you need to configure flow control policies for the PPPoE authentication user. If smart flow control is disabled, Rate Limiting must be turned off. To turn on Rate Limiting, enable smart flow control first.
Account Management	After flow control is enabled, you need to configure a flow control package for the current account to restrict user bandwidth accordingly. For details on how to configure and view flow control packages, see Section 3.12.4 Configuring a Flow Control Package .

3.13.4 Configuring a Flow Control Package

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > PPPoE Server > Account Management**.

If smart flow control is disabled, the flow control package for the account does not take effect. Before you configure a flow control package, enable smart flow control first. For details on how to set smart flow control, see [Section 6.6.2 Smart Flow Control](#).

Click **Add** to create a flow control package. The currently created flow control packages are displayed in the **Account Management List** section. You can modify or delete the packages.



Add
×

* Account Name

Uplink Bandwidth

* Limit-at
 Mbps
 * Max-Limit
 Mbps ?

Max-Limit
 Mbps
 per User

Downlink Bandwidth

* Limit-at
 Mbps
 * Max-Limit
 Mbps ?

Max-Limit
 Mbps
 per User

* Interface

Table 3-29 PPPoE user flow control package configuration

Parameter	Description
Account Name	Set the name of the flow control package. When you configure an authentication account, you can select a flow control package based on the name.
Uplink Bandwidth	<p>The following uplink bandwidth options can be configured, all measured in Mbps.</p> <p>Limit-at: Guaranteed available uplink bandwidth for authenticated users when bandwidth resources are limited.</p> <p>Max-Limit: Maximum available uplink bandwidth for authenticated users when bandwidth resources are sufficient.</p> <p>Max-Limit per User: Maximum available uplink bandwidth for each user. This parameter is optional and the default value is no limit.</p>
Downlink Bandwidth	<p>The following downlink bandwidth options can be configured, all measured in Mbps.</p> <p>Limit-at: Guaranteed available downlink bandwidth for authenticated users when bandwidth resources are limited.</p> <p>Max-Limit: Maximum available downlink bandwidth for authenticated users when bandwidth resources are sufficient.</p> <p>Max-Limit per User: Maximum available downlink bandwidth for each user. This parameter is optional and the default value is no limit.</p>

Parameter	Description
Interface	Specify the interface to which the flow control package applies.

3.13.5 Configuring Exceptional IP Addresses

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > PPPoE Server > Exceptional IP Address**.

When the PPPoE server is enabled, if you want to allow some IP addresses in a specific VLAN to access the Internet without passing account and password authentication, you can configure these IP addresses as exceptional IP addresses.

The currently created exceptional IP addresses are displayed in the **Exceptional IP Address List** section. Click **Edit** to modify the exceptional IP address. Click **Delete** to delete the exceptional IP address.

Start IP Address/End IP Address: Start and end of exceptional IP addresses.

Remark: Description of an exceptional IP address.

Status: Whether the exceptional IP address is effective.

Global Settings
Account Settings
Account Management
Exceptional IP Address
Online Clients

i Exceptional IP Address ?

Exceptional IP Address List

+ Add

Delete Selected

Up to 5 entries can be added.

	Start IP Address	End IP Address	Remark	Status	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	172.26.1.2	172.26.1.100		Enable	Edit Delete

Add
×

* Start IP

Address

* End IP

Address

Remark

Status

Cancel OK

3.13.6 Viewing Online Users

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > PPPoE Server > Online Clients**.

View the information of end users that access the Internet through PPPoE dialing. Click **Disconnect** to disconnect the user from the PPPoE server.

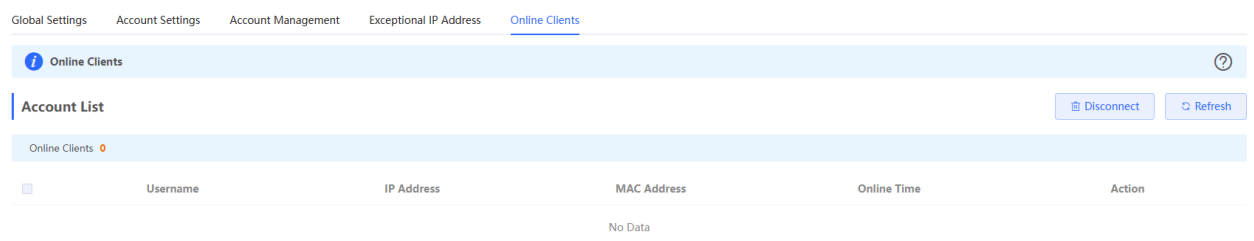


Table 3-30 PPPoE online user information

Parameter	Description
Username	Total number of online users that access the Internet through PPPoE dialing.
IP Address	IP address of the client.
MAC Address	MAC address of the client.
Online Time	Time when the user accesses the Internet.

3.14 Port Mapping

3.14.1 Overview

1. Port Mapping

The port mapping function can establish a mapping relationship between the IP address and port number of a WAN port and the IP address and port number of a server in the LAN, so that all access traffic to a service port of the WAN port will be redirected to the corresponding port of the specified LAN server. This function enables external users to actively access the service host in the LAN through the IP address and port number of the specified WAN port.

Application scenario: Port mapping enables users to access the cameras or computers in their home network when they are in the enterprise or on a business trip.

2. NAT-DMZ

When an incoming data packet does not hit any port mapping entry, the packet is redirected to the LAN server according to the Demilitarized Zone (DMZ) rule. All data packets actively sent from the Internet to the device are forwarded to the designated DMZ host, thus realizing LAN server access of external network users. DMZ not only realizes the external network access service, but also ensures the security of other hosts in the LAN.

Application scenario: Configure port mapping or DMZ when an external network user wants to access the LAN server, for example, access a server deployed in the home network when the user is in the enterprise or on a business trip.

3.14.2 Getting Started

- Confirm the intranet IP address of the mapping device on the LAN and the port number used by the service.
- Confirm that the mapped service can be normally used on the LAN.

3.14.3 Configuration Steps

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Port Mapping > Port Mapping**.

Click **Add**. In the dialog box that appears, enter the rule name, service type, protocol type, external port/range, internal server IP address, and internal port/range. You can create a maximum of 50 port mapping rules.

Port Mapping NAT-DMZ

Port Mapping ⓘ

Port Mapping List + Add Delete Selected

Up to 50 entries can be added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Protocol	External IP Address	External Port	Internal IP Address	Internal Port	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	test	TCP	172.26.1.200	3389	192.168.110.236	80	Edit Delete

Add
×

* Name

Preferred Server

Protocol

External IP Address Outbound Interface
 Enter or select an IP address.

* External Port/Range

* Internal IP Address

* Internal Port/Range

Table 3-31 Port mapping configuration

Parameter	Description
Name	Enter the description of the port mapping rule, which is used to identify the rule.
Preferred Server	Select the type of service to be mapped, such as HTTP or FTP. The internal port number commonly used by the service is automatically entered. If you are not sure about the service type, select Custom .
Protocol	Select the transmission layer protocol type used by the service, such as TCP or UDP . The value ALL indicates that the rule applies to both protocols. The value must comply with the client configuration of the service.
External IP Address	Specify the host address used for accessing the external network. You can set it to the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Outbound Interface: You can select All WAN Ports or specify a WAN port. ● Enter or select an IP address: Select or enter the IP address of a WAN port.

Parameter	Description
External Port/Range	Specify the port number used for Internet access. You need to confirm the port number in the client software, such as the camera monitoring software. You can enter a port number or a port range, such as 1050-1060. If you enter a port range, the value of Internal Port/Range must also be a port range.
Internal IP Address	Specify the IP address of the internal server to be mapped to the WAN port, that is, the IP address of the LAN device that provides Internet access, such as the IP address of the network camera.
Internal Port/Range	Specify the service port number of the internal server to be mapped to the WAN port, that is, the port number of the application that provides Internet access, such as port 8080 of the Web service. You can enter a port number or a port range, such as 1050-1060. If you enter a port range, the number of ports must be the same as that specified in External Port/Range .

3.14.4 Verification and Test

Check whether the external network device can access services on the destination host using the external IP address and external port number.

3.14.5 Solution to Test Failure

- (1) Modify the value of **External Port/Range** and use the new external port number to perform the test again. The possible cause is that the port is blocked by the firewall.
- (2) Enable the remote access permission on the server. The possible cause is that remote access is displayed on the server, resulting in normal internal access but abnormal access across network segments.
- (3) Configure DMZ rules. For details, see [Section 3.13.6 Configuration Steps \(DMZ\)](#). The possible cause is that the specified ports are incorrect or incomplete.

3.14.6 Configuration Steps (DMZ)

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Port Mapping > NAT-DMZ**.

Click **Add**. Enter the rule name and internal server IP address, select the interface to which the rule applies, specify the rule status, and click **OK**. You can configure only one DMZ rule for an outbound interface.

Port Mapping [NAT-DMZ](#)

NAT-DMZ ?
 You can view NAT-DMZ settings and edit or delete the rule.

NAT-DMZ Rule List + Add Delete Selected

There are **3** outbound interfaces. Up to **3** rules can be added.

	Name	Outbound Interface	Dest IP Address	Status	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	test	WAN1	192.168.110.222	Enable ☺	Edit Delete

Add Rule ×

* Name

* Dest IP Address

Outbound Interface ▾

Status

Cancel
OK

Table 3-32 DMZ rule configuration

Parameter	Description
Name	Enter the description of the mapping rule, which is identify the DMZ rule.
Dest IP Address	Specify the IP address of the DMZ host to which packets are redirected, that is, the IP address of the internal server that can be accessed from the Internet.
Outbound Interface	Specify the WAN port in the DMZ rule. You can configure only one rule for a WAN port.
Status	Specify whether the rule is effective. The rule is effective after you turn on Status .

3.15 UPnP

3.15.1 Overview

After the Universal Plug and Play (UPnP) function is enabled, the device can change the port used by the Internet access service according to the client request, implementing NAT. When a client on the Internet wants to access the internal resources on the LAN device, the device can automatically add port mapping entries to realize traversal of some services between internal and external networks. The following commonly used programs support the UPnP protocol: MSN Messenger, Thunder, BT, and PPLive.

Before you use the UPnP service, note that clients (PCs and mobile phones) used in combination also support UPnP.

Note

To implement automatic port mapping using UPnP, the following conditions must be met:

- UPnP is enabled on the device.
- The operating system of the LAN host supports UPnP and has UPnP enabled.
- The programs support UPnP and have UPnP enabled.

3.15.2 Configuring UPnP

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > UPnP**.

Turn on Enable to enable the UPnP function. Select a port from the drop-down list box of **Default Interface**. Click **Save** to make the configuration take effect.

If any relevant program converts the port automatically, the information is displayed in the **UPnP List** section.

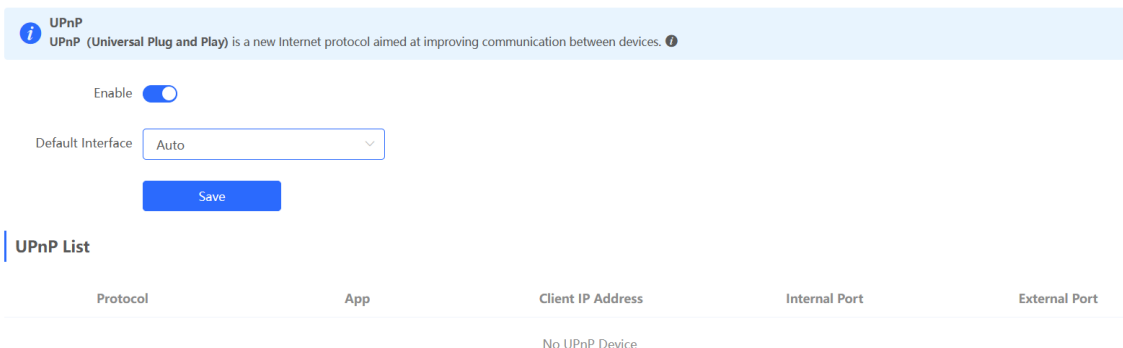


Table 3-33 UPnP configuration

Parameter	Description
Enable	Specify whether to enable UPnP. By default, UPnP is disabled.
Default Interface	Specify the WAN port address bound to the UPnP service. By default, the default interface is a WAN port. On the device with multiple WAN ports, you can manually select the WAN port to bind or set this parameter to Auto to allow the device to select a WAN port automatically.

3.15.3 Verifying Configuration

After the UPnP service is enabled, open a program that supports the UPnP protocol (such as Thunder or BitComet) on the client used with the device, and refresh the Web page on the device. If a UPnP entry is displayed in the UPnP list, a UPnP tunnel is created successfully.

3.16 DDNS

3.16.1 Overview

After the Dynamic Domain Name Server (DDNS) service is enabled, external users can use a fixed domain name to access service resources on the device over the Internet at any time, without the need to search for the WAN port IP address. You need to register an account and a domain name on the third-party DDNS service provider for this service. The device supports No-IP DNS and Other DNS.

3.16.2 Getting Started

Before you use the DDNS service, register an account and a domain name on the DDNS or No-IP official website.

3.16.3 Configuring DDNS

1. No-IP DNS

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Dynamic DNS > No-IP DNS**.

Enter the registered username and password and click Log In to initiate a connection request to the server. The binding between the domain name and WAN port IP address of the device takes effect.

Click Delete to clear all the entered information and remove the server connection relationship.

The **Link Status** parameter specifies whether the server connection is established successfully. If you do not specify the domain name upon login, the domain name list of the current account is displayed after successful connection. All the domain names of this account are parsed to the WAN port IP address.

No-IP DNS Other DNS

i No-IP DNS

* Service Interface

* Username [Register](#)

* Password

Domain [?](#)

IPv6 Disable Enable

Link Status -

Domain -

- i** Note
- Both No-IP DNS and other DNS support IPv6 connectivity.
 - To ensure compatibility with the IPsec VPN functionality, you are advised to enable IPv6 when IPv6 is used for IPsec VPN connection.

Table 3-34 DDNS login information

Parameter	Description
Service Interface	One domain name can be parsed to only one IP address. Therefore, you need to specify the WAN port bound to the domain name when multiple WAN ports are available. By default, the service interface is a WAN port.

Parameter	Description
Username & Password	Enter the username and password of the account registered on the official website. If no registered account is available, click Register to switch to the official website and create a new account.
Domain	Specify the domain name bound to the service interface IP address. This parameter is optional for No-IP DNS. One account can be bound to multiple domain names. You can choose to bind only one domain name to the IP address of the current service interface. Only the selected domain name is parsed to the WAN port IP address. If no domain name is specified, all the domain names of the current account are parsed to the WAN port IP address.

2. Other DNS

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Dynamic DNS > Other DNS**.

Select the service provider and service interface, enter the username and password for login, and click **Log In** to initiate a connection request to the server to make the binding relationship between the domain name and the device WAN port IP address effective.

Clicking **Delete** will clear all input information and disconnect from the server.

The connection status indicates whether a connection has been successfully established with the server.

No-IP DNS **Other DNS**

DynDNS

* Service Provider

* Service Interface

* Username

* Password

* Domain ?

Log In

Delete

Link Status -

Table 3-35 DDNS Login Information

Parameter	Description
Service provider	An organization that provides dynamic domain name services, such as 3322.2org, cloudflare. com v4, and aliyun.
Service interface	One domain name can be parsed to only one IP address. Therefore, you need to specify the WAN port bound to the domain name when multiple WAN ports are available. By default, the service interface is a WAN port.
Username & Password	Enter the username and password of the account registered on the official website.
Domain name	Specify the domain name bound to the service interface IP address.

 Note

- Both No-IP DNS and other DNS support IPv6 connectivity.
 - To ensure compatibility with the IPsec VPN functionality, you are advised to enable IPv6 when IPv6 is used for IPsec VPN connection.
-

3. Verifying Configuration

If **Link Status** is displayed as **Connected**, the server connection is established successfully. After the configuration is completed, ping the domain name from the Internet. The ping succeeds and the domain name is parsed to the WAN port IP address.

3.17 Connecting to IPTV

 Caution

To connect to IPTV in the Chinese environment, switch the system language. For details, see [Section 9.11 Switching System Language](#).

IPTV is a network television service provided by the ISP.

3.17.1 Getting Started

- Confirm that the IPTV service is activated.
- Check the local IPTV type: VLAN or IGMP. If the type is VLAN, confirm the VLAN ID. If you cannot confirm the type or VLAN ID, contact the local ISP.

3.17.2 Configuration Steps (VLAN Type)

Choose **Local Device > Network > IPTV > IPTV/VLAN**.

Select a proper mode based on your region, click the drop-down list box next to the interface to connect and select **IPTV**, and enter the VLAN ID provided by the ISP. For example, when you want to connect the IPTV set top box to LAN 3 port of the device and the VLAN ID is 20, the configuration UI is as follows.

Internet VLAN: If you need to set a VLAN ID for the Internet access service, turn on this parameter and enter the VLAN ID. By default, the VLAN tag function is disabled. You are advised to keep the VLAN tag function disabled unless otherwise specified.

After the configuration is completed, confirm that the IPTV set top box is connected to the correct port, for example, LAN 3 in the example.

 Caution

Enabling this function may lead to network disconnection. Exercise caution when performing this operation.

i IPTV/VLAN settings.

IPTV/VLAN

* Mode

* LAN0

* LAN1

* LAN2

* LAN3

* LAN4

* LAN5

* LAN6/WAN3

* LAN7/WAN2

Internet VLAN (WAN) 802.1Q Tag


* Internet VLAN ID * Priority

3.17.3 Configuration Steps (IGMP Type)

Choose **Local Device > Network > IPTV > IPTV/IGMP**.

The IGMP type is applicable to the ISP FPT. After you enable IPTV connection, connect the IPTV set top box to any LAN port on the router.

IPTV/VLAN IPTV/IGMP

 **IPTV/IGMP (For FPT Service Provider)**

IPTV/IGMP

Enable

Save


3.18 Port Flow Control

 Caution

Only the RG-EG105G-E and RG-EG210G-E support this function.

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Port Settings**.

When wired ports of the device work in different rates, data blocking may occur, leading to slow network speed. Enabling port flow control helps relieve the data congestion.

 **Port Flow Control**
Port flow control can relieve the data congestion caused by ports at different speeds and improve the network speed.

Enable



Save

3.19 Limiting the Number of Connections

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Session Limit**.

This function is used to control the maximum number of connections per IP address.

Click **Add** to add an IP session limit rule.

 **IP Session Limit** 
Configure the max number of IP sessions.

Rule List

Up to 20 entries can be added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	IP Range	Session Count Limit	Status	Action
No Data					

Table 3-36 IP session limit rule information

Parameter	Description
Name	Enter the name of the IP session limit rule.
Start IP Address	Enter the start IP address for session matching in the rule.
End IP Address	Enter the end IP address for session matching in the rule.
Session Count Limit	Specify the maximum number of session connections for an IP address matching the rule.
Status	Specify whether the rule is effective. The rule takes effect after you turn on this parameter.

3.20 Configuring Local Security

3.20.1 Configuring an Admin IP Address

Admin IP addresses are exempt from the ping prohibition function. Packets sent from admin IP addresses can pass through and will not be discarded.

Choose **Local Device > Security > Security Zone**.

Click **Add**. Then, you can configure admin IP address information.

Security Zone Attack Defense Security Log

Security Zone

Up to 8 entries can be added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Network Interface	Accessible Security Zones	Authorized Security Zones	Disabled Service	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	Default LAN Zone	LAN VLAN 2 Default VLAN	Default WAN Zone Default Route Zone			Edit Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	Default WAN Zone	WAN WAN0		Default LAN Zone		Edit Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	Default Route Zone	WAN	Default LAN Zone	Default LAN Zone		Edit Delete

Admin IP Address

Up to 32 entries can be added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Username	IP Range/Interface	Action
No Data			

< 1 > 10/page Total 0

1. Configuring an Admin IP Address (Based on an IP Address)

Add



* Username

Specified Mode IP Range Interface

Cancel

OK

- (1) Configure a name for the admin IP address.
The name is a string of 1–32 characters.
- (2) Set **Specific Mode** to **IP Range**.
- (3) Configure an IP address.

You can specify a single P address or an IP address range.

2. Configuring an Admin IP Address (Based on a Port)

Add ×

* Username

Specified Mode IP Range Interface

▾

- (1) Configure a name for the admin IP address.
The name is a string of 1–32 characters.
- (2) Set **Specific Mode** to **Interface**.
- (3) Specify the port.
You can select a LAN port or WAN port as the interface.

3. Deleting an Admin IP Address

- Select an entry and click **Delete** to delete information about the admin IP address.
- Select multiple entries and click **Delete Selected** to bulk delete selected entries.

Admin IP Address + Add

Up to 32 entries can be added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Username	IP Range/Interface	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	WAN0	Edit <input type="button" value="Delete"/>

< **1** > 10/page ▾ Total 1

4. Editing Information About an Admin IP Address

You cannot modify the name and specified mode of an admin IP address but modify the IP address range or port in the specified mode.

Edit ×

* Username

Specified Mode IP Range Interface

Edit ×

* Username

Specified Mode IP Range Interface

3.20.2 Configuring Security Zones

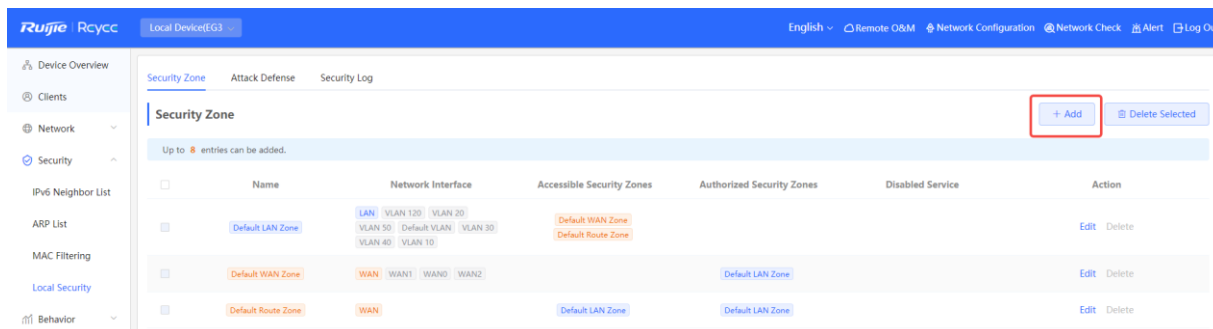
i Note

- This feature is not supported on RG-EG105G-P-L.
 - For devices that do not support SNMP, the SNMP service cannot be disabled in a LAN zone.
-

A security zone is a logical zone consisting of a group of systems that trust each other and share the same security protection requirements. Generally, a security zone consists of a group of interfaces. Networks formed by interfaces in the same security zone share the same security attributes. Each interface can only belong to one security zone.

- Up to eight security zones can be added.
- Pre-defined security zones include:
 - Pre-defined LAN zone: By default, all VLANs are mapped to the pre-defined LAN zone.
 - Pre-defined WAN zone: By default, all WAN interfaces are mapped to the pre-defined WAN zone.

Choose **Security > Local Security > Security Zone**.



- (1) Click **Add**.
- (2) Configure parameters for the security zone.

Add
✕

* Name

* Network Interface LAN WAN

Accessible Security Zones

Authorized Security Zones

Disabled Service WEB PING DNS
 DHCP SNMP

Table 3-37 Description of Security Zone Configuration Parameters

Parameter	Description
Name	Name of the security zone.
Network Interface	Interfaces mapped to the security zone, including LAN and WAN. LAN refers to VLAN, and WAN refers to WAN interfaces. Note: After a new security zone is created and VLANs or WAN interfaces are mapped to this new security zone, the VLANs or WAN interfaces will be removed from the pre-defined LAN zone or pre-defined WAN zone.
Accessible Security Zones	Other security zones to which this security zone can access.
Authorized Security Zones	Other security zones that can access this security zone.
Disabled Service	Services disabled for the security zone.

(3) Click **OK**.

3.20.3 Configuring Session Attack Prevention

1. Overview

- Session Attack Prevention

In a session attack, an attacker sends heavy traffic to the device. In this case, the device has to consume many resources when creating connections. To reduce the impact of the attack, you can limit the rate of creating sessions.

- Flood Attack Prevention

In a flood attack, an attacker sends tremendous abnormal packets to a device. As a result, the device uses a large amount of resources to handle the packets. This causes the device performance to deteriorate or the system to break down.

If the value of TCP SYN and other TCP Flood parameters is too small, the authentication function and access to local web pages will be affected.

If the value of UDP Flood parameter is too small, the DHCP address allocation, DNS domain name resolution, and VPN functionalities will be affected.

You are advised to set the value to be greater than the load capacity of the local device.

- Suspicious Packet Attack Prevention

In a suspicious packet attack, an attacker sends tremendous error packets to the device. When the host or server handles the error packets, its system will crash.

2. Configuring Session Attack Prevention

Choose **Local Device > Security > Security Domain > Attack Defense**.

(1) Enable **Anti Session Attack**.

Anti Session Attack ⓘ **Anti Session Attack**
Global Session Limit session/s
Per-IP Session Limit session/s
Blocked sessions: 0

- (2) Configure the session creation rate limit, including global and per-IP values.
- (3) Click **Save**.

3. Configuring Flood Attack Prevention

Choose **Local Device > Security > Local Security > Attack Defense**.

- (1) Select required attack prevention types and enable this feature.

Security Zone Attack Defense Security Log

Refresh Every 10s

Anti TCP SYN Flood Attack Rate Limit Pkt/s 0 packets blocked

Anti UDP Flood Attack Rate Limit Pkt/s

Anti ICMP Flood Attack Rate Limit Pkt/s

Anti DDoS Attack ⓘ

Anti ARP Flood Attack Rate Limit Pkt/s

Anti Other TCP Flood Attack Rate Limit Pkt/s

Anti Other Packet Flood Attack Rate Limit Pkt/s

- (2) Configure rate limiting.
- (3) Click **Save**.

4. Configuring Suspicious Packet Attack Prevention

Choose **Local Device > Security > Local Security > Attack Defense**.

- (1) Select required attack prevention types and validity check types to enable this feature.

(This feature can prevent attacks including TCP scan attack, Land attack, Teardrop attack, Smurf attack, Ping of Death attack, ICMP / SYN / UDP fragment attack, WinNuke attack, and IP option attack. It is enabled by default and cannot be configured.)

Anti Large Ping Attack Packet Length

Anti Malformed Packet Attack ⓘ
 medium

Anti Fraggle Attack

ICMP Validity Check ⓘ

IP Protocol Validity Check ⓘ

- (2) To enable large ping attack prevention, enter the packet length.
- (3) Click **Save**.

5. Configuring Packet Receiving and Sending Control

Choose **Local Device > Security > Security Domain > Attack Defense**.

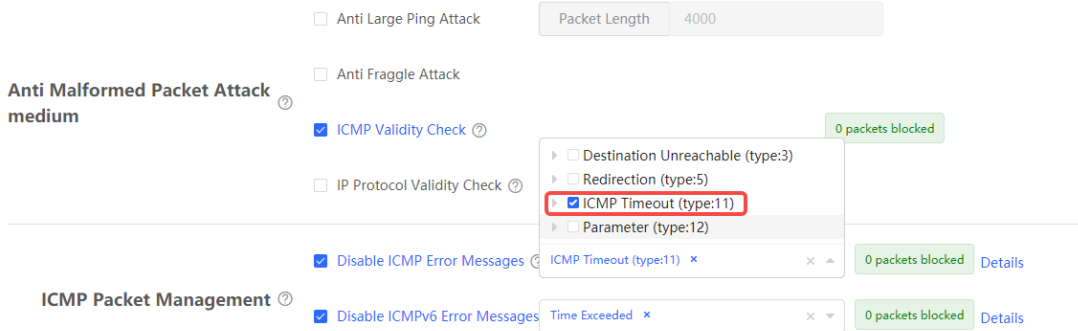
- (1) Select the packet types that are prohibited from being sent by the device. Select at least one packet type.

Disable ICMP Error Message ICMP Timeout (type:1) × 0 packets blocked [Details](#)

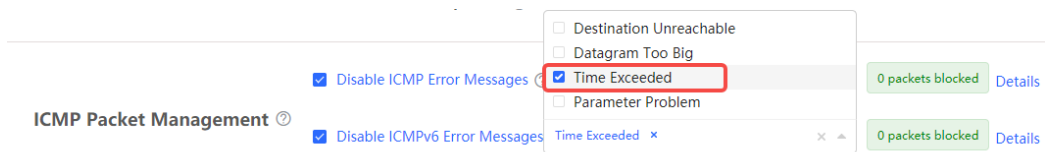
ICMP Packet Management ⓘ

Disable ICMPv6 Error Mess. Time Exceeded × 0 packets blocked [Details](#)

- o Enable **Disable ICMP Error Messages**. You can select **ICMP Timeout**, **Destination Unreachable**, **Redirection**, and **Parameter**.



- o Enable **Disable ICMPv6 Error Message**. You can select **Destination Unreachable**, **Datagram too Big**, **Time Exceeded**, and **Parameter Problem**.

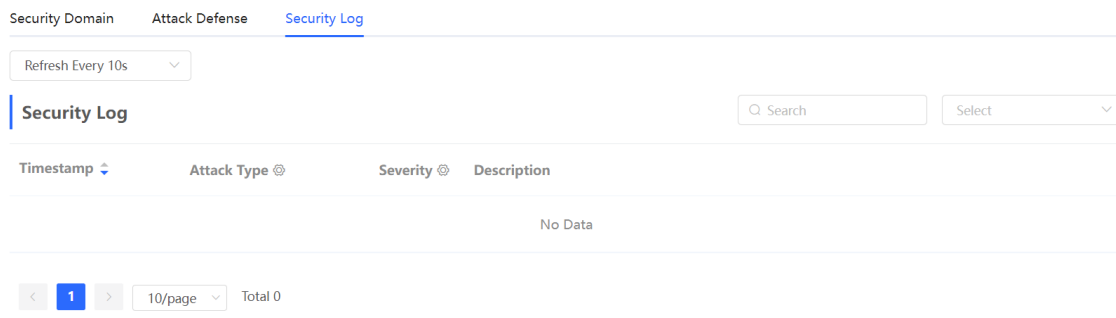


(2) Click **Save**.

3.20.4 Checking the Security Log

Choose **Local Device > Security > Security Domain > Security Log**.

Check defense results of the device against various attacks on the **Security Log** page.



3.21 Configuring TTL Rules

3.21.1 Overview

Time to live (TTL) aims to prevent unauthorized connections. It limits the number of devices that can transmit data packets in the network by limiting the existence time of the data packets in the computer network, so as to prevent infinite transmission of data packets in the network and the waste of resources.

When TTL is set to 1 and is valid for LANs, packets are directly discarded when passing through the next router. If a user connects a router to Ruijie device without permission and connects a client to the router, packets cannot pass through the client, either. This restriction prevents users from connecting routers without permission.

Note

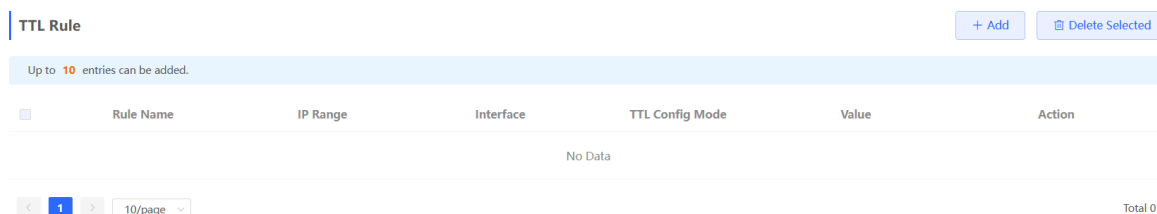
- Changing the TTL affects packet forwarding on the network.

- The following data packets are not affected by this function: data packets forwarded by the express forwarding function of the device, data packets used by Wi-Fi cracking software (Cheetah Wi-Fi) to implement hotspot sharing, data packets forwarded at L2, and data packets passing through devices with TTL changed.

3.21.2 Configuring TTL Rules

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > TTL Rule**.

This operation allows you to change the TTL value in packets forwarded to a specified IP address range or a specified port.



1. Configuring a TTL Rule

Add
×

* Rule Name

Specified Mode IP Range Interface

Please enter an IP address or range.

TTL Config Mode TTL Value TTL Increment
 TTL Decrement

* Value

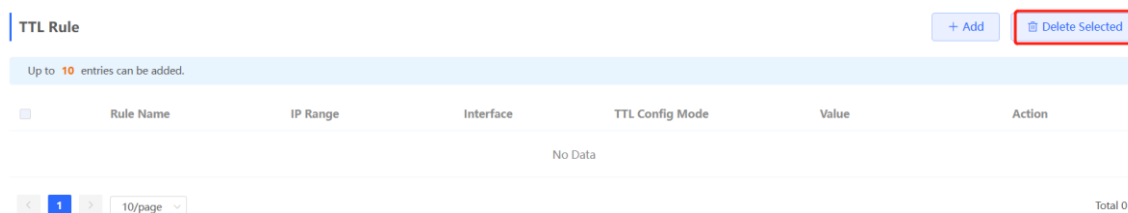
Table 3-38 Description of TTL Rule Configuration

Parameter	Description
Rule Name	Specify the name of a TTL rule.
Specified Mode	Specify the range for the rule to take effect: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● IP Range: Indicates that the TTL rule takes effect on a specified IP address range. ● Interface: Indicates that the TTL rule takes effect on a specified interface.

Parameter	Description
TTL Config Mode	<p>Configure a rule for TTL values in packets.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● TTL Value: Specifies the value, to which the TTL value is changed, after a data packet passes through the device. ● TTL Increment: Specifies the increment of the TTL value on the basis of the original value after a data packet passes through the device. ● TTL Decrement: Specifies the decrement of the TTL value on the basis of the original value after a data packet passes through the device.
Value	Configure the TTL value in packets. The value range is from 1 to 255.

2. Deleting a TTL Rule

- Click **Delete** to delete the configuration of a specified entry.
- Select multiple entries and click **Delete Selected** to bulk delete selected entries.



3. Editing a TTL Rule

Click **Edit**. Change the TTL rule configuration mode and TTL value.

Edit
×

* Rule Name

Specified Mode IP Range Outbound Interface

TTL Config Mode TTL Value TTL Increment
 TTL Decrement

* Value

4. Adjusting the Sequence of TTL Rules

After configuring multiple TTL rules, you can adjust their sequence to specify the rule matching sequence. TTL rules in front rows are matched first, and those in back rows are matched later. If the ranges of rules overlap, the final effect is the superposition of multiple matching results.

TTL Rule							
Up to 10 entries can be added.							
<input type="checkbox"/>	Rule Name	IP Range	Outbound Interface	TTL Config Mode	Value	Match Order	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	1111111	1.1.1.1		TTL Value	64	↓	Edit Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	22222	1.1.1.2-1.1.1.19		TTL Increment	64	↓ ↑	Edit Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	33333		Default VLAN	TTL Decrement	60	↑	Edit Delete

3.22 Other Settings

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Other Settings**.

You can set some functions not frequently used on the Other Settings page. By default, all the functions on this page are disabled.

Enable RIP&RIPng: After this function is enabled, LAN and WAN ports support dynamic routing protocols Routing Information Protocol (RIP) and RIP next generation (RIPng) and can automatically synchronize route information from other RIP-enabled routers in the network.

Enable SIP ALG: Some voice communication uses the Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) protocol. If the server is connected to a WAN port, SIP packets may become unavailable after NAT. After you enable this function, SIP packets are converted by the application-level gateway (ALG). You can enable or disable this function based on actual needs.

i

Other Settings

Enable RIP&RIPng

Encryption No Encryption ▼

Enable SIP ALG

Save

4 AP Management

Note

- To manage the downlink AP, please enable self-organizing network discovery (See Section [3.1 Switching the Work Mode](#) for details.). The wireless settings are synchronized to all wireless devices in the network by default. You can configure groups to limit the device scope under wireless management. For details, see [4.1 AP Management](#).
- The device does not emit the Wi-Fi signals. Deliver the wireless settings to the downlink AP to take effect.

4.1 Configuring AP Groups

4.1.1 Overview

After self-organizing network discovery is enabled, the device can function as the master AP/AC to batch configure and manage its downlink APs by group. Before you configure the APs, divide them to different groups.

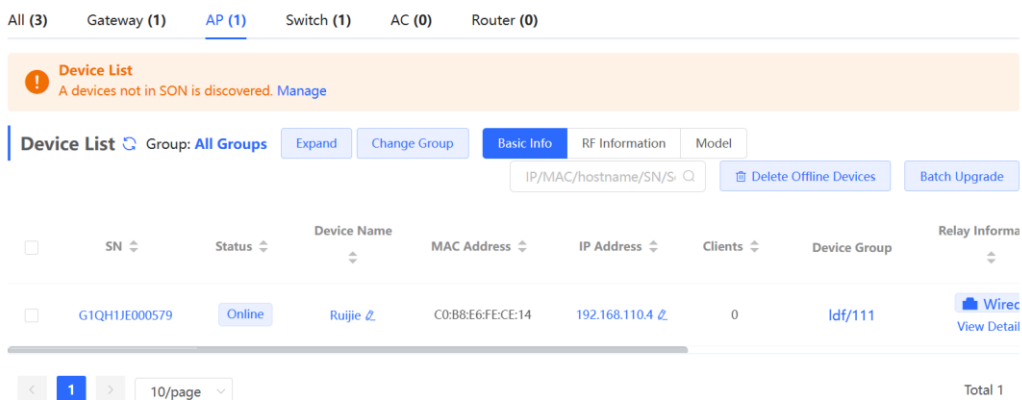
Note

If you specify groups when configuring the wireless network, the configuration takes effect on wireless devices in the specified groups.


4.1.2 Configuration Steps

Choose **Networkwide Management > Network > Devices > AP**.

- (1) View the information of all APs in the current network, including the basic information, RF information, and model. Click the SN of an AP to configure the AP separately.



All (3) Gateway (1) **AP (1)** Switch (1) AC (0) Router (0)




Device List  A devices not in SON is discovered. [Manage](#)

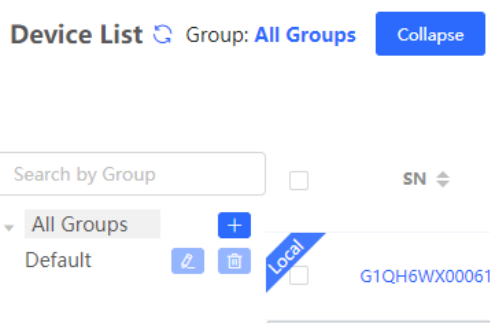
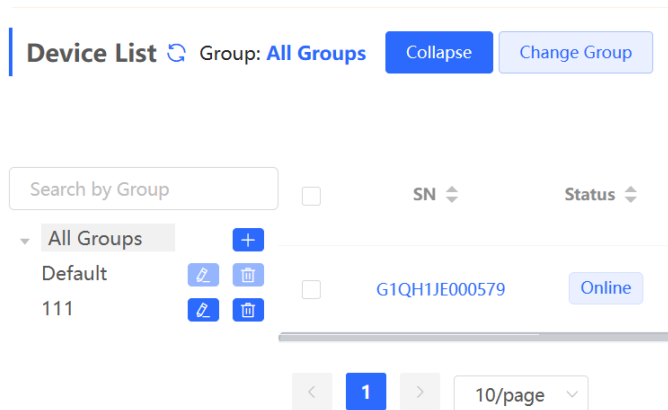
Device List Group: All Groups [Expand](#) [Change Group](#) [Basic Info](#) [RF Information](#) [Model](#)

[IP/MAC/hostname/SN/S](#) [Delete Offline Devices](#) [Batch Upgrade](#)

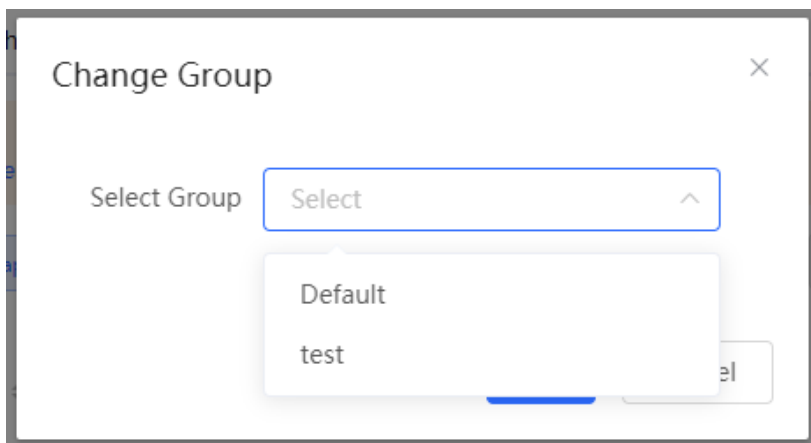
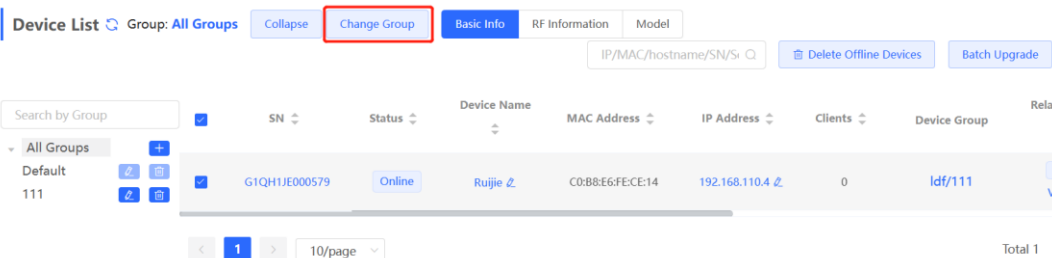
<input type="checkbox"/>	SN	Status	Device Name	MAC Address	IP Address	Clients	Device Group	Relay Informa
<input type="checkbox"/>	G1QH1JE000579	Online	Ruijie	C0:B8:E6:FE:CE:14	192.168.110.4	0	ldf/111	Wirec View Detail

< 1 > 10/page Total 1

- (2) Click **Expand**. Information of all the current groups is displayed to the left of the list. Click  to create a group. You can create a maximum of eight groups. Select the target group and click  to modify the group name or click  to delete the group. You cannot modify the name of the default group or delete the default group.



- (3) Click a group name in the left. All devices in the group are displayed. One device can belong to only one group. By default, all devices belong to the default group. Select a record in the device list and click **Change Group** to migrate the selected device to the specified group. After a device is moved to the specified group, the device will use the configuration for the new group. Click **Delete Offline Devices** to remove offline devices from the list.



4.2 Configuring Wi-Fi

Choose **Networkwide Management > Network > Wi-Fi > Wi-Fi Settings**.

Wi-Fi Settings Device Group:

Up to 8 SSIDs can be added.

Default @@@ldf_8021.x Default VLAN Band:2.4G+5G	+ Add Guest Wi-Fi	+ Add Wi-Fi
---	-------------------	-------------

* SSID

Band 2.4G 5G

Encryption Open Security 802.1x (Enterprise)

* Security

----- Expand -----

- (1) Configure a Wi-Fi.
 - a Click **Add Wi-Fi**.

* SSID

Band 2.4G 5G

Encryption Open Security 802.1x (Enterprise) !

* Security

..... Collapse

Wireless Schedule

VLAN

Hide SSID (The SSID is hidden and must be manually entered.)

Client Isolation (Prevent wireless clients of this Wi-Fi from communicating with one another.)

Band Steering (The 5G-supported client will access 5G radio preferentially.)

XPress (The client will experience faster speed.)

Layer 3 Roaming (The client will keep the IP address unchanged on the Wi-Fi network.) ?

Wi-Fi6 (802.11ax high-speed wireless connectivity.) ?

LimitSpeed

[Do you want to edit RF parameters? Navigate to Radio Frequency for configuration.](#)

- b Enter the SSID and Wi-Fi password, select a frequency band.
- c Click **Expand** to configure more Wi-Fi parameters.
- d Click **OK**.

 Caution

Modification will cause restart of the wireless configuration, resulting in logout of connected clients. Exercise caution when performing this operation.

Table 4-1 Wireless network configuration

Parameter	Description
SSID	Enter the name displayed when a wireless client searches for a wireless network.
SSID Encoding	If the SSID does not contain Chinese, this item will be hidden. If the SSID contains Chinese, this item will be displayed. You can select UTF-8 or GBK.
Band	Set the band used by the Wi-Fi signal. The options are 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz. The 5 GHz band provides faster network transmission rate and less interference than the 2.4 GHz band, but is inferior to the 2.4 GHz band in terms of signal coverage range and wall penetration performance. Select a proper band based on actual needs. The default value is 2.4G + 5G , indicating that the device provides signals at both 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz bands.
Security	Select an encryption mode for the wireless network connection. The options are as follows: Open: The device can associate with Wi-Fi without a password. WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK: Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) or WPA2 is used for encryption. WPA_WPA2-PSK (recommended): WPA2-PSK or WPA-PSK is used for encryption.
Wi-Fi Password	Specify the password for connection to the wireless network. The password is a string of 8 to 16 characters.
Wireless Schedule	Specify the time periods during which Wi-Fi is enabled. After you set this parameter, users cannot connect to Wi-Fi in other periods.
VLAN	Set the VLAN to which the Wi-Fi signal belongs. You can choose from the available VLANs or click Add New VLAN , and go to the LAN Settings page to add a VLAN.

Parameter	Description
Hide SSID	Enabling the hide SSID function can prevent unauthorized user access to Wi-Fi, improving security. However, mobile phones or computers cannot find the SSID after this function is enabled. You must manually enter the correct name and password to connect to Wi-Fi. Record the current SSID before you enable this function.
Client Isolation	After you enable this parameter, clients associated with the Wi-Fi are isolated from one other, and end users connected to the same AP (in the same network segment) cannot access each other. This improves security.
Band Steering	After this function is enabled, 5G-capable clients select 5G Wi-Fi preferentially. You can enable this function only when Band is set to 2.4G + 5G .
XPress	After this function is enabled, the device sends game packets preferentially, providing more stable wireless network for games.
Layer-3 Roaming	After this function is enabled, clients keep their IP addresses unchanged when associating with the same Wi-Fi. This function improves the roaming experience of users in the cross-VLAN scenario.
Wi-Fi6	After this function is enabled, wireless users can have faster network access speed and optimized network access experience. This function is valid only on APs and routers supporting 802.11ax. Clients must also support 802.11ax to experience high-speed network access empowered by Wi-Fi 6. If clients do not support Wi-Fi 6, disable this function.

(2) Configuring Guest Wi-Fi

Guest Wi-Fi is a wireless network provided for guests, and is disabled by default. Client Isolation is enabled for guest Wi-Fi by default, and it cannot be disabled. In this case, users associating with guest Wi-Fi are mutually isolated, and they can only access the Internet through Wi-Fi. This improves network access security. You can configure a wireless schedule for the guest network. After the specified schedule expires, the guest network will become unreachable.

- a Click **Add Guest Wi-Fi**.
- b Set the guest SSID and password. Click **Advanced Settings** to configure the wireless schedule of the guest Wi-Fi and more Wi-Fi parameters (For details, see [Section 4.2 Configuring Wi-Fi](#)). Click **Save**. Guests can access the Internet through Wi-Fi after entering the SSID and password.

* SSID

Band 2.4G 5G

Encryption Open Security 802.1x (Enterprise) !

* Security

----- Collapse -----

Effective Time

VLAN

Hide SSID (The SSID is hidden and must be manually entered.)

Client Isolation (Prevent wireless clients of this Wi-Fi from communicating with one another.)

Band Steering (The 5G-supported client will access 5G radio preferentially.)

XPress (The client will experience faster speed.)

Layer 3 Roaming (The client will keep the IP address unchanged on the Wi-Fi network.) ?

Wi-Fi6 (802.11ax high-speed wireless connectivity.) ?

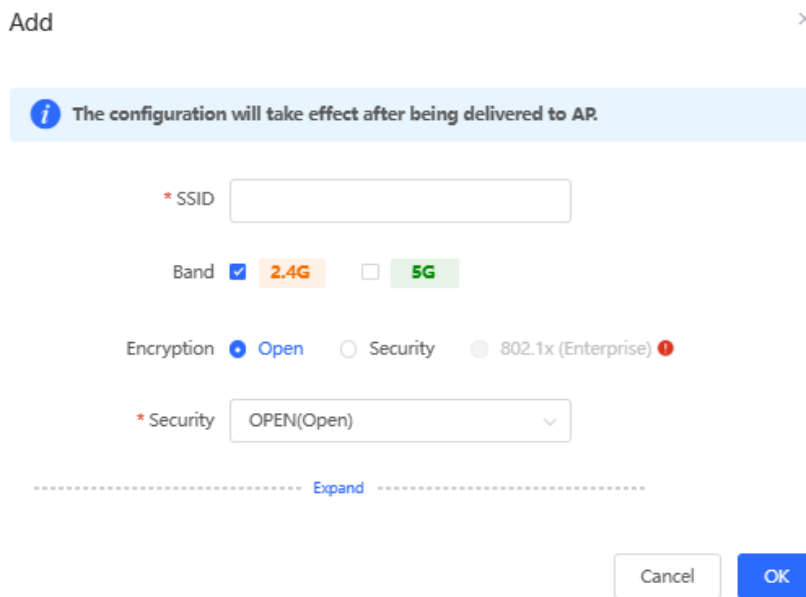
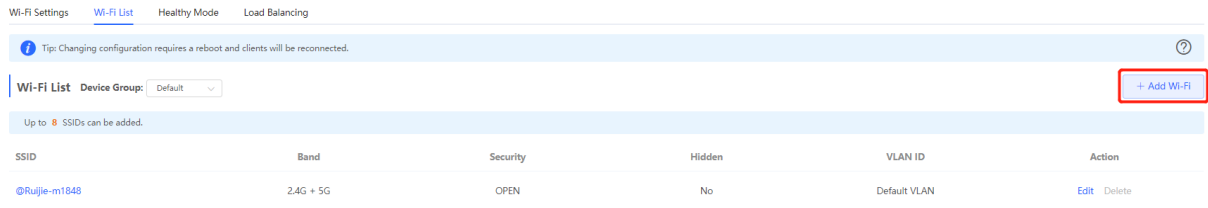
LimitSpeed

[Do you want to edit RF parameters? Navigate to Radio Frequency for configuration.](#)

4.3 Adding a Wi-Fi

Choose **Networkwide Management > Network > Wi-Fi > Wi-Fi List**.

Click **Add Wi-Fi**, enter the SSID and password, and click **OK** to create a Wi-Fi. Click **Advanced Settings** to configure more Wi-Fi parameters. For details, see Section [4.2 Configuring Wi-Fi](#). After a Wi-Fi is added, clients can find this Wi-Fi, and the Wi-Fi information is displayed in the Wi-Fi list.



4.4 Healthy Mode

Choose **Networkwide Management > Network > Wi-Fi > Healthy Mode**.

Turn on healthy mode and select a wireless schedule for the mode.

After the healthy mode is enabled, the RF transmit power and Wi-Fi coverage range of the device are reduced in the schedule. This may lead to weak signals and network freezing. You are advised to disable healthy mode or set the wireless schedule to the idle periods.

Wi-Fi Settings Wi-Fi List **Healthy Mode** Load Balancing



Enable the healthy mode. The device will decrease its transmit power to reduce radiation.
Tip: Changing configuration requires a reboot and clients will be reconnected.

Healthy Mode Device Group:


Enable

Save

4.5 RF Settings

Choose **Networkwide Management > Network > Radio Frequency**.

The device can detect the surrounding wireless environment upon power-on and select proper configuration. However, network freezing caused by wireless environment changes cannot be prevented. You can analyze the wireless environment around the APs and routers and manually select proper parameters.

 Caution

Modification will cause restart of the wireless configuration, resulting in logout of connected clients. Exercise caution when performing this operation.

i Tip: Changing configuration requires a reboot and clients will be reconnected.

Radio Frequency Device Group: Default

Country/Region China (CN)

2.4G Channel Width Auto 5G Channel Width Auto

Client Count Limit 64 Client Count Limit 128

Kick-off Threshold Disable -75dBm -50dBm Kick-off Threshold Disable -75dBm -50dBm

The settings are valid for only **current device**

2.4G Channel Auto 5G Channel Auto

Transmit Power Auto Lower Low Medium High Transmit Power Auto Lower Low Medium High

Roaming Sensitivity Low 20% 40% 60% 80% High Roaming Sensitivity Low 20% 40% 60% 80% High

Save

Table 4-2 RF configuration

Parameter	Description
Country/Region	The Wi-Fi channels stipulated by each country may be different. To ensure that clients can find the Wi-Fi signal, select the country or region where the device is located.
2.4G/5G Channel Width	A lower bandwidth indicates more stable network, and a higher bandwidth indicates easier interference. In case of severe interference, select a relatively low bandwidth to prevent network freezing to certain extent. The 2.4 GHz band supports the 20 MHz and 40 MHz bandwidths. The 5 GHz band supports the 20 MHz, 40 MHz, and 80 MHz bandwidths. By default, the value is Auto , indicating that the bandwidth is selected automatically based on the environment.
Client Count Limit	If a large number of users access the AP or router, the wireless network performance of the AP or router may be degraded, affecting users' Internet access experience. After you set this parameter, new user access is prohibited when the number of access users reaches the specified value. If the clients require high bandwidth, you can adjust this parameter to a smaller value. You are advised to keep the default value unless otherwise specified.

Parameter	Description
Kick-off Threshold	<p>When multiple Wi-Fi signals are available, you can set this parameter to optimize the wireless signal quality to some extent. When a client is far away from the wireless device, the Wi-Fi connection is disconnected when the wireless signal strength of the end user is lower than the kick-off threshold. In this case, the client has to select a nearer wireless signal.</p> <p>The client is prone to be kicked off if the kick-off threshold is high. To ensure that the client can normally access the Internet, you are advised to set this parameter to Disable or a value smaller than -75 dBm.</p>

 Note

- Wireless channels available for your selection are determined by the country/region code. Select the country/region code based on the country or region of your device.
 - Channel, transmit power, and roaming sensitivity cannot be set globally. Please perform the configurations on the devices separately.
-

4.6 Configuring Wi-Fi Blacklist or Whitelist

4.6.1 Overview

You can configure the global or SSID-based blacklist and whitelist. The MAC address supports full match and OUI match.

Wi-Fi blacklist: Clients in the Wi-Fi blacklist are prevented from accessing the Internet. Clients that are not added to the Wi-Fi blacklist are free to access the Internet.

Wi-Fi whitelist: Only clients in the Wi-Fi whitelist can access the Internet. Clients that are not added to the Wi-Fi whitelist are prevented from accessing the Internet.

 **Caution**

If the whitelist is empty, the whitelist does not take effect. In this case, all clients are allowed to access the Internet.

4.6.2 Configuring a Global Blacklist/Whitelist

In **Networkwide Management** mode, choose **Clients Management > Blacklist/Whitelist > Global Blacklist/Whitelist**.

Select the blacklist or whitelist mode and click **Add** to configure a blacklist or whitelist client. In the **Add** dialog box, enter the MAC address and remark of the target client and click **OK**. If a client is already associated with the router, its MAC address will pop up automatically. Click the MAC address directly for automatic input. All clients in the blacklist will be forced offline and not allowed to access the Wi-Fi network. The global blacklist and whitelist settings take effect on all Wi-Fi networks of the router.

Global Blacklist/Whitelist
SSID-Based Blacklist/Whitelist

All STAs except blacklisted STAs are allowed to access Wi-Fi.

Only the whitelisted STAs are allowed to access Wi-Fi.

Blocked WLAN Clients

+ Add

Delete Selected

Up to 64 members can be added.

	MAC	Remark	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	AE:4E:11 OUI		Edit Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	11:22:33:44:55:66		Edit Delete

Add ×

Match Type Full Prefix (OUI)

* MAC

Remark

If you delete a client from the blacklist, the client will be allowed to connect to the Wi-Fi network. If you delete a client from the whitelist, the client will be forced offline and denied access to the Wi-Fi network.


All STAs except blacklisted STAs are allowed to access Wi-Fi. Only the whitelisted STAs are allowed to access Wi-Fi.

Blocked WLAN Clients

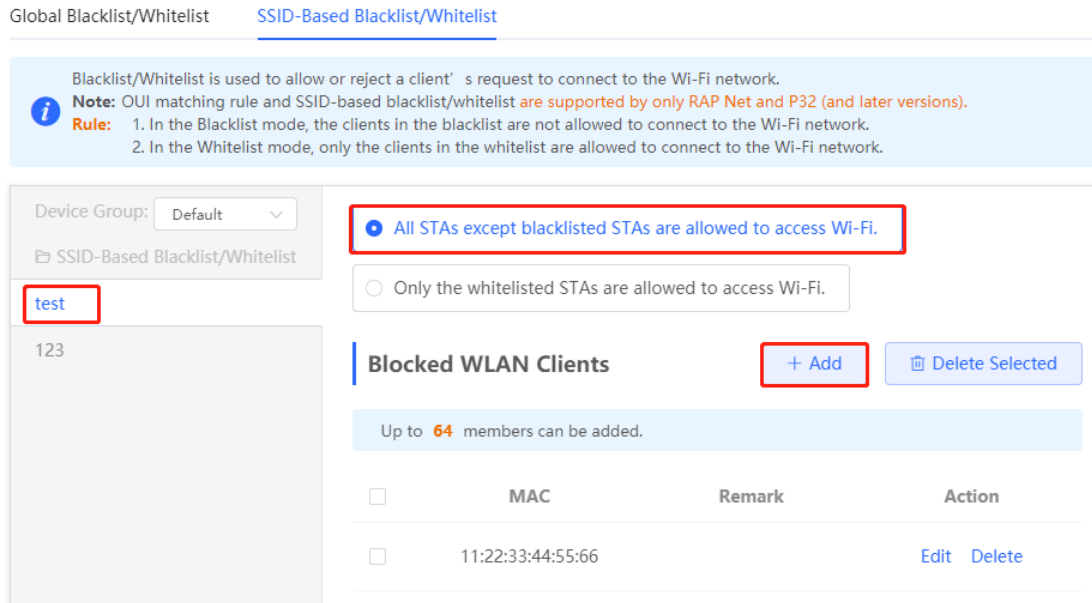
Up to **64** members can be added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	MAC	Remark	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	AE:4E:11 OUI		Edit Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	11:22:33:44:55:66		Edit Delete

4.6.3 Configuring an SSID-based Blacklist/Whitelist

In **Networkwide Management** mode, choose  **Clients** > **Blacklist/Whitelist** > **SSID-Based Blacklist/Whitelist**.

Select a target Wi-Fi network from the left column, select the blacklist or whitelist mode, and click **Add** to configure a blacklist or whitelist client. The SSID-based blacklist and whitelist will restrict the client access to the specified Wi-Fi.



4.7 Configuring AP Load Balancing

4.7.1 Overview

The AP load balancing function is used to balance the load of APs in the wireless network. When APs are added to a load balancing group, clients will automatically associate with the APs with light load when the APs in the group are not load balanced. AP load balancing supports two modes:

- **Client Load Balancing:** The load is balanced according to the number of associated clients. When a large number of clients have been associated with an AP and the count difference to the AP with the lightest load has reached the specified value, the client can only associate with another AP in the group.
- **Traffic Load Balancing:** The load is balanced according to the traffic on the APs. When the traffic on an AP is large and the traffic difference to the AP with the lightest load has reached the specified value, the client can only associate with another AP in the group.

Example: Add AP1 and AP2 into a group and select client load balancing. Set both the client count threshold and difference to 3. AP1 is associated with 5 clients and AP2 is associated with 2 clients, triggering load balancing. New clients' attempt to associate to AP1 will be denied, and therefore they can associate only with AP2.

After a client request is denied by an AP and it fails to associate with another AP in the group, the client will keep trying to associate with this AP. If the client attempts reach the specified value, the AP will permit connection of this client, ensuring that the user can normally access the Internet.

4.7.2 Configuring Client Load Balancing

Choose **Networkwide Management > Network > Wi-Fi > Load Balancing**.

Click **Add**. In the dialog box that appears, set **Type** to **Client Load Balancing**, and configure **Group Name**, **Members**, and **Rule**.

Wi-Fi Settings Wi-Fi List Healthy Mode Load Balancing

Load Balancing

+ Add

Delete Selected

Up to 32 entries can be added.
 Add APs in an area into a group and enable load balancing. When load is unbalanced in the group, clients will automatically associate to an AP with lighter load.
 Example: Add AP1 and AP2 into a group and select client load balancing. Set both the client count threshold and difference to 3. AP1 is associated with 5 clients and AP2 is associated with 2 clients, triggering load balancing. New clients' attempt to associate to AP1 will be denied, and therefore they can associate only to AP2.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Group Name	Type	Rule	Members	Action
No Data					

Add ×

* Group Name

* Type

* Rule

* Members

Cancel **OK**

Table 4-3 Client load balancing configuration

Parameter	Description
Group Name	Enter the name of the AP load balancing group.
Type	Select Client Load Balancing .

Parameter	Description
Rule	<p>Configure a detailed load balancing rule, including the maximum number of clients allowed to associate with an AP, the difference between the currently associated client count and client count on the AP with the lightest load, and the number of attempts to the AP with full load.</p> <p>By default, when an AP is associated with 3 clients and the difference between the currently associated client count and client count on the AP with the lightest load reaches 3, clients can associate only to another AP in the group. After a client association is denied by an AP for 10 times, the client will be allowed to associate to the AP upon the next attempt.</p>
Members	Specify the APs to be added to the AP load balancing group.

4.7.3 Configuring Traffic Load Balancing

Choose **Networkwide Management > Network > Wi-Fi > Load Balancing**.

Click **Add**. In the dialog box that appears, set **Type** to **Traffic Load Balancing**, and configure **Group Name**, **Members**, and **Rule**.

Wi-Fi Settings Wi-Fi List Healthy Mode Load Balancing

Load Balancing + Add Delete Selected

Up to **32** entries can be added.
 Add APs in an area into a group and enable load balancing. When load is unbalanced in the group, clients will automatically associate to an AP with lighter load.
 Example: Add AP1 and AP2 into a group and select client load balancing. Set both the client count threshold and difference to 3. AP1 is associated with 5 clients and AP2 is associated with 2 clients, triggering load balancing. New clients' attempt to associate to AP1 will be denied, and therefore they can associate only to AP2.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Group Name	Type	Rule	Members	Action
No Data					

Add
×

* Group Name

* Type Traffic Load Balancing ▼

* Rule

When the traffic load on an AP reaches *100Kbps and the difference between the current traffic and the traffic on the AP with the lightest load reaches *100Kbps, clients can associate only to another AP in the group. After a client association is denied by an AP for times, the client will be allowed to associate to the AP upon the next attempt.

* Members Enter an AP name or SN. ▼

Cancel
OK

Table 4-4 Traffic load balancing configuration

Parameter	Description
Group Name	Enter the name of the AP load balancing group.
Type	Select Traffic Load Balancing .
Rule	Configure a detailed load balancing rule, including the maximum traffic allowed on an AP, the difference between the current traffic and the traffic on the AP with the lightest load, and the number of attempts to the AP with full load. By default, when the traffic load on an AP reaches 500 Kbit/s and the difference between the current traffic and the traffic on the AP with the lightest load reaches 500 Kbit/s, clients can associate only to another AP in the group. After a client association is denied by an AP for 10 times, the client will be allowed to associate to the AP upon the next attempt.
Members	Specify the APs to be added to the AP load balancing group.

4.8 Configuring Wireless Rate Limiting

4.8.1 Overview

The device supports four rate limiting modes: client-based rate limiting, SSID-based rate limiting, AP-based rate limiting, and packet-based rate limiting. For the same client, if multiple rate limiting modes are configured, the priority order is as follows: client-based rate limiting > SSID-based rate limiting > AP-based rate limiting.

- Client-based rate limiting: This function allows you to limit the rate based on the MAC address of the client, so as to limit or guarantee the bandwidth required by specific clients.
- SSID-based rate limiting: This function provides two rate limiting modes for a specified SSID: **Rate Limit Per User** and **Rate Limit All Users**. **Rate Limit Per User** means that all clients connected to the SSID use the same rate limit. **Rate Limit All Users** means that the configured rate limit value is evenly allocated to all clients connected to the SSID. The rate limit value of each client dynamically changes with the number of clients connected to the SSID.
- AP-based rate limiting: This function limits the client rates based on the whole network. All clients connected to the network will work according to the configured rate limit value.
- Packet-based rate limiting: This function limits the client rates based on the downlink broadcast and multicast packets. The device supports rate limiting for specific broadcast packets (such as ARP and DHCP), multicast packets (such as MDNS and SSDP), or all types of broadcast and multicast packets. If network stalling remains during network access and there is no client with large traffic, you are advised to adjust the rate between 1 kbps and 512 kbps.

4.8.2 Configuration Steps

1. Configuring Client-based Rate Limiting

Choose **Networkwide Management > Network > LimitSpeed > Client-based Rate Limiting**.

(1) Enable Wireless Rate Limiting.

(2) Click **Add**. In the dialog box that appears, set the MAC address and uplink and downlink rate limit values of the client, and click **OK**.

Wireless Rate Limiting

Client-based Rate Limiting Wi-Fi-based Rate Limiting AP-based Rate Limiting Packet-based Rate Limiting

Client-based Rate Limiting
The rate limiting mode based on wireless clients can limit or provide the bandwidth for specific clients.

Client-based Rate Limiting + Add Delete Selected

Up to 512 entries can be added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Client MAC	Uplink Rate Limit	Downlink Rate Limit	Remarks	Action
No Data					

< 1 > 10/page Total 0

Add
×

* Client MAC

Uplink Rate Kbps ▼

Limit Current: Kbps. Range: 1-1700000 Kbps

Downlink Rate Kbps ▼

Limit Current: Kbps. Range: 1-1700000 Kbps

Remarks

Cancel
OK

2. Configuring SSID-based Rate Limiting

Choose **Networkwide Management > Network > LimitSpeed > SSID-based Rate Limiting**.

- (1) Enable Wireless Rate Limiting.
- (2) Click **Edit** in the **Action** column of the target SSID. In the dialog box that appears, set the uplink and downlink rate limit modes and values, and click **OK**.

Wireless Rate Limiting

Client-based Rate Limiting SSID-based Rate Limiting AP-based Rate Limiting Packet-based Rate Limiting

SSID-based Rate Limiting
 ⓘ This function provides rate limit per user and dynamic rate limiting for a specified SSID. Rate Limit per User indicates that all clients connected to the SSID use the same rate limit. Rate Limit All Users indicates that all clients connected to the SSID share the rate limit in average. The priority of this function is lower than that of client-based rate limiting.

SSID-based Rate Limiting Device Group: Default ▼ Are you sure you want to add a Wi-Fi? Click to go.

SSID	Uplink Rate Limit	Downlink Rate Limit	Action
333	Rate Limit All Users 1111K bps	No Limit	Edit Disable
111	No Limit	No Limit	Edit Disable
wbctest	No Limit	No Limit	Edit Disable
@Ruijie-guest-6D85	Rate Limit All Users 111K bps	Rate Limit Per User 2M bps	Edit Disable

Edit ×

Uplink Rate Limit Rate Limit Per User Rate Limit All Users ?

Rate Limit ▼

Current: Kbps. Range: 1-1700000 Kbps

Downlink Rate Limit Rate Limit Per User Rate Limit All Users

Rate Limit ▼

Current: Kbps. Range: 1-1700000 Kbps

Cancel OK

3. Configuring AP-based Rate Limiting

Choose **Networkwide Management > Network > LimitSpeed > AP-based Rate Limiting**.

- (1) Enable Wireless Rate Limiting.
- (2) Set the uplink and downlink rate limit modes to **Rate Limit Per User**, configure the rate limit values, and click **OK**.

Wireless Rate Limiting

Client-based Rate Limiting Wi-Fi-based Rate Limiting AP-based Rate Limiting Packet-based Rate Limiting

AP-based Rate Limiting

This function provides client rate limiting based on the whole network. All devices connected to the network use the preset rate limiting value. The priority of this function is lower than that of clien-based rate limiting and SSID-based rate limit per user.

AP-based Rate Limiting

Uplink Rate Limit No Limit Rate Limit Per User ?

▼

Current: Kbps. Range: 1-1700000 Kbps

Downlink Rate Limit No Limit Rate Limit Per User

▼

Current: Kbps. Range: 1-1700000 Kbps

OK

· Wechat texts, voice messages and webpage services: 1 Mbps to 2 Mbps.

· Real-time video calls and HD videos: 2 Mbps to 4 Mbps.

· Ultra HD/4K/Blue-ray videos and live videos: 5 Mbps to 10 Mbps.

· Other: You are not advised to set the value to 20 Mbps. It may affect the Internet experience of other users in the internal network.

4. Configuring Packet-based Rate Limiting

Choose **Networkwide Management > Network > LimitSpeed > Packet-based Rate Limiting**.

- (1) Enable Wireless Rate Limiting.
- (2) Select the specific type of packets for rate limiting, configure the rate limit value, and click **Save**.

Wireless Rate Limiting

Client-based Rate Limiting Wi-Fi-based Rate Limiting AP-based Rate Limiting Packet-based Rate Limiting

Packet-based Rate Limiting

This function allows users to limit the downlink rate for broadcast and multicast packets. If the internet access is still slow and unstable when no client needs large amounts of traffic, you are advised to set the rate ranging from 1 Kbps to 512 Kbps. Smaller rate brings better network improvement.
[wqos.mcDescTip](#)

Packet-based Rate Limiting

Broadcast Rate Limiting Disable Limit All Limit Part

ARP Packet DHCP Packet

Multicast Rate Limiting Disable Limit All Limit Part

MDNS Packet SSDP Packet

* Rate Limit Kbps

Current: 0 Kbps. Range: 1-1700000 Kbps

4.9 Wireless Network Optimization

4.9.1 One-Click Wireless Optimization

Select the optimization mode, the system automatically optimize the wireless network.

Caution

- WIO is supported only in the self-organizing network mode.
- The client may be offline during the optimization process. The configuration cannot be rolled back once optimization starts. Therefore, exercise caution when performing this operation.

Choose **Network > WIO >> Network Optimization**.

(1) Select the optimization mode. Then, click **OK** to optimize the wireless network.



Wireless Intelligent Optimization

In a network environment, we will optimize your network to maximize wireless performance. Please use it after all APs in the optimization area are fully online.

Optimization configuration

Tuning mode: Quick tuning Deep tuning

Estimated time consumed

180s Environment scan + 3 minute Optimization configuration

Table 4-5 Description of Tuning Mode

Parameter	Description
Quick tuning	In this mode, external interference and bandwidth are not considered. A quick optimization is performed to optimize channel, power, and management frame power.
Deep tuning	<p>In this mode, external interference and bandwidth are considered. A deep optimization is performed to optimize channel, power, and management frame power. Click to expand Advanced Settings to configure the scanning time, channel bandwidth and channels.</p> <p>Scanning time: Indicates the time for scanning channels during the optimization.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 2.4G <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Channel bandwidth: Indicates the channel bandwidth. The channel bandwidth will be calculated by the system if Default is selected. ○ Selected channels: Indicates the channels to be optimized. ● 5G <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Channel bandwidth: Indicates the channel bandwidth. The channel bandwidth will be calculated by the system if Default is selected. ○ Selected channels: Indicates the channels to be optimized.

When the **Tuning Mode** is configured as **Deep tuning**, expand the **Advanced Settings** to set the scanning time, channel bandwidth and selected channels.



Optimization configuration

Tuning mode: Quick tuning Deep tuning

..... Advanced Settings

Scanning time: 10s

2.4G

Channel Width: Default

* Selected channels

1 (2.412GHz)	2 (2.417GHz)
3 (2.422GHz)	4 (2.427GHz)
5 (2.432GHz)	6 (2.437GHz)
7 (2.442GHz)	8 (2.447GHz)
9 (2.452GHz)	10 (2.457GHz)
11 (2.462GHz)	12 (2.467GHz)
13 (2.472GHz)	

5G

Channel Width: Default

(2) Confirm the tips, and Click **OK**.

Tips



1. During the optimization process, APs will switch channels and gather information, causing user disconnection and affecting user experience. This situation will last for a certain period of time. If there is a need for network usage at the moment, it is recommended to enable scheduled network optimization.
2. During the wireless network optimization process, it is advised not to make any wireless or RF settings to ensure the effectiveness of the optimization.
3. If channel dynamic adjustment is currently ongoing in the background, one-click network optimization cannot be performed temporarily. Please wait until the wireless network optimization is complete before proceeding with the operation.
4. AP devices that do not have an IP address configured do not support wireless optimization.
5. Devices that support K/V roaming optimization will enable K/V roaming simultaneously when wireless network optimization is activated.

Cancel

After optimization starts, please wait patiently until optimization is complete. After optimization ends, click **Cancel Optimization** to restore optimized RF parameters to default values.

Click **View Details** or the **Optimization Record** tab to view the latest optimization record details.



Finish

Optimization finished on 20-04-26 15:26:22

Time: 31 seconds

Network Optimization [Optimization Record](#)

i Last Optimized:2022-04-26 15:26:22
You have optimized 1 APs and improved the performance by 12.50%!

Hostname	Band	SN	Channel (Before/After)	Channel Width (Before/After)	Transmit Power (Before/After)	Sensitivity (Before/After)	CCI (Before/After)	ACI (Before/After)	Interference (Before/After)
Ruijie	2.4G	G1QH6WX000 610	1	20	auto/100	80/0	0	0	0
Ruijie	5G	G1QH6WX000 610	36	80	auto/100	78/0	0	0	0

4.9.2 Scheduled Wireless Optimization


You can configure scheduled optimization to optimize the network at the specified time. You are advised to set the scheduled optimization time to daybreak or the idle periods.

 **Caution**

Clients may be kicked offline during optimization and the configuration cannot be rolled back after optimization starts. Exercise caution when performing this operation.

Choose **Network > WIO >> Scheduled Optimization**.

Network Optimization Scheduled Optimization Optimization Record 802.11k/v Roaming Optimization

 **Scheduled Optimization**
Optimize the network performance at a scheduled time for a better user experience.

Enable

Day

Time :

Tuning mode: Quick tuning Deep tuning

----- [Advanced Settings](#) -----

- (1) Configure the scheduled time.
- (2) Select the tuning mode.
- (3) (Optional) When the **Tuning Mode** is configured as **Deep tuning**, expand the **Advanced Settings** to set the scanning time, channel bandwidth and selected channels.

Tuning mode: Quick tuning Deep tuning

----- Advanced Settings -----

Scanning time

2.4G

Channel Width

* Selected channels

1 (2.412GHz) <input type="checkbox"/>	2 (2.417GHz) <input type="checkbox"/>
3 (2.422GHz) <input type="checkbox"/>	4 (2.427GHz) <input type="checkbox"/>
5 (2.432GHz) <input type="checkbox"/>	6 (2.437GHz) <input type="checkbox"/>
7 (2.442GHz) <input type="checkbox"/>	8 (2.447GHz) <input type="checkbox"/>
9 (2.452GHz) <input type="checkbox"/>	10 (2.457GHz) <input type="checkbox"/>
11 (2.462GHz) <input type="checkbox"/>	12 (2.467GHz) <input type="checkbox"/>
13 (2.472GHz) <input type="checkbox"/>	

5G

Channel Width

* Selected channels

36 (5.18GHz) <input type="checkbox"/>	40 (5.2GHz) <input type="checkbox"/>
44 (5.22GHz) <input type="checkbox"/>	48 (5.24GHz) <input type="checkbox"/>
52 (5.26GHz) (Radar channels) <input type="checkbox"/>	
56 (5.28GHz) (Radar channels) <input type="checkbox"/>	
60 (5.3GHz) (Radar channels) <input type="checkbox"/>	
64 (5.32GHz) (Radar channels) <input type="checkbox"/>	
149 (5.745GHz) <input type="checkbox"/>	153 (5.765GHz) <input type="checkbox"/>
157 (5.785GHz) <input type="checkbox"/>	161 (5.805GHz) <input type="checkbox"/>
165 (5.825GHz) <input type="checkbox"/>	

(4) Click **Save**.

4.9.3 Wi-Fi Roaming Optimization (802.11k/v)

Wi-Fi roaming is further optimized through the 802.11k/802.11v protocol. Smart endpoints compliant with IEEE 802.11k/v can switch association to the access points with better signal and faster speed, thereby ensuring high-speed wireless connectivity.

To ensure high quality of smart roaming service, the WLAN environment will be automatically scanned when Wi-Fi roaming optimization is first enabled.


Choose **Networkwide Management > Network > WIO > Wi-Fi Roaming Optimization (802.11k/v)**.

Network Optimization Optimization Record Wi-Fi Roaming Optimization (802.11k/v)

Start Scanning Optimizing Finish

Description:
The Wi-Fi roaming is further optimized through the 802.11k/v protocol. Smart clients compliant with 802.11k/v can switch to the APs with better signal and faster speed during the roaming process, ensuring high-speed wireless connectivity. To ensure smart roaming effect, the WLAN environment will be auto scanned when Wi-Fi roaming optimization is first enabled.


Notes:
During the WLAN environment scanning, the APs will switch channels, forcing the clients to go offline. The process will last for 2 minutes.

 **Caution**
During the optimization, the clients may be forced offline. Please proceed with caution.

Click **Enable** and the optimization starts.

Network Optimization Optimization Record Wi-Fi Roaming Optimization (802.11k/v)

Start Scanning Optimizing Finish

 **Optimizing...**
Optimization started on 2022-10-08 13:53:53
To ensure smart roaming effect, please [Click Here](#) to scan the WLAN environment again if the topology changes.

4.10 Wi-Fi Authentication

4.10.1 Overview

With the popularity of wireless networks, Wi-Fi has become one of the marketing means for merchants. Customers can connect to the Wi-Fi provided by the merchants to surf the Internet after watching advertisements. In addition, to defend against security vulnerabilities, the wireless office network usually allows only employees to associate with Wi-Fi, so the identity of the clients needs to be verified.

The Wi-Fi authentication function of the device uses the Portal authentication technology to implement information display and user management. After users connect to Wi-Fi, the traffic will not be directly routed to the Internet. Wi-Fi users must pass authentication on the Portal authentication website, and only authenticated users are allowed to use network resources. Merchants or enterprises can customize Portal pages for identity authentication and advertisement display.

4.10.2 Getting Started

- (1) Before you enable Wi-Fi authentication, ensure that the wireless signal is stable and users can connect to Wi-Fi and surf the Internet normally. The wireless SSID used for authentication in the network should be set to the open state.
- (2) If the IP address of an AP in the network is within the authentication scope, add the AP as the authentication-free user. For details, see Section [4.10.9 Authentication-Free](#).
 - o In a Layer 2 network, add the MAC address of the AP to the authentication-free MAC address whitelist.
 - o In a Layer 3 network, add the IP address of the AP to the authentication-free IP address Allowlist.

4.10.3 WiFiDog Authentication

1. Overview

The EG device is connected to the MACC authentication server on the cloud. After Wi-Fi users connect to Wi-Fi, a Portal page pops up. The users need to enter the account and password to pass authentication before they can access the Internet. According to the authentication configuration on the MACC authentication server, you can set the authentication mode to SMS authentication, fixed account authentication, or account-free one-click login.

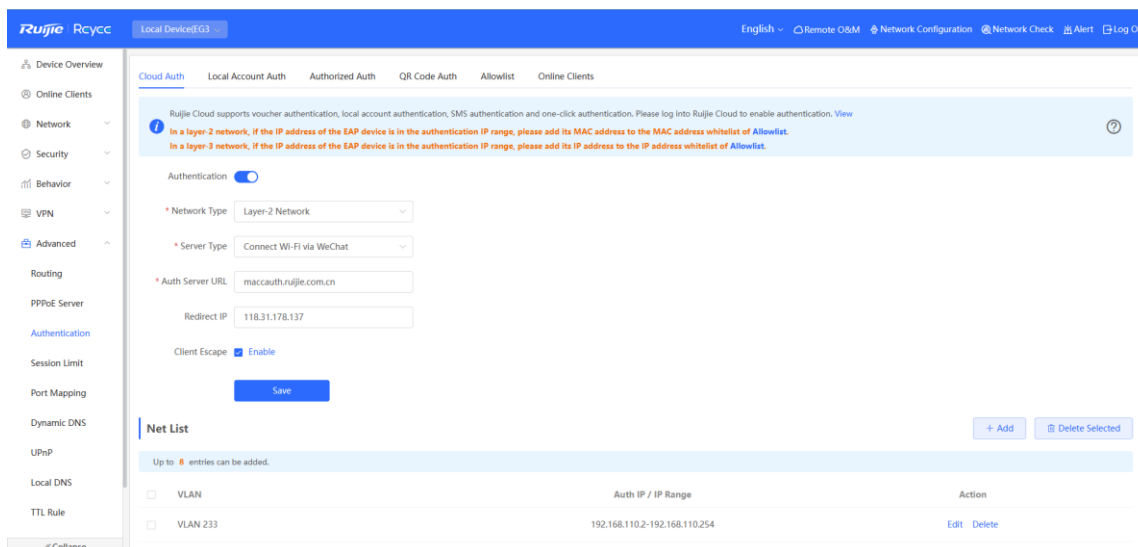
2. Getting Started

- (1) WiFiDog is a Layer 2 protocol. Ensure that the authentication device can obtain the MAC addresses of the wireless users.
 - o The gateway address of the wireless users to be authenticated is deployed on the authentication device.
 - o If the gateway address is not deployed on the authentication device, the device functions as a DHCP server to allocate IP addresses to the wireless users and obtain MAC addresses of the wireless users. In this scenario, you need to set Network Type to Layer-3 Network.
- (2) Complete the corresponding configuration on the Ruijie Cloud platform before you enable the authentication function on the device. If SMS authentication is used, you also need to configure the SMS gateway.

3. Configuration Steps

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Authentication > Cloud Auth**.

- (1) Turn on **Authentication**.
- (2) Set **Server Type** to **Cloud Integration**, configure **Network Type**, **Auth Server URL**, **Client Escape**, and **IP/IP Range**, and click **Save**.



- (3) In the **Net List** area, click **Add**. In the displayed dialog box, enter the **VLAN** name and the **Auth IP / IP Range** to be authenticated and click **OK**.

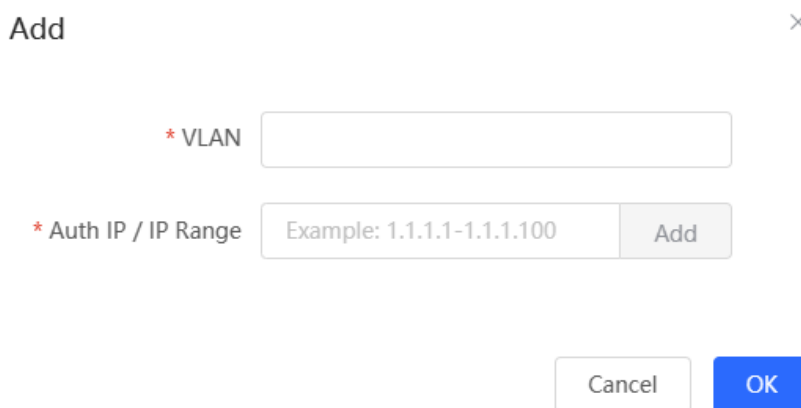


Table 4-6 Description of WiFiDog Authentication Configuration

Parameter	Description
Network Type	The default value is Layer-2 Network . Set the parameter based on the actual network environment.
Server Type	Select Cloud Integration from the drop-down list.
Auth Server URL	After completing the configuration at the server end, the MACC authentication server returns a URL. The device sends authentication requests to the URL during authentication.
Client Escape	After the client escape function is enabled, if an exception occurs on the authentication server, the device disables authentication to allow all clients to directly access the Internet. After the server recovers, the device automatically enables authentication.

Parameter	Description
VLAN	Specify the name of a Wi-Fi network, to which clients connect. A maximum of eight VLAN names can be configured.
Auth IP / IP Range	Specify the IP address range to be authenticated. You can enter a single IP address (such as 192.168.112.2) or an IP address range (such as 192.168.112.2–192.168.112.254). A maximum of five IP address ranges can be configured.

4. Verifying Configuration

After a mobile phone connects to a specific Wi-Fi, the Portal authentication page pops up automatically.

If the authentication mode configured on the MACC authentication server is SMS authentication, the user needs to enter the mobile number to obtain an Internet access password and enter the password to complete authentication.

If the authentication mode configured on the MACC authentication server is account-free one-click authentication, the user can directly access the Internet after clicking the corresponding button on the page.

If the authentication mode configured on the MACC authentication server is fixed account login, the user can access the Internet after entering the account and password configured on the cloud.

After successful connection, you can choose **Advanced > Authentication > Online Clients** to view information about this authenticated user. For details, see Section [4.10.9 Online Authenticated User Management](#).

4.10.4 Configuring Third-Party Authentication

Note

This feature is supported on RG-EG310GH-E, RG-EG305GH-P-E and EG310GH-P-E running ReyeeOS 2.237 or later.

1. Overview

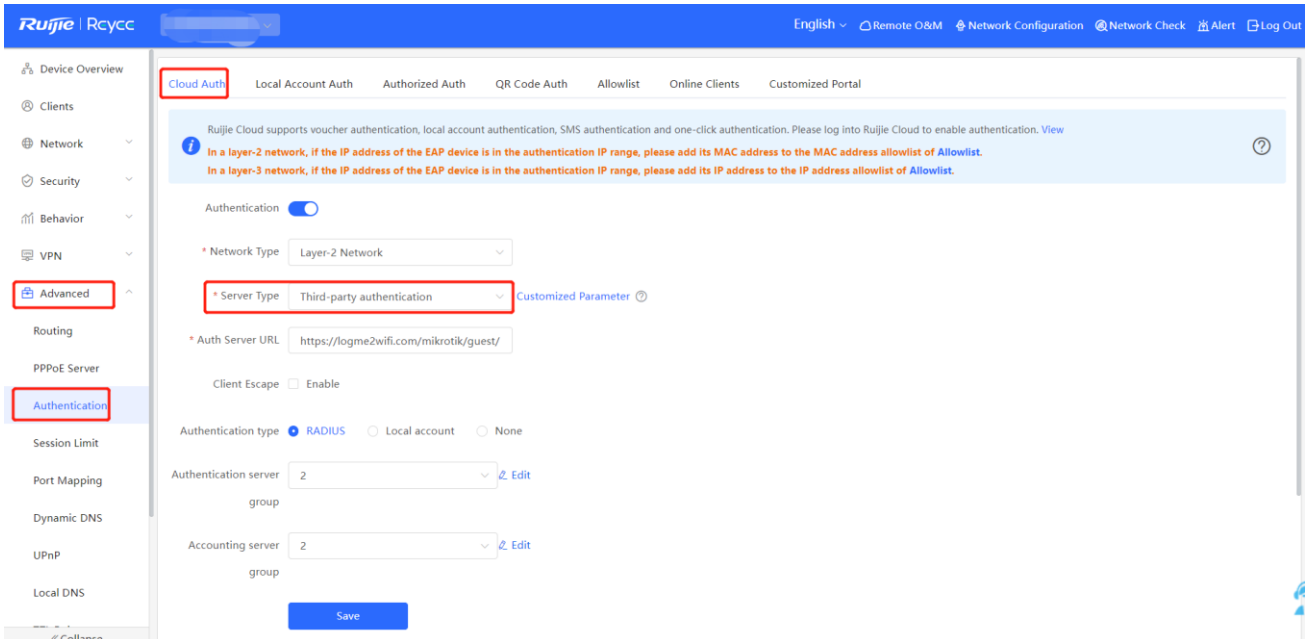
Reyee EG series gateway devices can interwork with WISPr-compliant external authentication servers. After a wireless client is connected to the Wi-Fi network, a Portal page pops up. The wireless client needs to be authenticated before it can access the Internet. Based on the services provided by different authentication servers, you can choose RADIUS authentication, local account authentication, or no authentication for third-party authentication.

2. Getting Started

- Ensure that the authentication server can obtain the MAC address of the wireless client:
 - The gateway address of the wireless client to be authenticated is deployed on the authentication server.
 - If the gateway address of the wireless client to be authenticated is not deployed on the authentication server, then the device must act as a DHCP server to assign an IP address to the wireless client in order to obtain its MAC address. In this scenario, the **Network Type** must be set to **Layer 3 Network**.
- Complete relevant configurations on the third-party authentication platform, and then enable the Wi-Fi authentication feature on the device. For specific configurations, see the configuration manual of relevant third-party authentication platforms.

3. Configuration Steps

Choose **Advanced > Authentication > Cloud Auth**.



- (1) Toggle on **Authentication**.
- (2) Set **Server Type** to **Third-party Authentication**, configure **Auth Server URL**, **Client Escape** and **Authentication Type**, and click **Save**.

Table 4-7 Description of Third-Party Authentication Configuration Parameters

Parameter	Description
Network Type	The default value is Layer-2 Network . Set the parameter based on the actual network environment.
Server Type	Select Third-party authentication from the drop-down list.
Auth Server URL	After completing the configuration on the third-party authentication server, the third-party authentication server returns a URL. The device sends authentication requests to the URL during authentication.
Client Escape	After the client escape function is enabled, if an exception occurs on the authentication server or the RADIUS server, the device disables authentication to allow all clients to directly access the Internet. After the server recovers, the device automatically enables authentication.
Authentication Type	Types of third-party authentication, which include: RADIUS : The wireless client is authenticated by the RADIUS server. Local account : The wireless client is authenticated based on local username and password. None : No authentication is required for the wireless client.

Parameter	Description
Auth Server Group	Name of the authentication server group. This parameter is mandatory when the Authentication Type is set to RADIUS . You can configure the authentication server group in the global management mode by going to Network-wide > 802.1X Authentication > RADIUS Server Management .
Accounting Server Group	Name of the accounting server group. This parameter is mandatory when the Authentication Type is set to RADIUS . You can configure the accounting server group in the global management mode by going to Network-wide > 802.1X Authentication > RADIUS Server Management .

- (3) (Optional) Considering the different HTTP parameters and request methods required by different third-party authentication platforms, you can customize third-party authentication parameters.

Customized Parameter



Parameter template Ruijie DrayTek Custom

Request Parameters

Request method get post

Parameter	Type	Key	Val	
<input type="checkbox"/>	other	res	notyet	
<input type="checkbox"/>	client_mac	mac	NULL	
<input type="checkbox"/>	other	user	NULL	
<input type="checkbox"/>	other	uamport	NULL	
<input type="checkbox"/>	identity	nasid	NULL	
<input type="checkbox"/>	login_host	uamip	NULL	
<input type="checkbox"/>	other	error	NULL	
<input type="checkbox"/>	chap_id	chap-id	NULL	
<input type="checkbox"/>	chap_challen	chap-challe	NULL	

Login Parameters

Name

Login Password

Post Url

Restore

OK

Table 4-8 Description of Custom Third-Party Authentication Parameters

Parameter	Description
Parameter template	<p>The built-in parameter template.</p> <p>Default parameters are used when the Parameter Template is set to Ruijie or DrayTek.</p> <p>When the Parameter Template is set to Custom, the parameters can be customized.</p>
Request method	The HTTP request methods used for requesting the portal page.
Parameter	<p>Parameters in the parameter template for requesting the portal page:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the parameter type is not other, the Val field is invalid, and the default value NULL can be used. The Reyee EG gateway device will automatically populate the value of this parameter. When the parameter type is other, you need to enter a value in the Val field. <p>Parameters include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> nas_ip: IP address of the Reyee EG series gateway device. Example: 10.52.48.7. nas_mac: MAC address of the Reyee EG series gateway device. Example: 11:22:33:44:55:66. client_ip: IP address of the wireless client to be authenticated. Example: 192.168.110.5. client_mac: MAC address of the wireless client to be authenticated. Example: 11:22:33:44:55:66. orig_url: Original URL accessed by the wireless client to be authenticated. Example: https://www.baidu.com. login_url: Login interface received by the Reyee EG series gateway device from the third-party authentication platform. Example: http://192.168.110.1:2060/ext_login. logout_url: Logout interface received by the Reyee EG series gateway device from the third-party authentication platform. Example: http://192.168.110.1:2060/ext_logout. ssid: SSID or VLAN name associated with the wireless client to be authenticated. Example: VLAN233. login_host: IP address of the login interface on the Reyee EG series gateway device. Example: 192.168.110.1:2060. other: other custom field. Multiple custom fields are supported.
Login Parameters	<p>Custom fields of the login interface received by the Reyee EG series gateway devices from the third-party authentication platform, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Username: username. Login Password: password. Post Url: URL to which the wireless client is redirected after successful authentication.

4. Verifying Configuration

Connect your smartphone to the specific Wi-Fi network to verify that the portal page pops up automatically.

Connect to different authentication platforms to view services provided by these authentication platforms.

After the connection is successful, view the details of the wireless client by going to **Advanced > Authentication > Online Clients**. For details, see [4.10.9 Online Authenticated User Management](#).

4.10.5 Local Account Authentication

1. Overview

The device is connected to the local authentication server, and user identity is verified based on the account and password. Local account authentication is applicable to the wireless office network environment.

2. Getting Started

Ensure that the device with the authentication function enabled has been connected to the Internet. Otherwise, the authentication page does not pop up when a client associates with Wi-Fi.

3. Configuration Steps

Choose **Local Device** > **Advanced** > **Authentication** > **Local Account Auth**.

(1) Enable account authentication.

Turn on **Local Account Auth**, enter the IP address range of clients to be authenticated, and click **Save**. After account authentication is enabled, clients in the specified IP address range can access the Internet only after passing authentication.

Cloud Auth **Local Account Auth** Authorized Auth QR Code Auth Allowlist Online Clients

Local Account Auth

1. Enable account authentication and create an account.
2. A user logs in with the account created in step 1 and will be allowed to access the Internet.

Make sure that the device can access the Internet. Otherwise, the Portal page may not pop up on the terminal.

In a layer-2 network, if the IP address of the EAP device is in the authentication IP range, please add its MAC address to the MAC address whitelist of Allowlist.
In a layer-3 network, if the IP address of the EAP device is in the authentication IP range, please add its IP address to the IP address whitelist of Allowlist.

Local Account Auth

Accounts 0

* Network Type Layer-2 Network

* Auth IP / IP Range Example: 1.1.1.1-1.1.1.100 Add

Save

Account Settings

Search by Username/Password + Add Delete Selected Refresh

Up to 200 accounts can be added.

Username	Password	At most of Concurrent Users	MAC Address	Action
No Data				

(2) Configure an authentication account.

Click **Add** to configure an authentication account for Internet access. Multiple clients can access the Internet using the same account and password. The **At most of Concurrent Users** parameter specifies the maximum number of users allowed to access the Internet using the same account.

After a **Wi-Fi user** passes authentication using an account, the IP address of the authenticated user is displayed in the **MAC Address** column next to the account. The account list records a maximum of five latest device IP addresses using the same account.

Account Settings

Up to 200 accounts can be added.

Search by Username/Password + Add Delete Selected Refresh

Username	Password	At most of Concurrent Users	MAC Address	Action
No Data				

Add Account

* Username

* Password

At most of Concurrent Users

Cancel OK

4. Verifying Configuration

After a client connects to the specific Wi-Fi, the authentication page pops up automatically. The user can normally access the Internet only after entering the account and password configured on the local server on the authentication page. You can choose **Advanced > Authentication > Online Clients** to view information about the successfully connected user. For details, see Section [4.10.9 Online Authenticated User Management](#).

4.10.6 Authorized Guest Authentication

1. Overview

The device is connected to the local authentication server. After a guest connects to Wi-Fi, the guest can access the Internet after the specified authorization IP user or account and password authentication user scans the QR code that pops up for guest authentication. For example, in the wireless office network, users in the employee network segment are authorized to scan the guest authentication QR code for users in the guest network segment.

2. Getting Started

Ensure that the device with the authentication function enabled has been connected to the Internet. Otherwise, the authentication page does not pop up when a client associates with Wi-Fi.

3. Configuration Steps

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Authentication > Authorized Auth**.

Turn on **Authorized Auth**, configure **Popup Message**, **Auth IP / IP Range**, **Authorization IP/IP Range**, and **Limit Online Duration**, and click **Save**.

Cloud Auth Local Account Auth Authorized Auth QR Code Auth Allowlist Online Clients

Authorized Auth
An authenticated user can authorize guests by scanning his QR code.

i Make sure that the device can access the Internet. Otherwise, the Portal page may not pop up on the terminal.

In a layer-2 network, if the IP address of the EAP device is in the authentication IP range, please add its MAC address to the MAC address whitelist of Allowlist.

In a layer-3 network, if the IP address of the EAP device is in the authentication IP range, please add its IP address to the IP address whitelist of Allowlist.

Authorized Auth

Popup Message

* Auth IP / IP Range

Limit Online Duration

* Authorization IP/IP
Range

Table 4-9 Authorized guest authentication configuration

Parameter	Description
Popup Message	Specify the text to be displayed on the pop-up QR code page.
Auth IP / IP Range	Specify the IP address range for users to be authenticated. The value can be a single IP address (such as 192.168.110.2) or an IP address range (such as 192.168.110.2-192.168.110.254). Users in the specified IP address range can access the Internet only after passing authentication.
Limit Online Duration	Specify whether to limit the online duration of guests. After you enable this function, you need to configure Duration Limit . If the online duration of a guest exceeds the specified value, the guest can continue Internet access only after re-authorization. By default, this function is disabled, indicating that guests can use Wi-Fi without limit on the online duration.
Duration Limit	Specify the maximum online duration of authorized guests. If the online duration of an authorized guest exceeds the specified value, the guest goes offline automatically and needs to be re-authorized for login again.
Authorization IP/IP Range	Specify the IP address range of authorization users. Users in this range can scan the QR code to authorize guests.

4. Verifying Configuration

After a guest connects to Wi-Fi, the QR code authentication page pops up. The guest can access the Internet after the specified authorization user scans this QR code. You can choose **Advanced > Authentication > Online Clients** to view information about the successfully connected user. For details, see Section [4.10.9 Online Authenticated User Management](#).

4.10.7 Guest Authentication Through QR Code Scanning

1. Overview

Guests scan the specified QR code to access the Internet. For example, in the wireless office network, guests scan the pasted QR code to access the Internet after they connect to Wi-Fi.

2. Getting Started

Ensure that the device with the authentication function enabled has been connected to the Internet. Otherwise, the authentication page does not pop up when a client associates with Wi-Fi.

3. Configuration Steps

Choose Local Device > Advanced > Authentication > QR Code Auth.

Turn on **QR Code Auth**, configure **Auth IP / IP Range**, **Limit Online Duration**, and **QR Code Generator**, and click **Save**.

Cloud Auth Local Account Auth Authorized Auth QR Code Auth Allowlist Online Clients

QR Code Auth
 A user can access the Internet by scanning the specified QR code.

i **Make sure that the device can access the Internet. Otherwise, the Portal page may not pop up on the terminal.**
 In a layer-2 network, if the IP address of the EAP device is in the authentication IP range, please add its MAC address to the MAC address whitelist of **Allowlist**.
 In a layer-3 network, if the IP address of the EAP device is in the authentication IP range, please add its IP address to the IP address whitelist of **Allowlist**.

QR Code Auth

* Auth IP / IP Range

Limit Online Duration


QR Code Generator

* Dynamic QR

Code

Popup

Message



Please print and paste the QR code for guests to scan.

Table 4-10 Guest authentication through QR code scanning configuration

Parameter	Description
Auth IP / IP Range	Specify the IP address range for users to be authenticated. The value can be a single IP address (such as 192.168.110.2) or an IP address range (such as 192.168.110.2-192.168.110.254). Users in the specified IP address range can access the Internet only after passing authentication.
Limit Online Duration	Specify whether to limit the online duration of guests. After you enable this function, you need to configure Duration Limit . If the online duration of a guest exceeds the specified value, the guest needs to scan the QR code again before continuing Internet access. By default, this function is disabled, indicating that guests can use Wi-Fi without limit on the online duration.
Duration Limit	Specify the maximum online duration of authorized guests. If the online duration of an authorized guest exceeds the specified value, the guest goes offline automatically and needs to be re-authenticated.
Dynamic QR Code	The dynamic QR code is used to generate a QR code image. After the dynamic QR code is updated, the QR code image changes and the previous image becomes invalid. You can print and paste the generated QR code image, which can be scanned by guests to access the Internet.
Popup Message	Specify the QR code prompt message displayed on the page after a guest scans the QR code.

4. Verifying Configuration

After a client connects to Wi-Fi, the guest can scan the QR code to pass authentication and access the Internet. You can choose **Advanced > Authentication > Online Clients** to view information about the successfully connected user. For details, see Section [4.10.9 Online Authenticated User Management](#).

4.10.8 Authentication-Free

1. Overview

After IP addresses or MAC addresses are configured for authentication-free users, they can directly access the Internet without passing authentication. Traffic from all the users in the blacklist is blocked.

2. Configuring an Authentication-Free User

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Authentication > Allowlist > User Allowlist**

Authentication-free user: Users in the specified IP address range can directly access the Internet without passing authentication.

Click **Add** to configure the IP address range for authentication-free users. The value can be a single IP address (such as 192.168.110.2) or an IP address range (such as 192.168.110.2-192.168.110.254). A maximum of 50 entries are supported.

Cloud Auth Local Account Auth Authorized Auth QR Code Auth Whitelist Online Clients

i A user configured with whitelisted IP or MAC address can access the Internet without authentication.

User Whitelist + Add Delete Selected

Up to **50** entries can be added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	IP / IP Range	Action
No Data		

Add ×

* IP / IP Range

Cancel OK

3. Configuring Extranet IP Addresses for Authentication-Free

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Authentication > Allowlist > IP Allowlist**.

Extranet IP address for authentication-free: Specify the IP addresses that can be assessed by all users including unauthenticated users.

Click **Add** to configure extranet IP addresses that can be assessed by users without authentication. A maximum of 50 entries are supported.

IP Whitelist + Add Delete Selected

Up to **50** entries can be added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	IP / IP Range	Action
No Data		

Add ×

* IP / IP Range

4. Configuring a Domain Allowlist

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Authentication > Allowlist > Domain Allowlist**

Domain Allowlist: Specify the URLs that can be accessed without authentication.

Click **Add**. In the dialog box that appears, enter the authentication-free URLs, and then click OK. When the destination URL of the user is in the **Domain Allowlist** traffic from the user will be permitted directly, regardless of whether the user passes authentication. A maximum of 100 entries are supported.

URL Whitelist

Up to 100 entries can be added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	URL	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	ruijienetworks.com	Edit Delete

< **1** > Total 1

Add ×

* URL

5. Configuring a User MAC Allowlist

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Authentication > Allowlist > MAC Allowlist**.

MAC Allowlist: Clients whose MAC addresses are in the **Allowlist** can access the Internet through Wi-Fi without the need for authentication.

Click **Add**. In the dialog box that appears, enter the MAC addresses of authentication-free users, and then click **OK**. A maximum of 250 entries are supported.

MAC Whitelist [+ Add](#) [Delete Selected](#)

Up to **250** entries can be added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	MAC	Action
No Data		

< **1** > 10/page Total 0

Add ×

* MAC

6. Configuring a User MAC Blocklist

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Authentication > Allowlist > MAC Blocklist**

User MAC Blocklist Clients whose MAC addresses are in the blocklist are prohibited from accessing the Internet. Click **Add**. In the dialog box that appears, enter the MAC addresses of users in the blocklist, and then click **OK**. A maximum of 250 entries are supported.

MAC Blacklist [+ Add](#) [Delete Selected](#)

Up to **250** entries can be added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	MAC	Action
No Data		

Add
×

* MAC

Cancel
OK

4.10.9 Online Authenticated User Management

1. Configuring the Idle Client Timeout Period

Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Authentication > Online Clients**.

You can configure the idle client timeout period. The default value is 15 minutes. If no traffic from an online user passes through the device within the specified period, the device will force the user offline. The user can continue Internet access only after re-authentication.

Cloud Auth Local Account Auth Authorized Auth QR Code Auth Allowlist Online Clients
discovered.Manage

Online Clients

Auth Settings

Idle Client Timeout Min (Range: 5-65535)

Save

Online Clients
 Q Refresh Delete Selected

	Username	IP	MAC Address	Online Time	Duration(Sec)	Auth Type	Status	Action
No Data								

1 / 10/page Total 0

2. Kicking a User Offline

The online client list displays information about all the current online clients, including the client IP address, client MAC address, login time, and authentication mode. You can find the client information based on the IP address, MAC address, or username. Find the target client in the online client list and click **Delete** in the **Action** column to kick the client off and disconnect the Wi-Fi connection of the client.

Online Clients
 Q Refresh Delete Selected

	Username	IP	MAC	Up on	Duration(Sec)	Auth Type	Status	Action
No Data								

4.11 Enabling Reye Mesh

Choose **Networkwide Management > Network > Reye Mesh**.

After Reyee Mesh is enabled, you can set up a Mesh network through Mesh pairing between the devices that support Reyee Mesh. You can press the **Mesh** button on the device to automatically discover a new device for Mesh pairing or log in to the management page to select a new device for Mesh pairing. Reyee Mesh is enabled on the device by default.

After Reyee Mesh is enabled, the devices that support Reyee Mesh can be paired through wireless or wired connection to set up a Mesh network. Auto link optimization is supported in the Mesh network.

i Mesh link optimization algorithm: The algorithm not only covers signal strength, wireless mode, antenna streams and bandwidth parameters, but also considers the attenuation of Mesh hops. The Mesh system will select the optimal uplink automatically for the AP based on the link optimization algorithm.

Enable

[Save](#)

4.12 Configuring the LAN Port of Downlink Access Point

 **Caution**

The configuration takes effect only for a downlink access point with a wired LAN port.

Choose **Networkwide Management > Network > LAN Ports**.

Enter the VLAN ID and click **Save** to configure the VLAN, to which the AP wired ports belong. If the VLAN ID is null, the wired ports and WAN port belong to the same VLAN.

In self-organizing network mode, the AP wired port configuration applies to all APs having wired LAN ports on the current network. The configuration applied to APs in **LAN Port Settings** takes effect preferentially. Click **Add** to add the AP wired port configuration. For APs, to which no configuration is applied in **LAN Port Settings**, the default configuration of the AP wired ports will take effect on them.

LAN Port Settings

i The configuration takes effect only for the AP with a LAN port, e.g., EAP101.
Note: The configured LAN port settings prevail. **The AP device with no LAN port settings will be enabled with default settings.**

Default Settings

VLAN ID [Add VLAN](#)

(Range: 2-232 and 234-4090. A blank value indicates the same VLAN as WAN port.)

Applied to AP device with no LAN port settings **i**

[Save](#)

LAN Port Settings [+ Add](#) [Delete Selected](#)

Up to 8 VLAN IDs or 32 APs can be added (1 APs have been added).

<input type="checkbox"/>	VLAN ID ⇅	Applied to	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	Ruijie	Edit Delete

4.13 Wireless Authentication

Note

The function is supported by EG310G-E, EG305GH-E, and EG310GH-E.

4.13.1 Overview

Use the wireless authentication function to perform authentication configuration for the AP connected to the gateway. After users connect to the Wi-Fi signals released by the AP, the traffic will not be directly routed to the Internet. Wi-Fi users must pass authentication before accessing network resources.

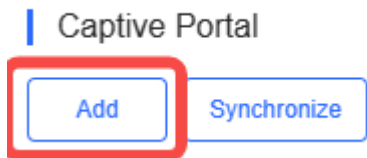
Note

- The EG series router supports egress authentication. When an EG router is used independently, you are advised to use the authentication function of the router. Log in to the Eweb of the EG router. Choose **Local Device > Advanced > Authentication**. For details, see 4.10 Wi-Fi Authentication.
- When the EG router connects to the AP, the **Wireless Auth** action entry point appears on the **Network** page but not on the **Local Device** page.

4.13.2 Configuring One-click Login on Ruijie Cloud

1. Configuring a Portal Template with the Authentication Mode Set to One-click Login

- (1) Log in to Ruijie Cloud, choose **Project > Configuration > Authentication > Captive Portal**, and select a network that needs to configure wireless authentication.
- (2) Click **Add** to open the portal template configuration page.



- (3) Configure basic information of the portal template.

Name:

Description:

Login Options: One-click Login Voucher Account SMS Registration Facebook Account

Access Duration (Min): Custom

Access Times Per Day: Unlimited

Show Balance Page:

Post-login URL:

Table 4-11 Basic Information of the Portal Template

Parameter	Description
Name	Indicates the name of a captive portal template.

Parameter	Description
Description	Indicates the description of a captive portal template.
Login Options	Select One-click Login , which indicates login without the username and password. You can set the access duration and access time per day.
Show Balance Page	Indicates the available duration, time, or data after portal authentication.
Post-login URL	Indicates the URL that is displayed after portal authentication.

(4) In the **Portal Page** area, click **Basic** to configure basic information for the portal page.

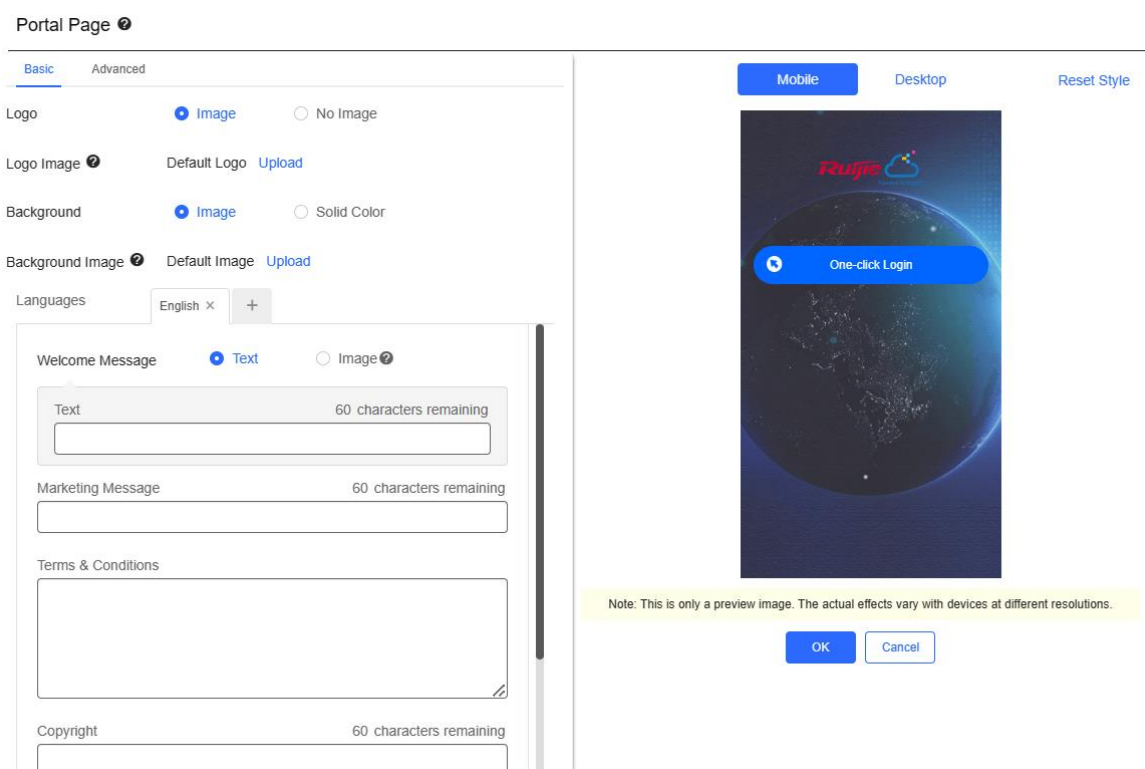



Table 4-12 Basic Information of the Portal Page

Parameter	Description
Logo	Select whether to display the logo image.
Logo Image	When Logo is set to Image , upload the logo picture or select the default logo.
Background	Select the background with the image or the solid color.
Background Image	When Background is set to Image , upload the background image or select the default image.
Background Color	When Background is set to Solid Color , configure the background color. The default value is #ffffff.

Parameter	Description
Language	<p>Select the language of the portal page and configure the content displayed on the portal page as required. You can click  to add portal pages in other languages.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Welcome Message: Select the welcome message with the image or text. ● Marketing message: Enter the marketing message. ● Terms & Conditions: Enter terms and conditions. ● Copyright: Enter the copyright. ● One-click Login: After One-click Login is enabled, you can customize the button name displayed on the portal page, which is set to One-click Login by default. <p>One-click Login <input type="checkbox"/> Reset</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Switching Button 45 characters remaining</p> <p style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">One-click Login</p> </div>

(5) In the **Portal Page** area, click **Advanced** to configure advanced information for the portal page.

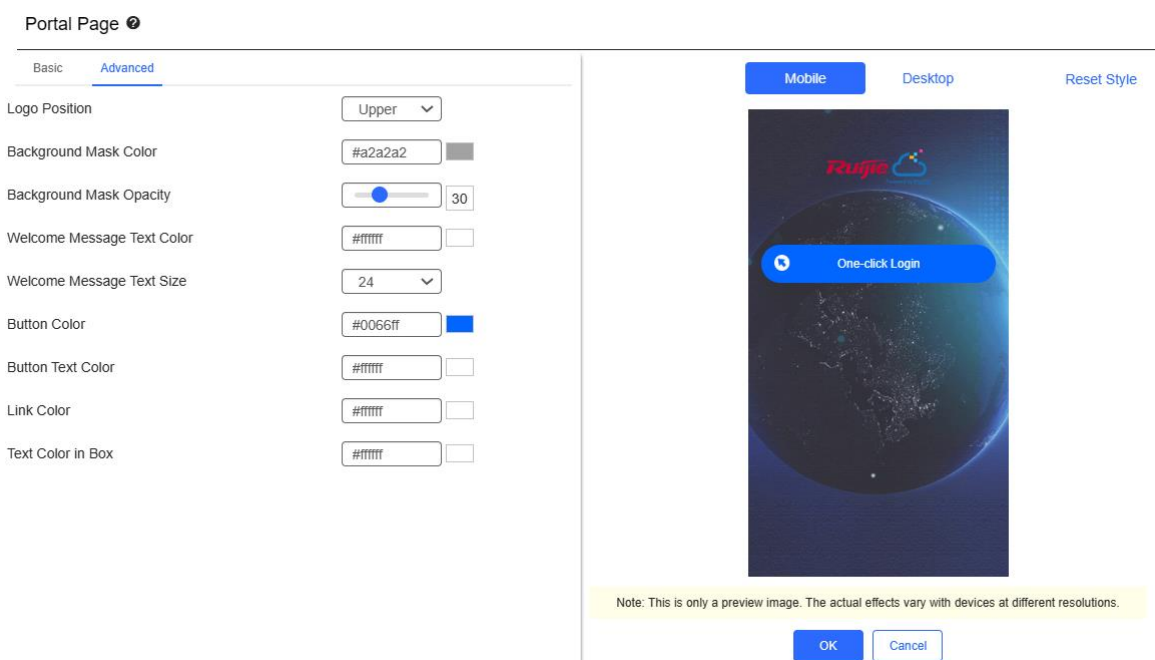


Table 4-13 Advanced Information of the Portal Page



Parameter	Description
Logo Position	Select the logo position (Upper, Middle, or Lower).
Background Mask Color	Select the background mask color. The default value is #a2a2a2.
Background Mask Opacity	Select the background mask opacity (0-100).


Parameter	Description
Welcome Message Text Color	Select the welcome message text color. The default value is #ffffff.
Welcome Message Text Size	Select the welcome message text size.
Button Color	Select the button color. The default value is #0066ff.
Button Text Color	Select the button text color. The default value is #ffffff.
Link Color	Select the link color. The default value is #ffffff.
Text Color in Box	Select the text color in the box. The default value is #ffffff.



(6) After the configuration, click **OK** to save the portal template configurations.

2. Enabling One-click Login for an SSID

(1) Log in to Ruijie Cloud, choose **Project > Configuration > Devices > Wireless > SSID**, and select a network that needs to configure wireless authentication.

(2) If the SSID that needs to enable wireless authentication is not created, click  to open the SSID configuration page. If the SSID that needs to enable wireless authentication is created, click  in the **Action** column. The following content only describes configurations related to wireless authentication. For details about other SSID configuration parameters, see the Ruijie Cloud Cookbook.

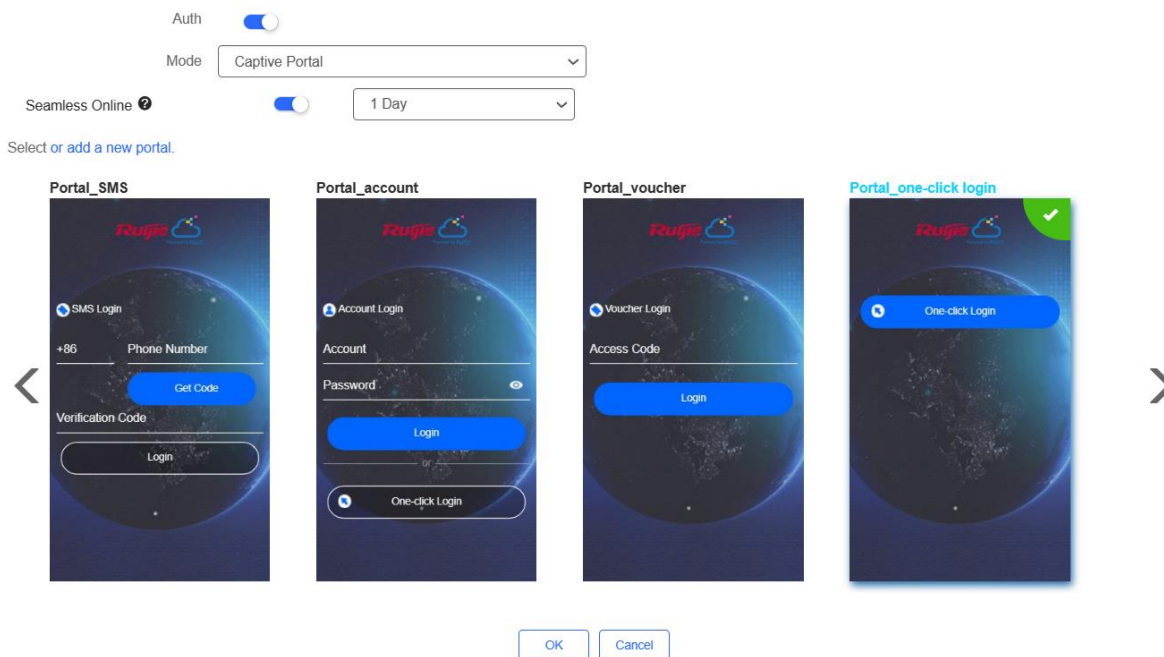
SSID 

WLAN ID	SSID	Encryption Mode	Hidden	Forward Mode	Radio	Auth Mode	Action
1	WiFi_60	Open	No	Bridge	1	Auth Disabled	 

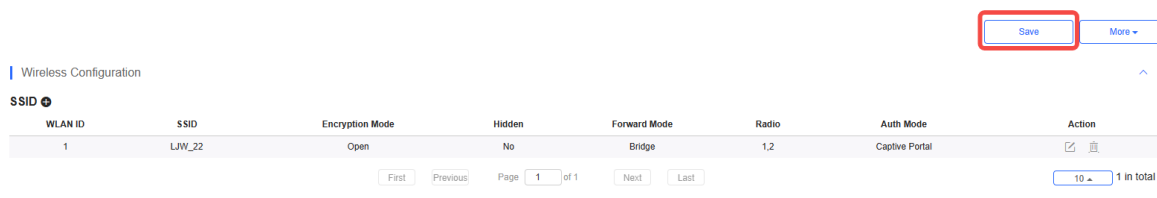
(3) Enable **Auth** (disabled by default) and configure authentication-related parameters. After the configuration, click **OK** to save the configurations.

 **Note**

When **Encryption Mode** is set to a value other than **WPA2-Enterprise(802.1x)**, **Auth** is available and you can select whether to perform wireless authentication.



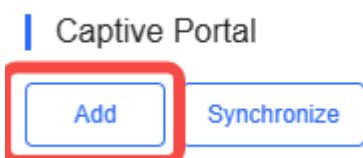
- **Mode:** Set it to **Captive Portal**.
 - **Seamless Online:** Determine whether to enable **Seamless Online** as required, which is enabled by default. After **Seamless Online** is enabled, users do not need to be authenticated when they go online again in the specified period of time.
 - **Select or add a new portal:** Select a portal template with the authentication mode set to **One-click Login**. If the configured template does not meet the requirements, click **or add a new portal** to create a portal template.
- (4) Click **Save** for the configuration to take effect.



4.13.3 Configuring Voucher Authentication on Ruijie Cloud

1. Configuring a Portal Template with the Authentication Mode Set to Voucher

- (1) Log in to Ruijie Cloud, choose **Project > Configuration > Authentication > Captive Portal**, and select a network that needs to configure wireless authentication.
- (2) Click **Add** to open the portal template configuration page.



- (3) Configure basic information of the portal template.

Name

Description

Login Options One-click Login **Voucher** Account SMS Registration **beta** Facebook Account

Show Balance Page

Post-login URL

Table 4-14 Basic Information of the Portal Template

Parameter	Description
Name	Indicates the name of a captive portal template.
Description	Indicates the description of a captive portal template.
Login Options	Select Voucher , which indicates login with a random eight-digit password.
Show Balance Page	Indicates the available duration, time, or data after portal authentication.
Post-login URL	Indicates the URL that is displayed after portal authentication.

(4) In the **Portal Page** area, click **Basic** to configure basic information for the portal page.

Portal Page [?](#)

Basic Advanced

Logo Image No Image

Logo Image [?](#) Default Logo [Upload](#)

Background Image Solid Color

Background Image [?](#) Default Image [Upload](#)

Languages English [x](#) [+](#)

Welcome Message Text Image [?](#)

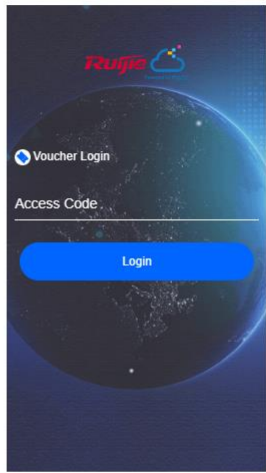
Text 60 characters remaining

Marketing Message 60 characters remaining

Terms & Conditions

Copyright 60 characters remaining

Mobile Desktop [Reset Style](#)





Note: This is only a preview image. The actual effects vary with devices at different resolutions.

[OK](#) [Cancel](#)

Table 4-15 Basic Information of the Portal Page

Parameter	Description
Logo	Select whether to display the logo image.

Parameter	Description
Logo Image	When Logo is set to Image , upload the logo picture or select the default logo.
Background	Select the background with the image or the solid color.
Background Image	When Background is set to Image , upload the background image or select the default image.
Background Color	When Background is set to Solid Color , configure the background color. The default value is #ffffff .
Language	<p>Select the language of the portal page and configure the content displayed on the portal page as required. You can click  to add portal pages in other languages.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Welcome Message: Select the welcome message with the image or text. ● Marketing message: Enter the marketing message. ● Terms & Conditions: Enter terms and conditions. ● Copyright: Enter the copyright. ● Voucher Login: After Voucher Login is enabled, you can customize the names of controls related to voucher authentication. <p>Voucher Login <input type="checkbox"/> Reset</p> <p>Title  Show 60 characters remaining</p> <p>Voucher Login</p> <p>Voucher Code Placeholder 60 characters remaining</p> <p>Access Code</p> <p>Login Button 60 characters remaining</p> <p>Login</p> <p>Switching Button 60 characters remaining</p> <p>Voucher Login</p>

(5) In the **Portal Page** area, click **Advanced** to configure advanced information for the portal page.

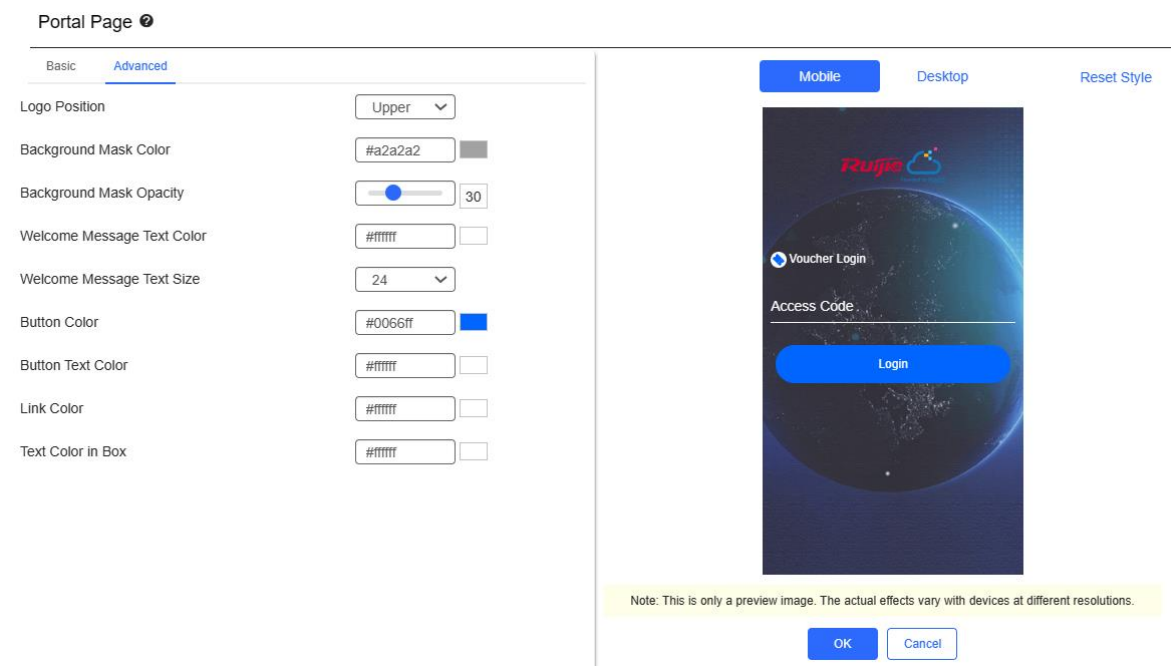




Table 4-16 Advanced Information of the Portal Page

Parameter	Description
Logo Position	Select the logo position (Upper, Middle, or Lower).
Background Mask Color	Select the background mask color. The default value is #a2a2a2.
Background Mask Opacity	Select the background mask opacity (0-100).
Welcome Message Text Color	Select the welcome message text color. The default value is #ffffff.
Welcome Message Text Size	Select the welcome message text size.
Button Color	Select the button color. The default value is #0066ff.
Button Text Color	Select the button text color. The default value is #ffffff.
Link Color	Select the link color. The default value is #ffffff.
Text Color in Box	Select the text color in the box. The default value is #ffffff.



(6) After the configuration, click **OK** to save the portal template configurations.

2. Enabling Voucher Authentication for an SSID

(1) Log in to Ruijie Cloud, choose **Project > Configuration > Devices > Wireless > SSID**, and select a network that needs to configure wireless authentication.

(2) If the SSID that needs to enable wireless authentication is not created, click  to open the SSID configuration page. If the SSID that needs to enable wireless authentication is created, click  in the

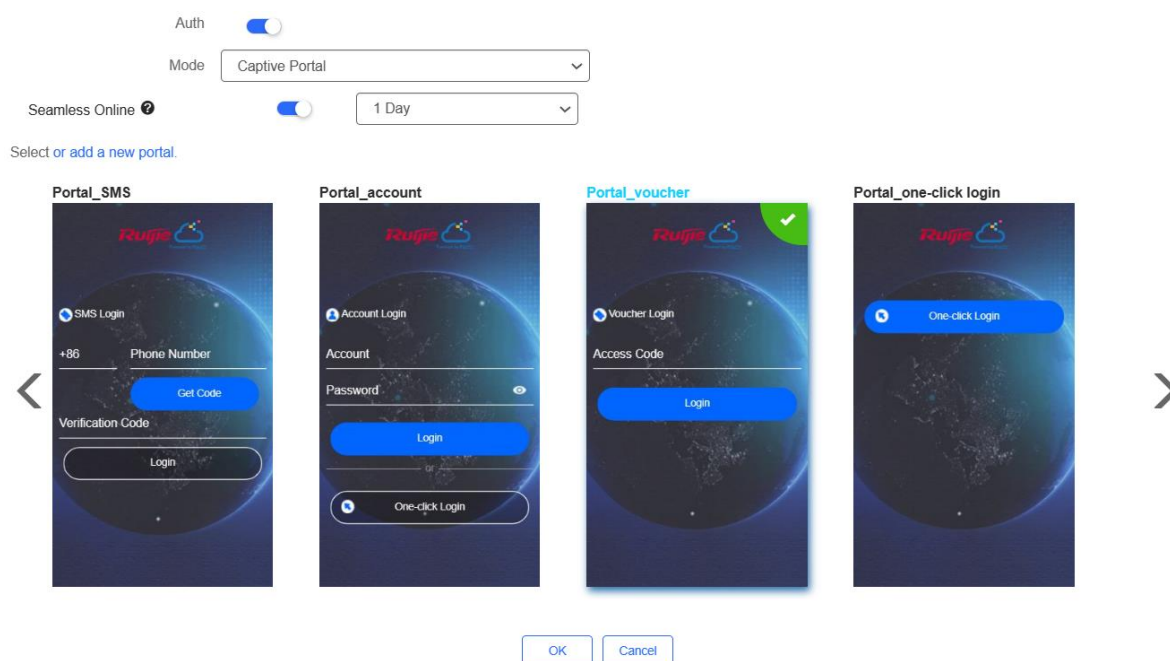
Action column. The following content only describes configurations related to wireless authentication. For details about other SSID configuration parameters, see the Ruijie Cloud Cookbook.

WLAN ID	SSID	Encryption Mode	Hidden	Forward Mode	Radio	Auth Mode	Action
1	WiFi_60	Open	No	Bridge	1	Auth Disabled	 

- Enable **Auth** (disabled by default) and configure authentication-related parameters. After the configuration, click **OK** to save the configurations.

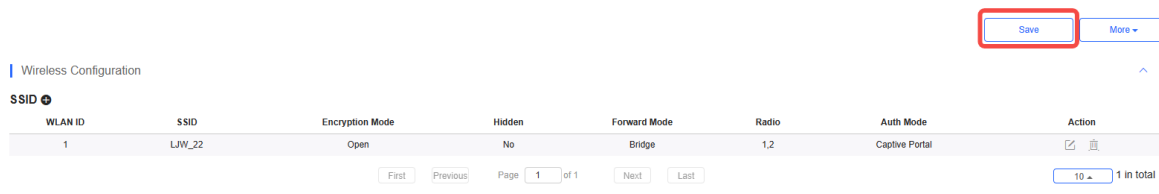
Note

When **Encryption Mode** is set to a value other than **WPA2-Enterprise(802.1x)**, **Auth** is available and you can select whether to perform wireless authentication.



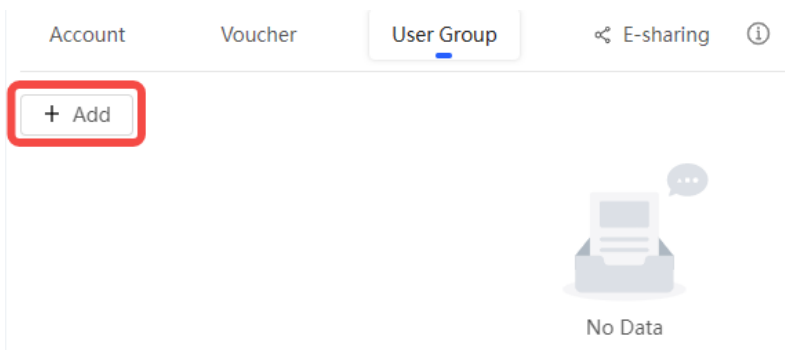
- **Mode:** Set it to **Captive Portal**.
- **Seamless Online:** Determine whether to enable **Seamless Online** as required, which is enabled by default. After **Seamless Online** is enabled, users do not need to be authenticated when they go online again in the specified period of time.
- **Select or add a new portal:** Select a portal template with the authentication mode set to **Voucher**. If the configured template does not meet the requirements, click **or add a new portal** to create a portal template.

- Click **Save** for the configuration to take effect.



3. Adding a Voucher

- (1) Log in to Ruijie Cloud, choose **Project > Authentication > User Management**, and select a network in this account.
- (2) Configure a user group.
 - a On the **User Group** tab, click **Add**.



- b Configure user group parameters. After the configuration, click **OK**.

Add user group X

* User group name

User Group Policy

Price

Concurrent devices

Period

Quota ⓘ

Maximum upload rate

Maximum download rate

Bind MAC on first use

User Group Name: indicates the user group name.

Price: indicates the price of the user group. Mark user groups by numeral. The current version has no impact on network usage.

Concurrent Devices: indicates the number of concurrent devices for one account.

Period: indicates the maximum validity time of an account. The maximum value is counted after the client passes authentication and successfully accesses the Internet.

Quota: indicates the maximum amount of data transfer.

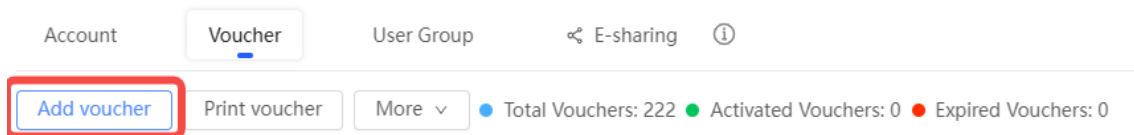
Maximum upload rate: indicates the maximum upload rate.

Maximum download rate: indicates the maximum download rate.

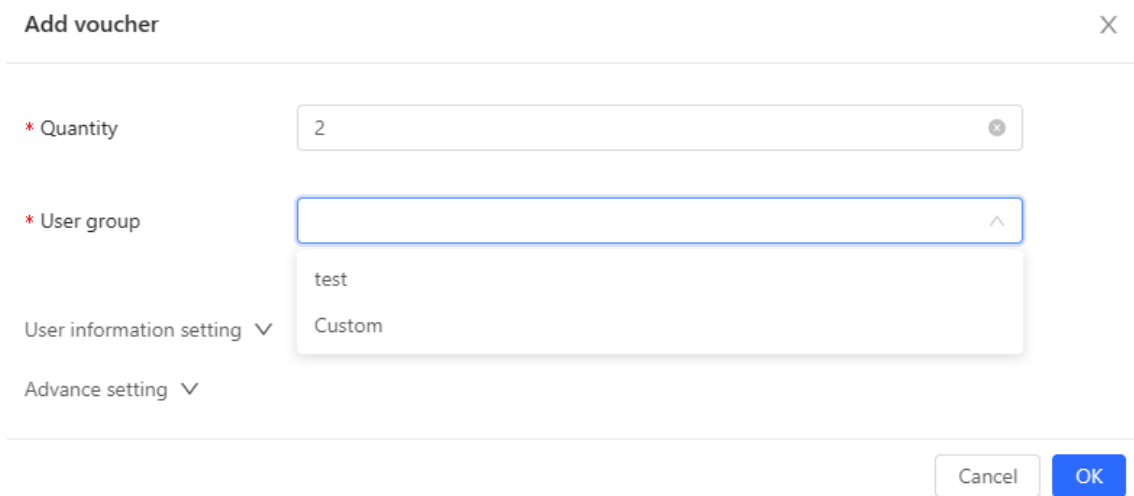
Bind MAC on first use: indicates that the MAC address of the first device used will be bound and other devices used by the same user will be prohibited from accessing the Internet.

(3) Configure a voucher.

a On the **Voucher** tab, click **Add voucher**.



b Configure voucher parameters. After the configuration, click **OK**.



Quantity: Enter the quantity of the voucher to print. When the value is set to 1, you can add a voucher and configure the name and the email address. When the value is greater than 1, you can add vouchers in batches. In this case, you can only configure the name and email address separately after the vouchers are added.

User group: Select a created user group from the drop-down list. If the created user group does not meet the requirements, click **Custom** to create a user group.

User information setting: Configure user information, which is optional.

Advance setting:

- o **Voucher code type:** Set the value to Alphanumeric 0-9, a-z, Alphabetic a-z, or Numeric 0-9.

Advance Setting ^

Voucher code type

Voucher length

Alphanumeric 0-9, a-z

Alphabetic a-z

Numeric 0-9

- o **Voucher length:** Select the voucher length. The value ranges from 6 to 9.

Voucher length

6

7

8

9

(4) Obtain the voucher code from the voucher list.

Account **Voucher** User Group E-sharing ⓘ

Add voucher Print voucher More ▾ Total Vouchers: 4 Activated Vouchers: 0 Expired Vouchers: 0

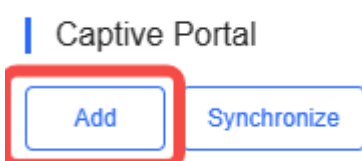
<input type="checkbox"/>	Voucher code	User Group	Period	Created at	Activated at	Expired at	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	fyhwg	1	Unlimited	2022-08-12 18:34:31	-	-	✎ 🗑
<input type="checkbox"/>	dwgkh	1	Unlimited	2022-08-12 18:34:31	-	-	✎ 🗑
<input type="checkbox"/>	tnq76	1	Unlimited	2022-08-12 11:09:07	-	-	✎ 🗑
<input type="checkbox"/>	jz75g	1	Unlimited	2022-08-12 11:09:07	-	-	✎ 🗑

4 in total < 1 > 20 / page

4.13.4 Configuring Account Authentication on Ruijie Cloud

1. Configuring a Portal Template with the Authentication Mode Set to Account

- (1) Log in to Ruijie Cloud, choose **Project > Configuration > Authentication > Captive Portal**, and select a network that needs to configure wireless authentication.
- (2) Click **Add** to open the portal template configuration page.



- (3) Configure basic information of the portal template.

Name

Description

Login Options One-click Login Voucher **Account** SMS Registration beta Facebook Account

Show Balance Page

Post-login URL

Table 4-17 Basic Information of the Portal Template

Parameter	Description
Name	Indicates the name of a captive portal template.
Description	Indicates the description of a captive portal template.
Login Options	Select Account , which indicates login with the account and password.
Show Balance Page	Indicates the available duration, time, or data after portal authentication.
Post-login URL	Indicates the URL that is displayed after portal authentication.

(4) In the **Portal Page** area, click **Basic** to configure basic information for the portal page.

Portal Page [?](#)

[Basic](#) [Advanced](#)

Logo Image No Image

Logo Image [?](#) Default Logo [Upload](#)

Background Image Solid Color

Background Image [?](#) Default Image [Upload](#)

Languages English [x](#) [+](#)

Welcome Message Text Image [?](#)

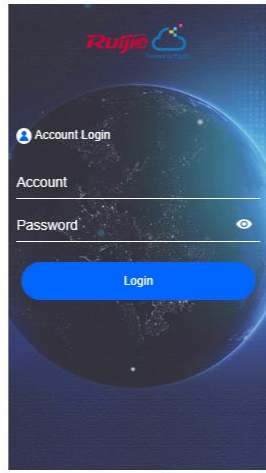
Text 60 characters remaining

Marketing Message 60 characters remaining

Terms & Conditions

Copyright 60 characters remaining

Mobile Desktop [Reset Style](#)





Note: This is only a preview image. The actual effects vary with devices at different resolutions.

[OK](#) [Cancel](#)

Table 4-18 Basic Information of the Portal Page

Parameter	Description
Logo	Select whether to display the logo image.

Parameter	Description
Logo Image	When Logo is set to Image , upload the logo picture or select the default logo.
Background	Select the background with the image or the solid color.
Background Image	When Background is set to Image , upload the background image or select the default image.
Background Color	When Background is set to Solid Color , configure the background color. The default value is #ffffff.
Language	<p>Select the language of the portal page and configure the content displayed on the portal page as required. You can click  to add portal pages in other languages.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Welcome Message: Select the welcome message with the image or text. ● Marketing message: Enter the marketing message. ● Terms & Conditions: Enter terms and conditions. ● Copyright: Enter the copyright. ● Account Login: After Account Login is enabled, you can customize the names of the controls related to account authentication. <p>Account Login <input type="checkbox"/> Reset</p> <p>Title  Show 60 characters remaining</p> <p>Account Login <input type="text" value="Account Login"/></p> <p>Account Placeholder 60 characters remaining</p> <p>Account <input type="text" value="Account"/></p> <p>Password Placeholder 60 characters remaining</p> <p>Password <input type="text" value="Password"/></p> <p>Login Button 60 characters remaining</p> <p>Login <input type="text" value="Login"/></p> <p>Switching Button 60 characters remaining</p> <p>Account Login <input type="text" value="Account Login"/></p>

(5) In the **Portal Page** area, click **Advanced** to configure advanced information for the portal page.

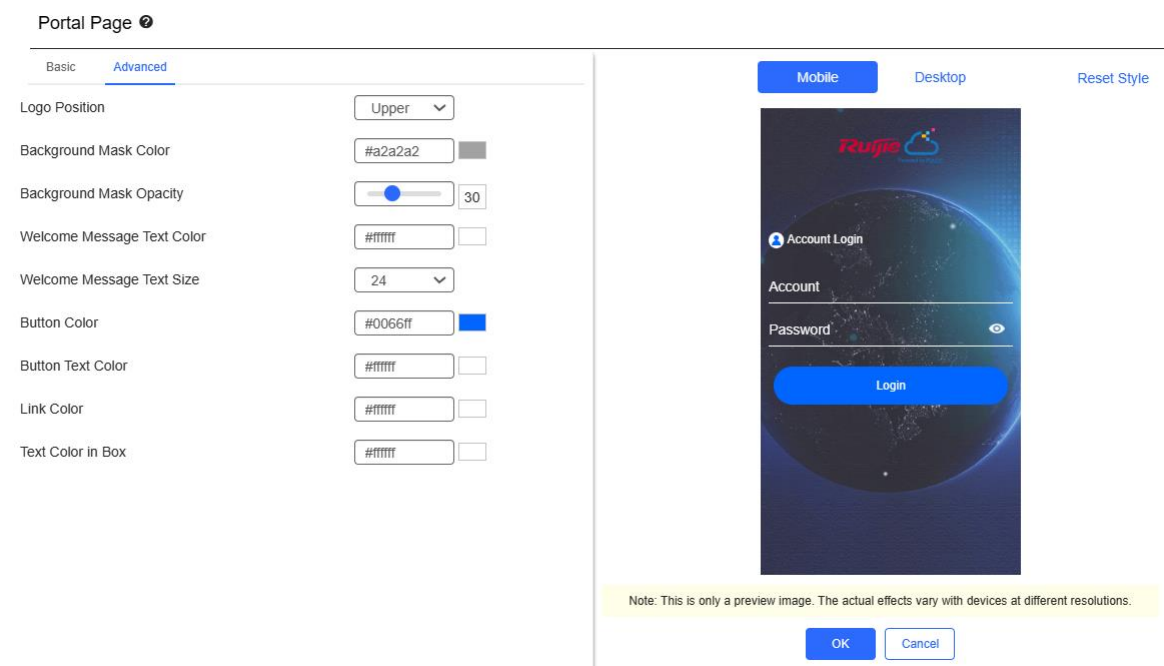




Table 4-19 Advanced Information of the Portal Page



Parameter	Description
Logo Position	Select the logo position (Upper, Middle, or Lower).
Background Mask Color	Select the background mask color. The default value is #a2a2a2.
Background Mask Opacity	Select the background mask opacity (0-100).
Welcome Message Text Color	Select the welcome message text color. The default value is #ffffff.
Welcome Message Text Size	Select the welcome message text size.
Button Color	Select the button color. The default value is #0066ff.
Button Text Color	Select the button text color. The default value is #ffffff.
Link Color	Select the link color. The default value is #ffffff.
Text Color in Box	Select the text color in the box. The default value is #ffffff.

(6) After the configuration, click **OK** to save the portal template configurations.

2. Enabling Account Authentication for an SSID

- (1) Log in to Ruijie Cloud, choose **Project > Configuration > Devices > Wireless > SSID**, and select a network that needs to configure wireless authentication.
- (2) If the SSID that needs to enable wireless authentication is not created, click  to open the SSID configuration page. If the SSID that needs to enable wireless authentication is created, click  in the

Action column. The following content only describes configurations related to wireless authentication. For details about other SSID configuration parameters, see the Ruijie Cloud Cookbook.

WLAN ID	SSID	Encryption Mode	Hidden	Forward Mode	Radio	Auth Mode	Action
1	WiFi_60	Open	No	Bridge	1	Auth Disabled	 

- Enable **Auth** (disabled by default) and configure authentication-related parameters. After the configuration, click **OK** to save the configurations.

Note

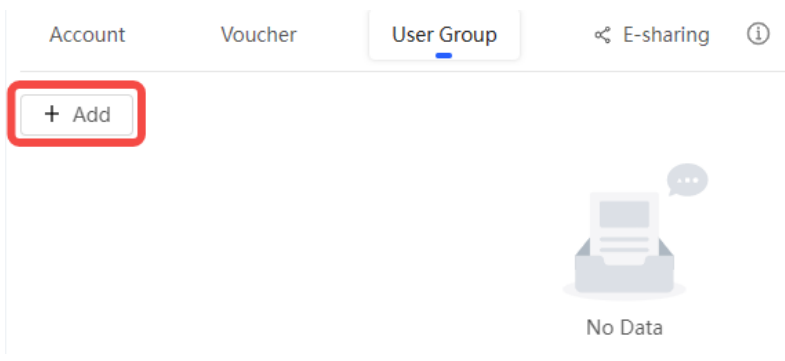
When **Encryption Mode** is set to a value other than **WPA2-Enterprise(802.1x)**, **Auth** is available and you can select whether to perform wireless authentication.

- **Mode:** Set it to **Captive Portal**.
- **Seamless Online:** Determine whether to enable **Seamless Online** as required, which is enabled by default. After **Seamless Online** is enabled, users do not need to be authenticated when they go online again in the specified period of time.
- **Select or add a new portal:** Select a portal template with the authentication mode set to **Account**. If the configured template does not meet the requirements, click **or add a new portal** to create a portal template.

- Click **Save** for the configuration to take effect.

3. Adding an Account

- (1) Log in to Ruijie Cloud, choose **Project > Authentication > User Management**, and select a network in this account.
- (2) Configure a user group.
 - a On the **User Group** tab, click **Add**.



- b Configure user group parameters. After the configuration, click **OK**.

Add user group X

* User group name

User Group Policy

Price

Concurrent devices

Period

Quota ⓘ

Maximum upload rate

Maximum download rate

Bind MAC on first use

User Group Name: indicates the user group name.

Price: indicates the price of the user group. Mark user groups by numeral. The current version has no impact on network usage.

Concurrent Devices: indicates the number of concurrent devices for one account.

Period: indicates the maximum validity time of an account. The maximum value is counted after the client passes authentication and successfully accesses the Internet.

Quota: indicates the maximum amount of data transfer.

Maximum upload rate: indicates the maximum upload rate.

Maximum download rate: indicates the maximum download rate.

Bind MAC on first use: indicates that the MAC address of the first device used will be bound and other devices used by the same user will be prohibited from accessing the Internet.

(3) On the **Account** tab, add an account. Accounts can be added manually or through batch import.

- Adding an account manually

Click **Add an Account**, set parameters about the account, and click **OK**.

Add account
X

* User name

* Password

* User group

Allow VPN connection

Tips: By enabling this option, the user can use this account to log in remotely using a VPN.

User information setting ▼

User name: The value is a string of less than 32 characters, consisting of letters, numerals, and underscores.

Password: The value is a string of less than 32 characters, consisting of letters, numerals, and underscores.

User group: Select a created user group from the drop-down list. If the created user group does not meet the requirements, click **Custom** to create a user group.

Allow VPN connection: By enabling this option, the user can use this account to log in remotely using a VPN.

User information setting: You can expand it to have more user information displayed, including the first name, last name, email, phone number, and alias.

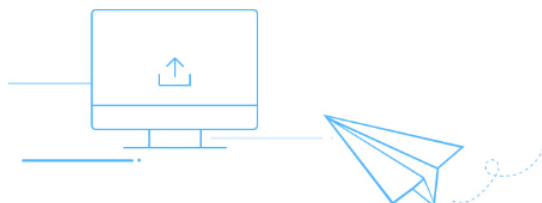
- Adding accounts through batch import
 - a Click **Bulk import**.

Bulk import accounts



Step1: Download and fill in the device information in the template. Up to 500 records can be imported each time.

Account and Password fields are required. Please enter less than 32 characters, consisting of letters, numbers or underscores.



Please select an .xls or .xlsx file

Download Template

- b Click **Download Template** to download the template.
- c Edit the template and save it.

Note

- **Account, Password, and User Group** are mandatory.
- Check that the user group already exists and the added accounts are not duplicate with existing accounts.

Account	Password	First name	Last name	Alias	User group	Email
test2	test2				test	
test3	test3				test	
test4	test4				test	

- d Click **Please select an .xls or .xlsx file** to upload the file. After uploading, users are automatically created.

The screenshot shows the 'Account' management page with a table of accounts. The table has columns for Account, Password, User group, Status, Period, First name, Alias, Created at, Activated at, and Operation. Three accounts (test2, test3, test4) are listed, all with a status of 'Not used' and a period of '30Minutes'. The 'Created at' date for all is '2023-02-13 16:42:21'. The 'Activated at' field is empty for all. The 'Operation' column contains edit, delete, and refresh icons.

4.13.5 Configuring SMS Authentication on Ruijie Cloud

1. Adding a Twilio Account


Prerequisites

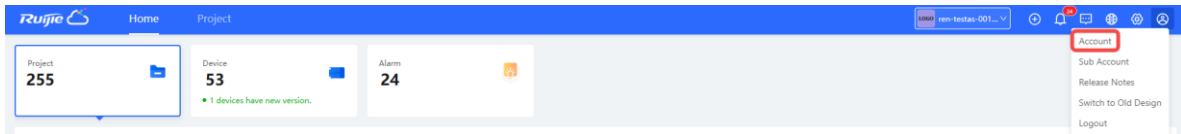
A Twilio account has been applied for from the Twilio official website (<https://www.twilio.com/login>).

Note

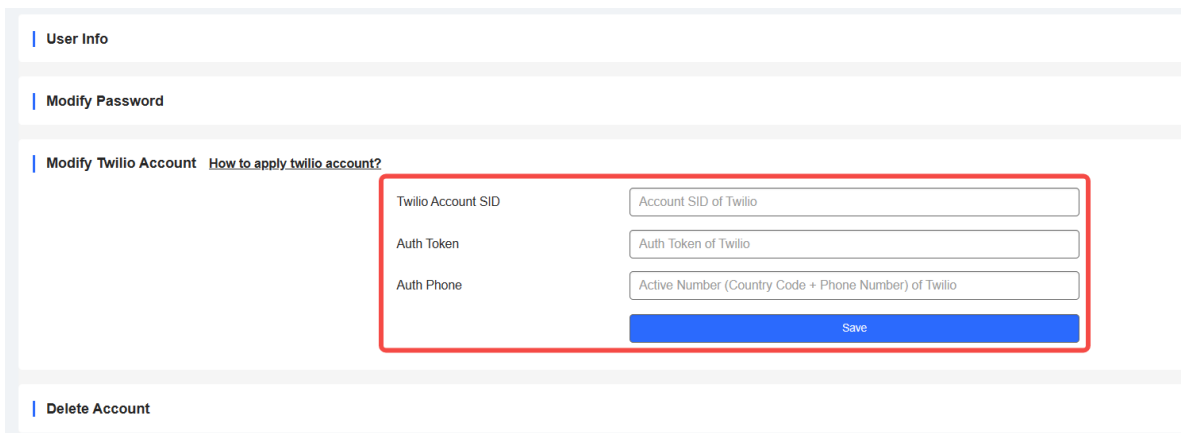
A Twilio account is used to send the SMS verification code.

Configuration Steps

(1) Log in to Ruijie Cloud and choose  > **Account**.



(2) Add Twilio account information and click **Save**.



2. Configuring a Portal Template with the Authentication Mode Set to SMS

- (1) Log in to Ruijie Cloud, choose **Project** > **Configuration** > **Authentication** > **Captive Portal**, and select a network that needs to configure wireless authentication.
- (2) Click **Add** to open the portal template configuration page.

Captive Portal



(3) Configure basic information of the portal template.

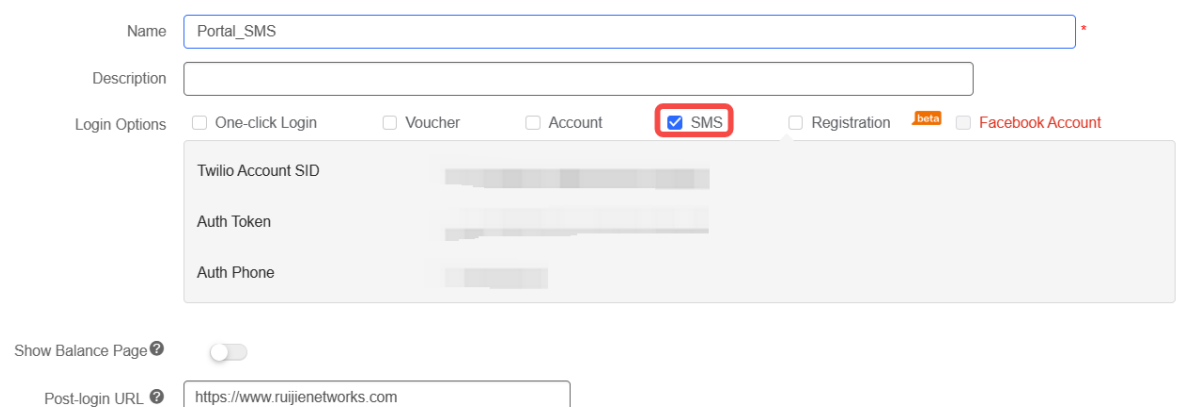


Table 4-20 Basic Information of the Portal Template

Parameter	Description
Name	Indicates the name of a captive portal template.
Description	Indicates the description of a captive portal template.
Login Options	Select SMS , which indicates login with the phone number and code.
Show Balance Page	Indicates the available duration, time, or data after portal authentication.
Post-login URL	Indicates the URL that is displayed after portal authentication.

(4) In the **Portal Page** area, click **Basic** to configure basic information for the portal page.

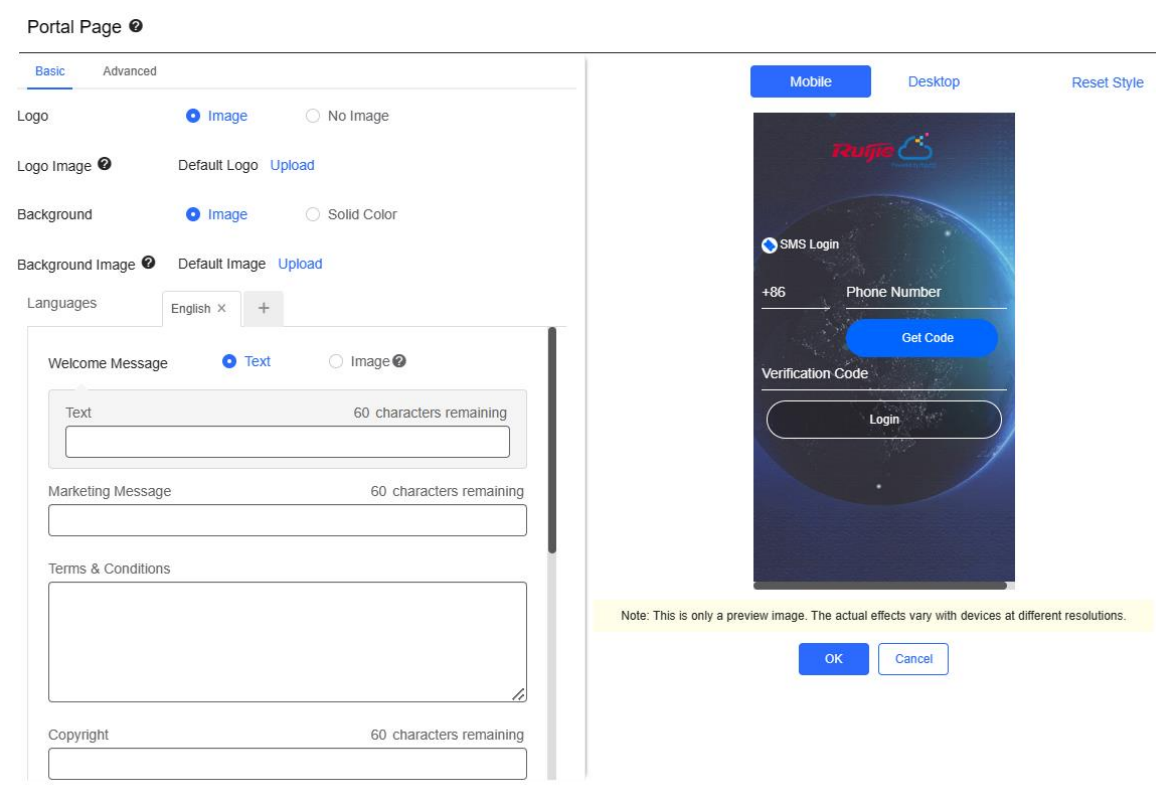




Table 4-21 Basic Information of the Portal Page

Parameter	Description
Logo	Select whether to display the logo image.
Logo Image	When Logo is set to Image , upload the logo picture or select the default logo.
Background	Select the background with the image or the solid color.
Background Image	When Background is set to Image , upload the background image or select the default image.

Parameter	Description
Background Color	When Background is set to Solid Color , configure the background color. The default value is #ffffff.
Language	<p>Select the language of the portal page and configure the content displayed on the portal page as required. You can click  to add portal pages in other languages.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Welcome Message: Select the welcome message with the image or text. ● Marketing message: Enter the marketing message. ● Terms & Conditions: Enter terms and conditions. ● Copyright: Enter the copyright. ● SMS Login: After SMS Login is enabled, you can customize the names of the controls related to SMS authentication. <p>SMS Login <input type="checkbox"/> Reset</p> <p>Title  Show 60 characters remaining</p> <p><input type="text" value="SMS Login"/></p> <p>Phone Number Placeholder 60 characters remaining</p> <p><input type="text" value="Phone Number"/></p> <p>Verification Code Placeholder 60 characters remaining</p> <p><input type="text" value="Verification Code"/></p> <p>Verification Code Button 60 characters remaining</p> <p><input type="text" value="Get Code"/></p> <p>Login Button 60 characters remaining</p> <p><input type="text" value="Login"/></p> <p>Switching Button 60 characters remaining</p> <p><input type="text" value="SMS Login"/></p>

(5) In the **Portal Page** area, click **Advanced** to configure advanced information for the portal page.

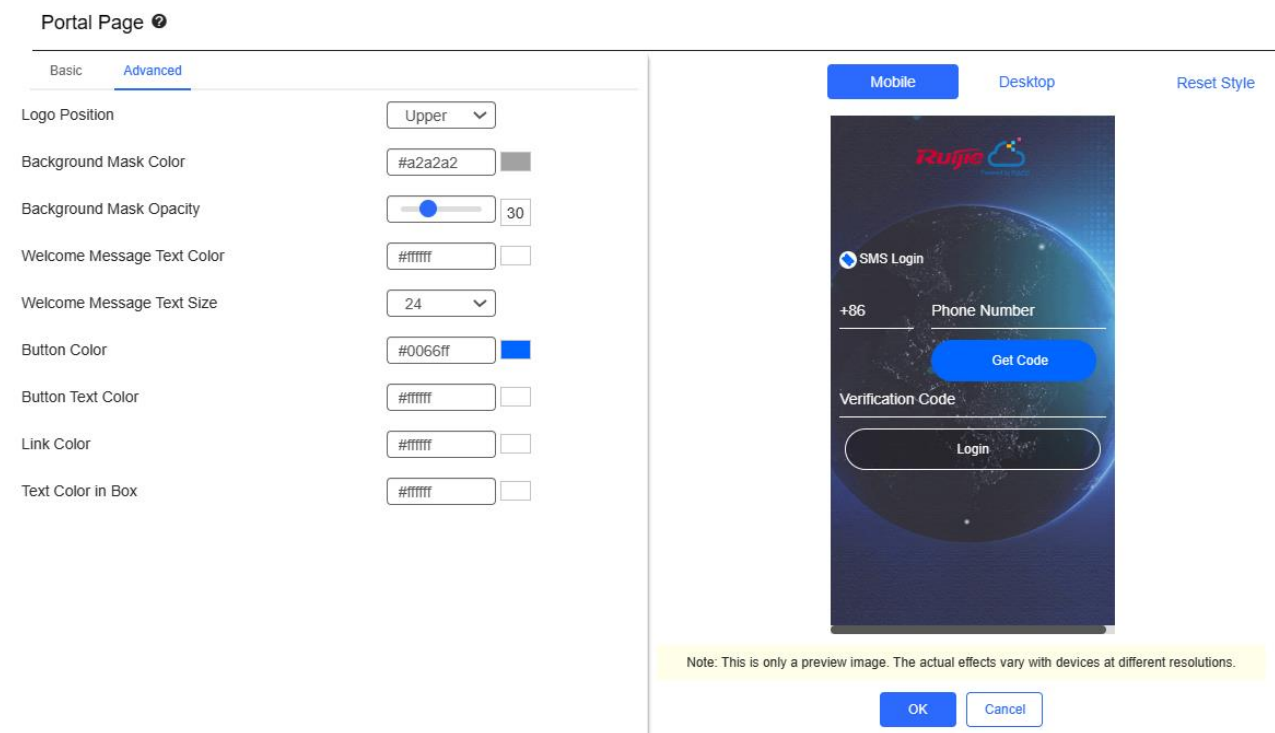




Table 4-22 Advanced Information of the Portal Page


Parameter	Description
Logo Position	Select the logo position (Upper, Middle, or Lower).
Background Mask Color	Select the background mask color. The default value is #a2a2a2.
Background Mask Opacity	Select the background mask opacity (0-100).
Welcome Message Text Color	Select the welcome message text color. The default value is #ffffff.
Welcome Message Text Size	Select the welcome message text size.
Button Color	Select the button color. The default value is #0066ff.
Button Text Color	Select the button text color. The default value is #ffffff.
Link Color	Select the link color. The default value is #ffffff.
Text Color in Box	Select the text color in the box. The default value is #ffffff.



(6) After the configuration, click **OK** to save the portal template configurations.

3. Enabling SMS Authentication for an SSID

- (1) Log in to Ruijie Cloud, choose **Project > Configuration > Devices > Wireless > SSID**, and select a network that needs to configure wireless authentication.

(2) If the SSID that needs to enable wireless authentication is not created, click  to open the SSID configuration page. If the SSID that needs to enable wireless authentication is created, click  in the **Action** column. The following content only describes configurations related to wireless authentication. For details about other SSID configuration parameters, see the Ruijie Cloud Cookbook.

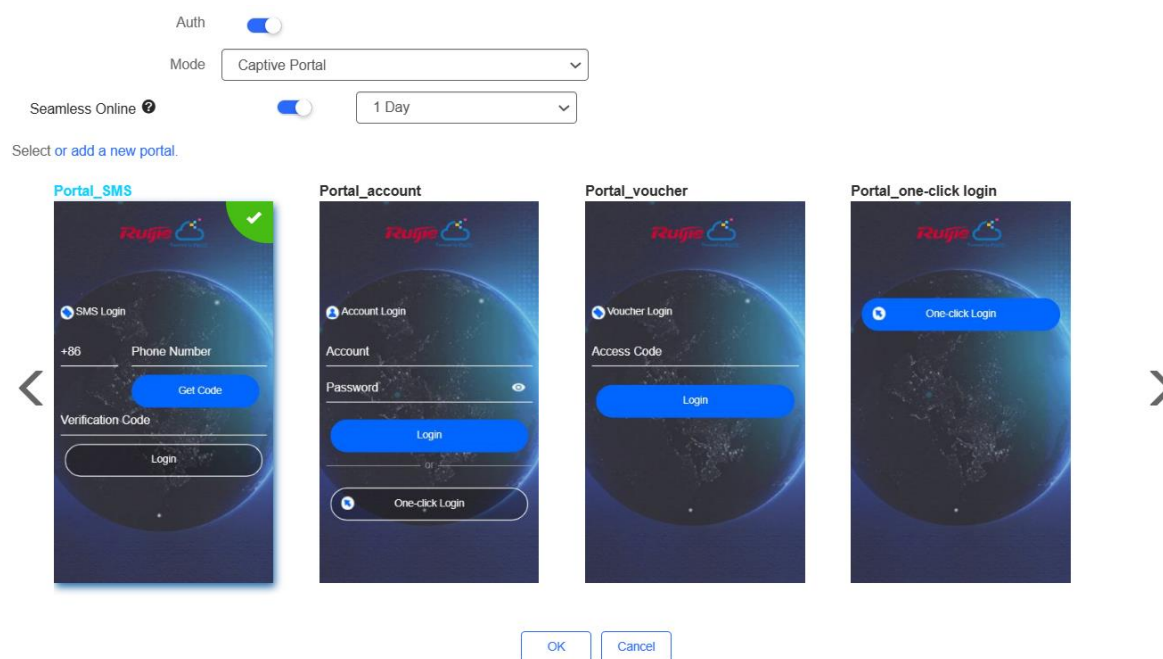
SSID 

WLAN ID	SSID	Encryption Mode	Hidden	Forward Mode	Radio	Auth Mode	Action
1	WiFi_60	Open	No	Bridge	1	Auth Disabled	 

(3) Enable **Auth** (disabled by default) and configure authentication-related parameters. After the configuration, click **OK** to save the configurations.

Note

When **Encryption Mode** is set to a value other than **WPA2-Enterprise(802.1x)**, **Auth** is available and you can select whether to perform wireless authentication.



- **Mode:** Set it to **Captive Portal**.
 - **Seamless Online:** Determine whether to enable **Seamless Online** as required, which is enabled by default. After **Seamless Online** is enabled, users do not need to be authenticated when they go online again in the specified period of time.
 - **Select or add a new portal:** Select a portal template with the authentication mode set to **SMS**. If the configured template does not meet the requirements, click **or add a new portal** to create a portal template.
- (4) Click **Save** for the configuration to take effect.

WLAN ID	SSID	Encryption Mode	Hidden	Forward Mode	Radio	Auth Mode	Action
1	LJW_22	Open	No	Bridge	1,2	Captive Portal	

4.13.6 Configuring an Authentication-Free Account on Eweb Management System

1. Configuring an Authentication-Free Account

The authentication-free user can access the Internet without authentication.

Choose **Networkwide Management > Network > Wireless Auth > Allowlist**.

- (1) Click **User Allowlist**.
- (2) Click **Add**.

- (3) Configure the IP address or IP address range for authentication-free users.

Add ×

* IP / IP Range

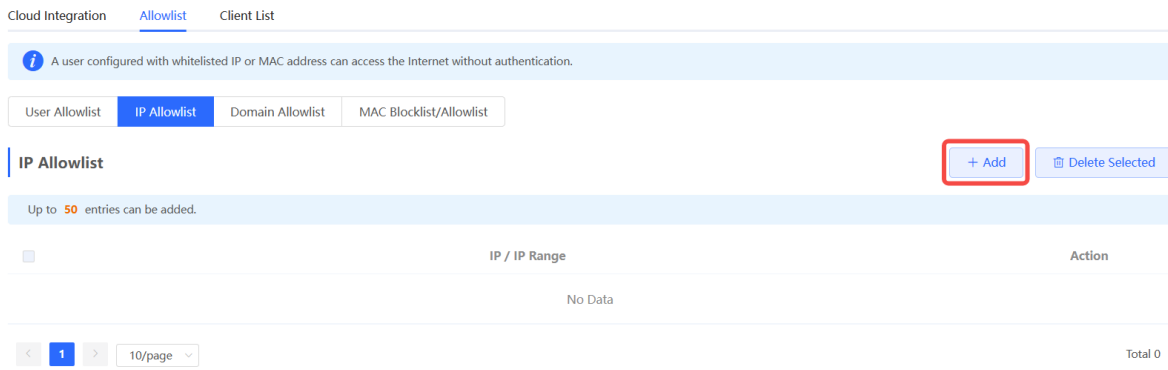
- (4) Click **OK**.

2. Configuring Authentication-Free External IP Addresses

After configuration, the user can access the authentication-free external IP address without authentication.

Choose **Networkwide Management > Network > Wireless Auth > Allowlist**.

- (1) Click **IP Allowlist**.
- (2) Click **Add**.



(3) Configure authentication-free external IP address or IP address range.

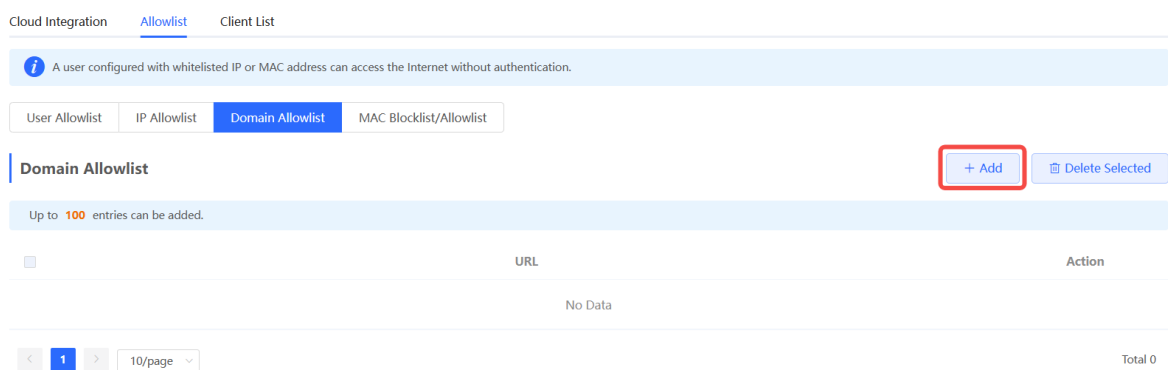


(4) Click **OK**.

3. Configuring a Domain Allowlist

The user can access the URL in the domain allowlist without authentication.

- (1) Choose **Networkwide Management > Network > Wireless Auth > Allowlist**.
- (2) Click **Domain Allowlist**.
- (3) Click **Add**.



(4) Configure authentication-free domains.

Add ×

* URL

(5) Click **OK**.

4. Configuring a MAC Address Blocklist and Allowlist

After configuration, the STA with an Allowlist MAC address can access the Internet without authentication while the STA with a blocklist MAC address is forbidden to access the Internet.

- (1) Choose **Networkwide Management > Network > Wireless Auth > Allowlist**.
- (2) Click **MAC Blocklist/Allowlist**.
- (3) Configure a MAC address allowlist.
 - a Click **Add** on the **MAC Allowlist** page.

Cloud Integration Allowlist Client List

i A user configured with whitelisted IP or MAC address can access the Internet without authentication.

User Allowlist IP Allowlist Domain Allowlist **MAC Blocklist/Allowlist**

MAC Allowlist + Add

Up to 250 entries can be added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	MAC Address	Action
No Data		

< 1 > 10/page Total 0

MAC Blocklist + Add

Up to 250 entries can be added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	MAC Address	Action
No Data		

< 1 > 10/page Total 0

- b Add the MAC address to the allowlist.

Add ×

* MAC Address

c Click **OK**.

(4) Configure a MAC address blocklist.

a Click **Add** on the **MAC Blocklist** page.

Cloud Integration [Allowlist](#) Client List

i A user configured with whitelisted IP or MAC address can access the Internet without authentication.

User Allowlist IP Allowlist Domain Allowlist **MAC Blocklist/Allowlist**

MAC Allowlist

Up to 250 entries can be added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	MAC Address	Action
No Data		

< 1 > 10/page Total 0

MAC Blocklist

Up to 250 entries can be added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	MAC Address	Action
No Data		

< 1 > 10/page Total 0

b Add the MAC address to the blocklist.

Add ×

* MAC Address

c Click **OK**.

4.13.7 Checking Authentication User List Eweb Management System

Check authentication users in the list view.

Choose **Networkwide Management>Network > Wireless Auth > Client List**.

Cloud Integration Allowlist Client List

Client List IP/MAC Batch Logout

The client going offline will not disappear immediately. Instead, the client will stay in the list for three more minutes.

Username	IP	MAC Address	Online Time	Auth Type	Connect the SSID	Access Name	Action
teng-xun-hong-mo-you-xi-shou-jibdefault	192.168.110.215	C2:84:F5:90:64:A3	2023-02-28 15:35:28	Cloud Integration	EGW3gao1	HTRU72F000814	Offline

1 10/page Total 1

Click RITA for help. 激活 Windows 转到设置以激活 Windows.

Click **Offline** in the **Action** column to disconnect users to release network resources.

5 Switch Management

5.1 Configuring RLDP

5.1.1 Overview

Rapid Link Detection Protocol (RLDP) is an Ethernet link fault detection protocol used to quickly detect link faults and downlink loop faults. RLDP can prevent network congestion and connection interruptions caused by loops. After a loop occurs, the port on the access switch involved in the loop will shut down automatically.

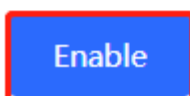
5.1.2 Configuration Steps

Choose **Networkwide Management > Network > RLDP**.

(1) Click **Enable** to access the **RLDP Config** page.

RLDP

RLDP will avoid network congestion and connection interruptions caused by loops. After a loop occurs, the port involved in the loop will be automatically shut down.



(2) In the networking topology, you can select the access switches on which you want to enable RLDP in either recommended or custom mode. If you select the recommended mode, all access switches in the network are selected automatically. If you select the custom mode, you can manually select the desired access switches. Click **Deliver Config**. RLDP is enabled on the selected switches.

← RLDP Config

Please select the target switch:

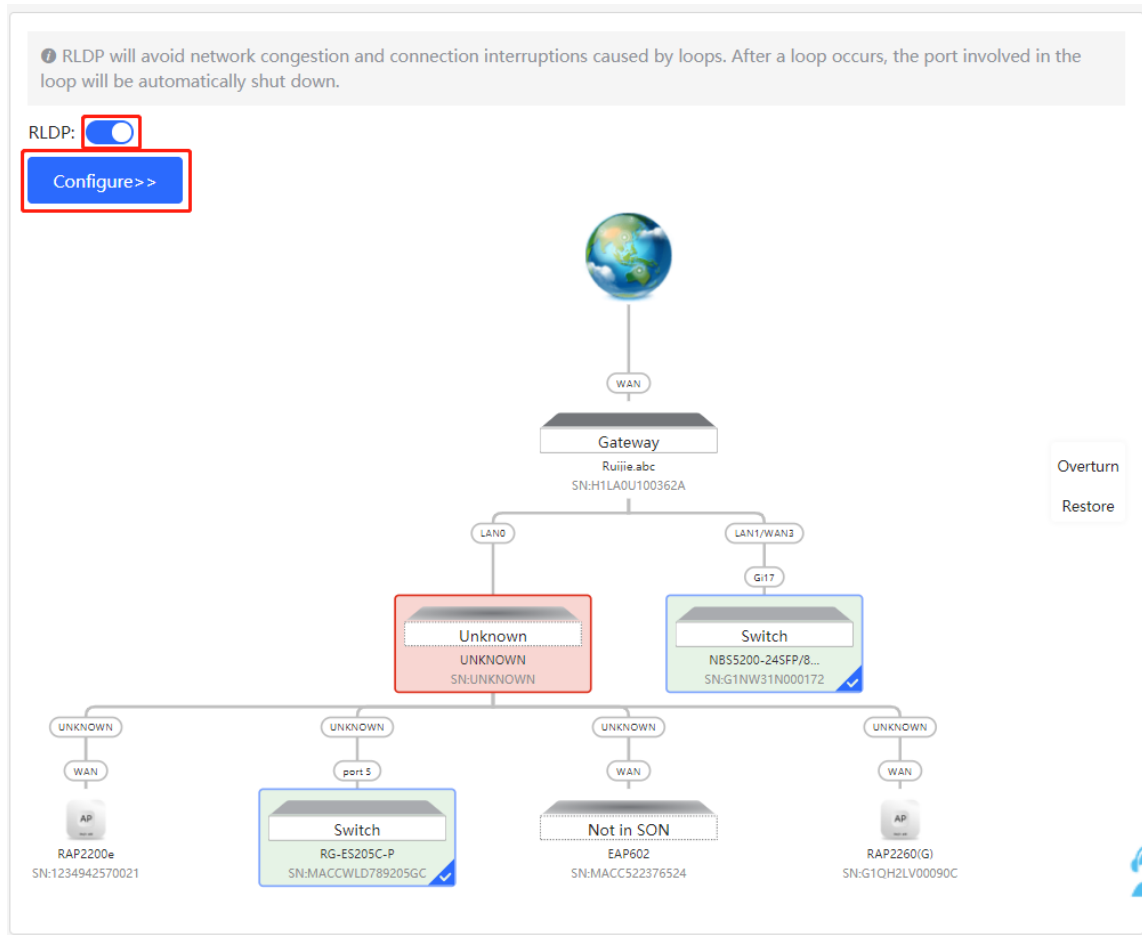
Recommended Auto-Identified Switches Custom Specified Switches

2 switches are selected.

Deliver Config Cancel Config

Overturm Restore

- (3) After the configuration is delivered, if you want to modify the effective range of the RLDP function, click **Configure** to select desired switches in the topology again. Turn off **RLDP** to disable RLDP on all the switches with one click.



5.2 Configuring DHCP Snooping

5.2.1 Overview

DHCP Snooping implements recording and monitoring the usage of client IP addresses through exchange of DHCP packets between the server and client. In addition, this function can filter invalid DHCP packets to ensure that clients can obtain network configuration parameters only from the DHCP server in the controlled range. DHCP Snooping will prevent rogue DHCP servers offering IP addresses to DHCP clients to ensure the stability of the network.

Caution

After DHCP Snooping is enabled on the switch, the switch does not forward invalid DHCP packets. However, if a client directly connects to a rogue DHCP server, it cannot access the Internet as the obtained IP address is incorrect. In this case, you need to find the rogue router and disable DHCP on it, or use the WAN port for uplink connection.

5.2.2 Configuration Steps

Choose **Networkwide Management > Network > DHCP Snooping**.

(1) Click **Enable** to access the **DHCP Snooping Config** page.

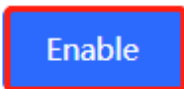
DHCP Snooping

DHCP snooping will prevent rogue

DHCP servers offering IP addresses

to DHCP clients to ensure the

stability of the network.



- (2) In the networking topology, you can select the access switches on which you want to enable DHCP Snooping in either recommended or custom mode. If you select the recommended mode, all switches in the network are selected automatically. If you select the custom mode, you can manually select the desired switches. Click **Deliver Config**. DHCP Snooping is enabled on the selected switches.

← DHCP Snooping Config

Please select the target switch:

Recommended
All Switches

Custom
Specified Switches

Overturn
Restore

1 switches are selected.

Deliver Config

Cancel Config

- (3) After the configuration is delivered, if you want to modify the effective range of the DHCP Snooping function, click **Configure** to select desired switches in the topology again. Turn off **DHCP Snooping** to disable DHCP Snooping on all switches with one click.

ⓘ DHCP snooping will prevent rogue DHCP servers offering IP addresses to DHCP clients to ensure the stability of the network.

DHCP Snooping:

[Configure>>](#)

The diagram illustrates a network topology. At the top is a Gateway (Huawei Ruijie) connected to the WAN. It has two LAN interfaces: LAN0 and LAN1/WAN3. LAN0 is connected to an 'Unknown' device. LAN1/WAN3 is connected to a 'Switch' (Huawei NB55200-245FP) via a GI17 interface. The 'Unknown' device has four ports: WAN (connected to AP RAP2200e), port 5 (connected to Switch RG-ES205C-P), WAN (connected to Not in SON device EAP602), and WAN (connected to AP RAP2260(G)).

Overturn
Restore

5.3 Batch Configuring Switches

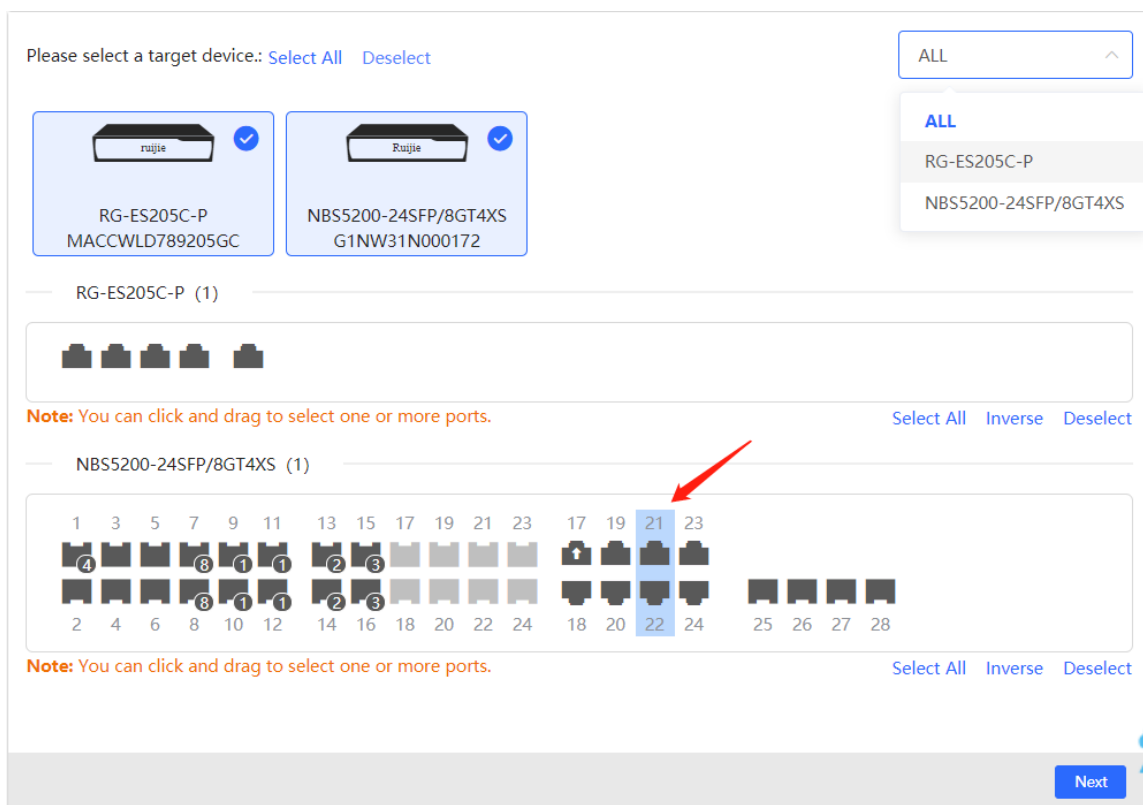
5.3.1 Overview

You can batch create VLANs, configure port attributes, and divide port VLANs for switches in the network.

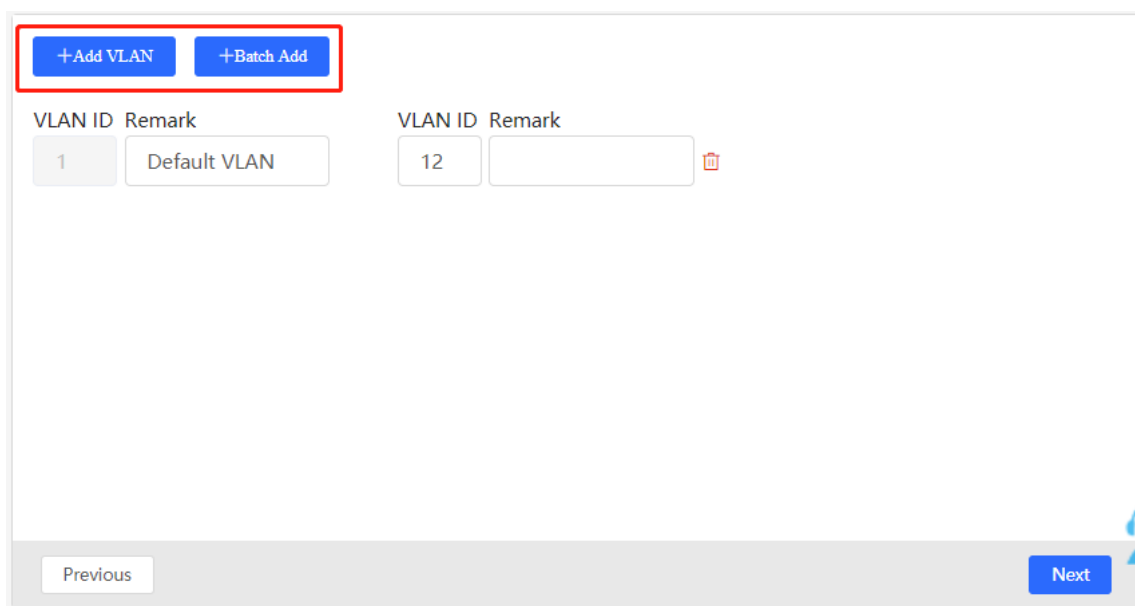
5.3.2 Configuration Steps

Choose **Networkwide Management > Network > Batch Config**.

- (1) The page displays all switches in the current network. Select the switches to configure, and then select the desired ports in the device port view that appears below. If there are a large number of devices in the current network, select a product model from the drop-down list box to filter the devices. After the desired devices and ports are selected, click **Next**.



- (2) Click **Add VLAN** to create a VLAN for the selected devices in a batch. If you want to create multiple VLANs, click **Batch Add** and enter the VLAN ID range, such as 3-5,100. After setting the VLANs, click **Next**.



- (3) Configure port attributes for the ports selected in Step 1 in a batch. Select a port type. If you set **Type** to **Access Port**, you need to configure **VLAN ID**. If you set **Type** to **Trunk Port**, you need to configure **Native VLAN** and **Permitted VLAN**. After setting the port attributes, click **Override** to deliver the batch configurations to the target devices.

Port

Selected Port RG-ES205C-P; ; NBS5200-24SFP/8GT4XS: [Gi21-Gi22](#);

Type

* Native VLAN

Permitted VLAN

5.3.3 Verifying Configuration

View the VLAN and port information of switches to check whether the batch configurations are successfully delivered.

MSW

Hostname: [Ruijie](#) Software Ver:ReyeeOS 1.86.1619
Model:NBS5200-24SFP/8GT4XS MGMT IP:10.44.78.1
SN:G1NW31N000172 MAC: 00:d3:f8:15:08:5b

Port Status

VLAN Info

Port

Route Info

RLDP

More

VLAN [Edit](#)

VLAN1

Interface	IP	IP Range	Remark
<input type="text" value="Gi17,Gi21-22,Te27"/>			

Port [Edit](#)

6 Firewall Management

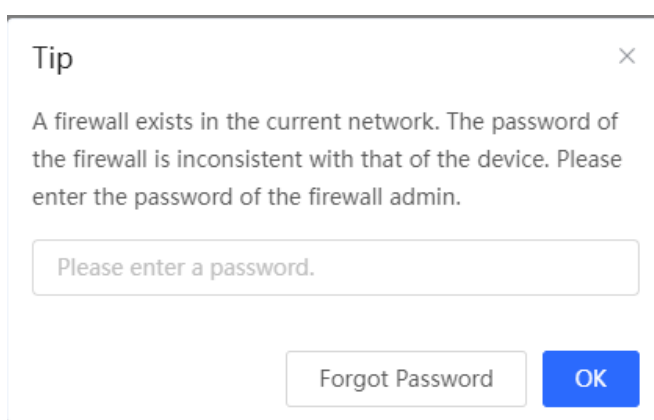
After a firewall is added to the network, you can manage and configure the firewall on the Web management system.

6.1 Viewing Firewall Information

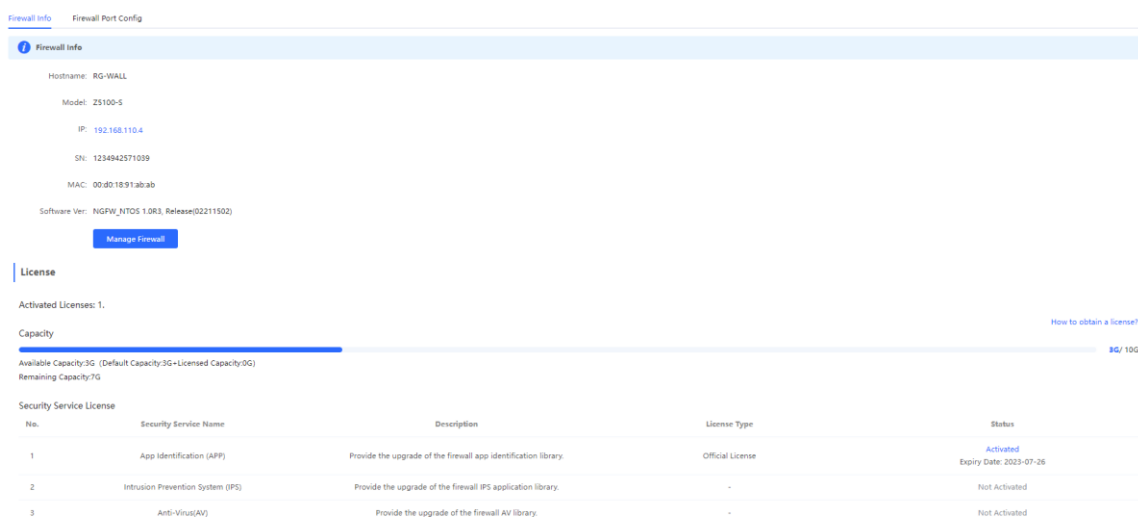
You can view the basic information and license of the firewall on the Web management system.

Choose **Network > Firewall**.

- (1) If the password of the firewall is inconsistent with that of the gateway, please enter the management password of the firewall and click **OK**.



- (2) The basic information, capacity, and security service license of the firewall are displayed on the Web management system.



Click **Manage Firewall** to go to the Web management interface of the firewall. Configure the security policy and license activation for the firewall. For details, see the Web-based configuration guide of the firewall.

6.2 Configuring Firewall Port

If the firewall is set to transparent mode, the **Firewall Port Config** page appears. You can select the WAN port connected to the gateway or the LAN port connected to the switch and enable **Security Guard**.



7 Online Behavior Management

7.1 Overview

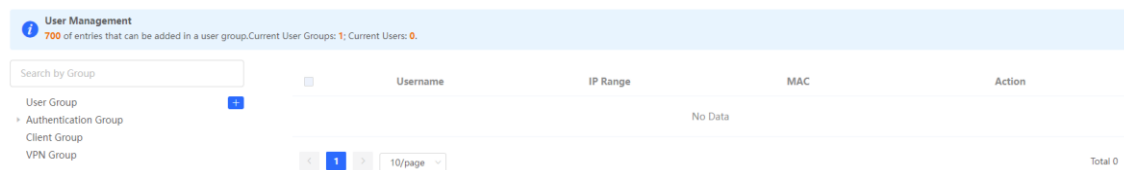
Online behavior management aims to block or prohibit specific Internet access behaviors of LAN users. Online behavior management functions are classified into five categories: app control, website filtering, QQ management, flow control, and access control. The effective range of each behavior management policy is flexibly controlled by the specified client IP address and effective time.

7.2 User Management

7.2.1 Overview

The management policy of online behavior needs to flexibly match with specific user groups. Please manage and classify users before the behavior management policy is configured, ensuring efficient configuration and management. User management is used to maintain user information based on IP addresses. When managing online behaviors, you can limit the effective scope of application blocking, traffic auditing, flow control and other services by specifying created or authenticated users.

User groups contain two default root user groups: User Group, Authentication Group and VPN Group. You can create and configure users and user groups under the root user group.



i Note

The system creates a VPN user group by default. The VPN accounts added in the system are automatically added to a VPN user group. You can select a VPN user group to control VPN accounts when you create a policy of application control, network management or flow control.

7.2.2 User Group


Choose **Local Device > Behavior > User Management**.

You can add new user groups or users below the first-level user group. Up to three levels of grouping is supported. If a user is a leaf node, no users or user groups can be created below this leaf node. A created user group can be used as a configuration item in a behavior management policy and is directly referenced by the user group name.

All Addresses group exists in the user group list by default. The IP range is from 1.1.1.1 to 255.255.255.255. This group cannot be edited or deleted.



1. Creating a User Group

Click  near **User Group** or click **Add** at the upper right of the page. Select the type of **User Group** and enter the group name, and click **OK**. You can create a sub-user group below this user group.

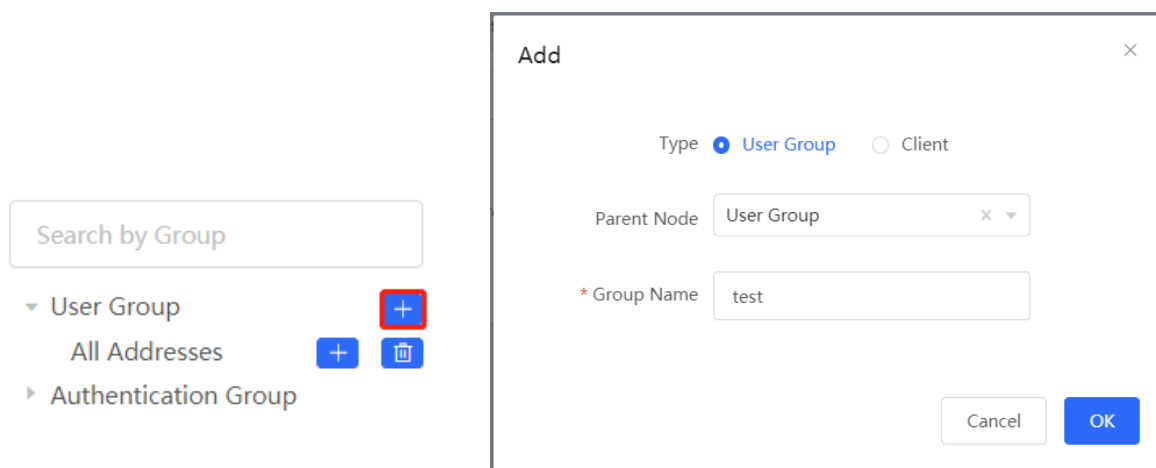



Table 7-1 Parameter Descriptions of User Group

Parameter	Description
Parent Node	Configure the parent group to which the created user group belongs. Up to three levels of groups are allowed below a user group currently (such as Root Node/R&D Center/R&D Section 1). No user groups are allowed below the third-level group.
Group Name	Configure the name of the user group.

2. Creating a User

Click **User Group** to display the users in the current group. Click  or click **Add** at the upper right of the page. Select the type of **Client** and enter the user name and IP range, and click **OK**. You can create a user under the user group.

User Management
 400 of entries that can be added in a user group. Current User Groups: 3; Current Users: 1.

Search by Group

<input type="checkbox"/>	Username	IP Range	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	test	No Data	

User Group
 All Addresses
 test
 Authentication Group

Add

✕

Type User Group Client

Parent Node ✕ ▼

* Username


Type IP MAC

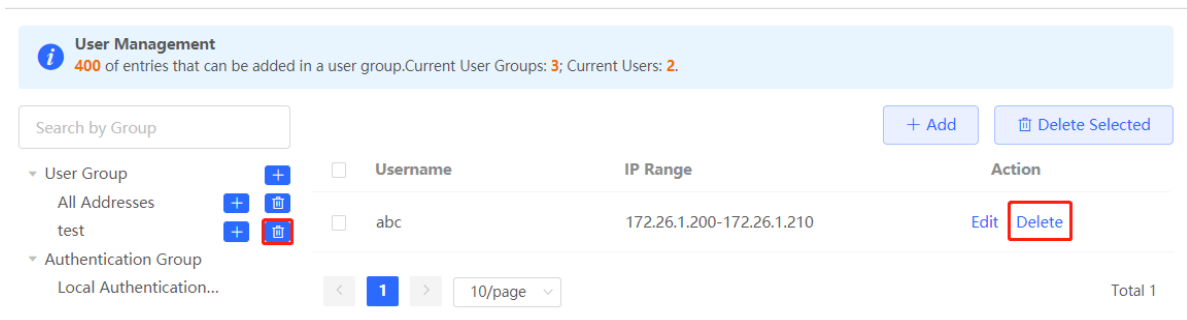
* IP / IP Range

Table 7-2 Parameter Descriptions of User

Parameter	Description
Parent Node	Configure the group to which the created user belongs, Click the drop-down list box to display all the currently created user groups and click to select one group.
Username	Configure the name of the user.
IP /IP Range	Configure the IP address of the user. You can enter an IP address or IP range. If a rule is valid to this user, the rule takes effect in this IP range.

3. Deleting a User Group or a User

Click  near **User Group** to delete the user group and its members. Click **Delete** in the **Action** bar in the user list to delete the specified user.



User Management
400 of entries that can be added in a user group. Current User Groups: 3; Current Users: 2.

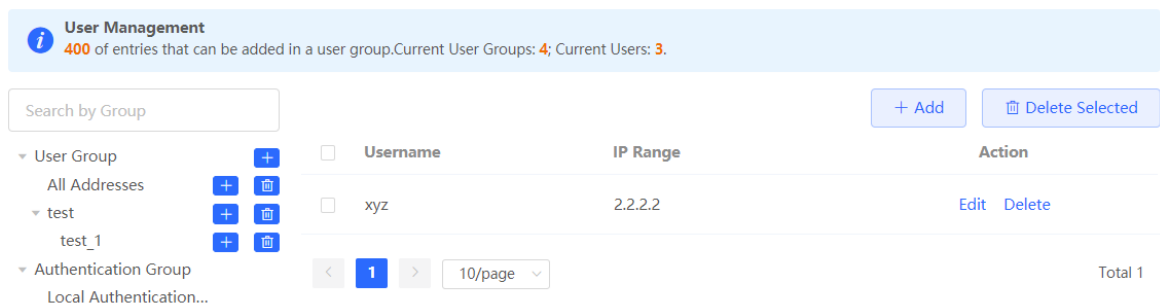
Search by Group + Add Delete Selected

User Group	Username	IP Range	Action
User Group All Addresses test	abc	172.26.1.200-172.26.1.210	Edit Delete

Authentication Group: Local Authentication... Total 1

4. Verifying Configuration

- (1) You can view the created user groups on the left part of the page after user groups and users are configured. Click **User Group** to view user details in this group.



User Management
400 of entries that can be added in a user group. Current User Groups: 4; Current Users: 3.

Search by Group + Add Delete Selected

User Group	Username	IP Range	Action
User Group All Addresses test test_1	xyz	2.2.2.2	Edit Delete

Authentication Group: Local Authentication... Total 1

- (2) When configuring the behavior management policy (such as adding an application control rule), you can view and select the created user groups and the members.

Add



Type User Group Custom

* User Group

Time User Group

Application All Addresses

- 1.1.1.1-255.255.255.255
- test
- test_1

* Application List Authentication Group

Client Group

VPN Group

Remarks

Status

7.2.3 Authentication Group

Choose **Local Device > Behavior > User Management**.

The users in the **Authentication Group** are synchronized from the authentication server to the **Authentication Group**. The local authentication account set by the device (See Section [4.10.6 Local Account Authentication](#) for details.) is automatically synchronized to the **Local Authentication Group**.

Local Account Auth

Accounts 1

* Network Type

* Auth IP / IP Range

Account Settings

Up to 200 accounts can be added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Username	Password	Concurrent Users	MAC	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	test	test	5		Edit Delete

- ▼ User Group
 - All Addresses
 - ▼ test
 - test_1
- ▼ Authentication Group
 - ▼ Local Authentication Group
 - test

When configuring the behavior management policy (such as adding an application control rule), you can configure a policy to take effect in the specified authentication group. After an authenticated user goes online, the user automatically matches with the authentication group and then associates with the behavior management policy, enabling online behavior control over the authenticated user.

Add App×

Type User Group Custom

* User Group Authentication Group x ?

Time ▾ Authentication Group
▾ Local Authentication Gro...

* Blocked App test

Remark

Status

CancelOK


7.3 Time Management

Choose **Local Device > Behavior > Time Management**.

You can create time entries to classify time information. A created time entry can be used as a configuration item in a behavior management policy and is directly referenced by the time entry name.

Click **Add**. In the dialog box that appears, enter the time entry name and select the specific time to create a time entry.

All the created time entries are displayed in the time entry list. In the list, find the target time entry and click **Edit** to modify the time span. Find the target time entry and click **Delete** to delete it. By default, the time entries named **All Time**, **Weekdays**, and **Weekends** are available and they cannot be modified or deleted.

 Caution

If a time entry is referenced in any policy, it cannot be deleted on the **Time Management** page. To delete the time entry, remove the reference relationship first.

Time List ?

Time List + Add Delete Selected

Up to 20 entries can be added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Time Name	Time Span	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	All Time		Edit Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	Weekdays		Edit Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	Weekends		Edit Delete

Add Time



* Time Name

* Time Please Select Time

Cancel

OK

×

	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat	Sun
00:00							
01:00							
02:00							
03:00							
04:00							
05:00							
06:00							
07:00							
08:00							
09:00	█	█	█	█	█		
10:00	█	█	█	█	█		
11:00	█	█	█	█	█		
12:00	█	█	█	█	█		
13:00	█	█	█	█	█		
14:00	█	█	█	█	█		
15:00	█	█	█	█	█		
16:00	█	█	█	█	█		
17:00	█	█	█	█	█		
18:00	█	█	█	█	█		
19:00							
20:00							
21:00							
22:00							
23:00							
23:59							

7.4 App Control

7.4.1 Overview

App control aims at controlling the range of specific apps that can be accessed by users. By default, users can access any app. After an app control policy is configured, users in the current network cannot access prohibited apps. App access can be prohibited based on the specified user group and time range. For example, employees in the office network are prohibited from accessing entertainment and game software during work periods to improve network security.

7.4.2 Configuring App Control

Choose **Local Device > Behavior > App Control**.

1. (Optional) Switching the Application Library

 Note



This feature is only supported on RG-EG105G-V2 and RG-EG210G.

The application lists vary in different regions. The Chinese and International versions of the application library are provided. Please select the version based on the regions.

Click to select **Application Library Version** and click **OK**. The version is switched after a few minutes.

 **Caution**

- It takes about one minute to switch the application library version. Please wait.
- If you switch the application library, the old application control policy may be inactive. Please proceed with caution.

 App Control




App Control
+ Add
Delete Selected

Up to **50** entries can be added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	IP Address Group	Time	Blocked App	Status	Remark	Action
No Data						





2. Configuring App Control

Click **Add** to create an App control policy.

 App Control


App Control
⌚ Application Library Version: International
+ Add
Delete Selected

Up to **50** entries can be added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	User Group	Time	Blocked App	Status	Remark	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	1.1.1.1-1.1.1.254	All Time 	Play	Enable 		Edit Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	User Group/test/abc	Weekdays 	Video	Enable 		Edit Delete

Add App
×

IP Address Group

Time

* Blocked App
Please select at least one

Remark

Status

Table 7-3 App control policy configuration

Parameter	Description
Type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● User Group: The policy is applicable to users in the specified user group. Please select the target user group. ● Custom: The policy is applicable to users in the specified IP range. Please manually enter the managed IP range.
User Group	<p>Select the users managed by the policy from the list of user groups. For the configuration of the user group list, see Section 6.2 User Management.</p> <p>If all members in the user group are selected, the policy takes effect for the user group and is also valid for new members added to this group.</p>
IP Address Group	If the IP range is restricted by the APP control policy and the type of the policy is set to Custom , please enter the IP range manually.
Time	Specify the time range under app control. In the specified time range, managed clients cannot access the selected apps in the list of prohibited apps. You can select a time range defined in Section 7.3 Time Management from the drop-down list box, or select Custom and manually enter the specific time range.
Blocked App	Specify the apps or app groups to block.
Remark	Enter the policy description.
Status	Specify whether to enable the app control policy.

7.4.3 Custom App

1. Overview

Based on traffic packets of certain websites or apps that are captured by the device, users can analyze and extract 5-tuple information characteristics (protocol, source IP address, source port, destination IP address, and destination port) of the packets. You can define apps that are not in the default application list.

After custom apps are configured successfully, you can configure control policies for custom apps on the app control page to block users from accessing the custom apps on the current network.

2. Procedure

Choose **Local Device** > **Behavior** > **App Control** > **Custom**.

(1) (Optional) Switching the application library.

Note

This feature is only supported on RG-EG105G-V2 and RG-EG210G.

The supported app list varies with regions. There are the application library of the Chinese version and the application library of the international version. Select an application library version based on the actual region.

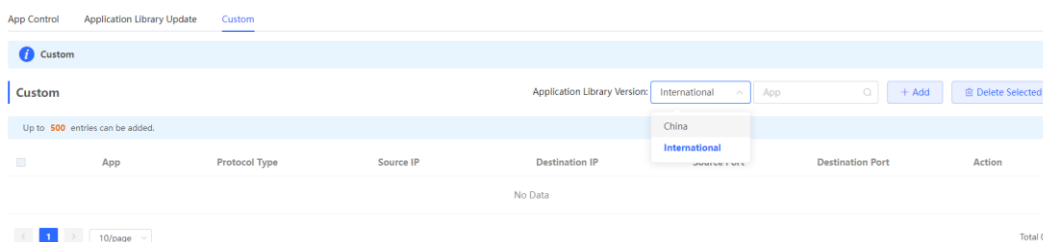
Click **Application Library Version** and select a version. In the displayed dialog box, click **OK**. Wait a period of time for the system to complete switching.

Caution

Switching the application library version takes about 1 minute to take effect.

After the application library version is switched, the original app control policy may become invalid.

Therefore, exercise caution when performing this operation.



(1) Click **Add**. Enter information about a custom app.

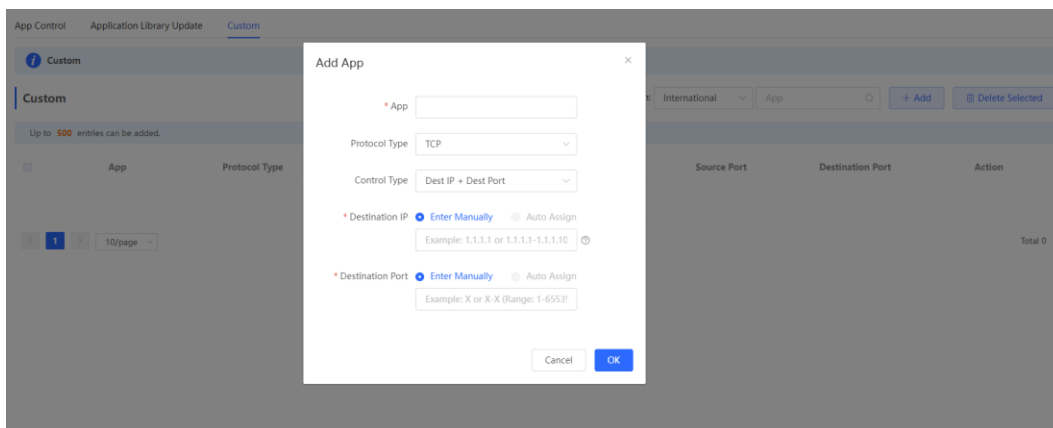


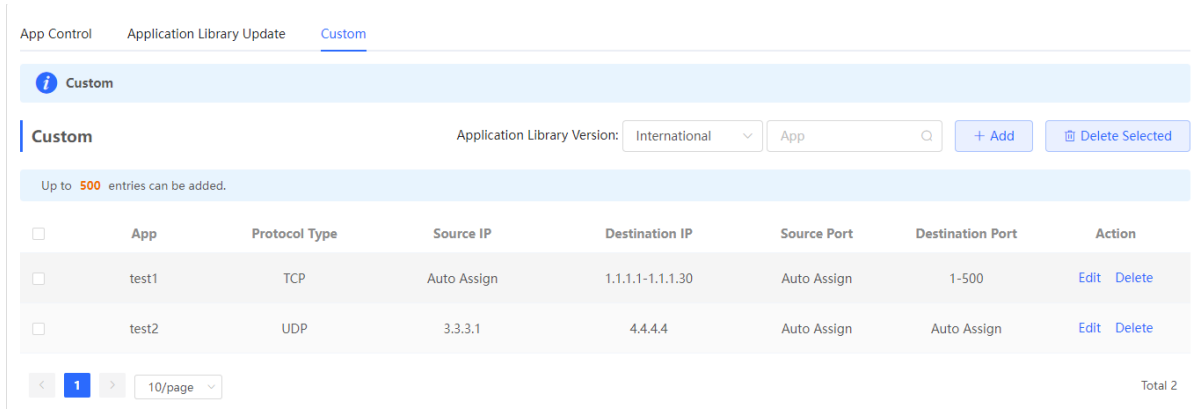
Table 7-4 Description of Custom App Configuration

Parameter	Description
App	Configure the app name (the name cannot be duplicated with a name in the app list).
Protocol Type	Select a protocol type based on the protocol used by captured packets. It can be set to TCP , UDP , or IP .
Control Type	Select a rule type based on 5-tuple information characteristics of extracted packets. It can be set to the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Src IP + Src Port ● Dest IP + Dest Port ● Src IP+ Dest IP
Source/Destination IP	Enter a characteristic IP address.
Source/Destination Port	Enter a characteristic port number.

i Note

- If **Control Type** is set to **Src IP + Src Port**, you need to set the source IP address and source port.
- If **Control Type** is set to **Dest IP + Dest Port**, you need to set the destination IP address and destination port.
- If **Control Type** is set to **Src IP + Dest IP**, you need to set the source and destination IP addresses. The source IP address can be also to **Auto Assign**.

(2) Click **OK**.



7.4.4 Custom Application Group

1. Overview

You can add multiple applications with the same features into a customer application group, which is a logical group. The custom application group can be used for policy.

The system has a default blocking group to block applications. (The blocking group is associated with relevant applications by default.) The applications added to the blocking group are directly blocked.

2. Procedure

Choose **Local Device > Behavior > App Control > Custom Application Group**.



(1) (Optional) Switch the application library version.

Note

This feature is only supported on RG-EG105G-V2 and RG-EG210G.

The supported application list varies with regions. The application library version falls into the Chinese version and the international version. Select an application library version based on the actual region.

Click **Application Library Version** and select a version. In the displayed dialog box, click **OK**. Wait a moment for the system to complete switching.

Caution

Switching the application library version takes about one minute. Please wait for the configuration to take effect.

The existing custom application group is invalid after the application library version is switched. Therefore, exercise caution when performing this operation.



(1) Click **Add** to configure the parameters for an application group.

Add ×

*** Group Name**

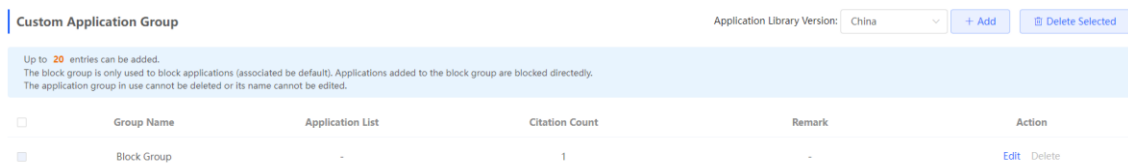
Application List

Remark

Table 7-5 Custom Application Group

Parameter	Description
Group Name	The application group name customized by a user. (The group name must differ from the application names in the group list.)
Application List	Multiple applications involved in an application group.
Remark	Description of an application group.

(2) Click **OK**.



7.5 Website Management

7.5.1 Overview

Website management consists of website grouping and website filtering. Website grouping refers to the classification of website URLs. You can modify existing website groups or create new website groups. Website filtering refers to access control to existing website groups to prohibit user access to websites in specific groups. Website filtering can be applied based on the specified user group and time range. For example, employees in the office network are prohibited from accessing game websites during work periods to improve network security.

7.5.2 Configuration Steps

Choose **Local Device** > **Behavior** > **Website Management**.

1. Configuring Website Groups

Choose **Local Device** > **Behavior** > **Website Management** > **Website Group**.

Click the **Website Group** tab. On the page that appears, all the created website groups are displayed in the list. Find the target group and click **More** in the **Member** column to view all the website URLs in the group. Find the target group and click **Edit** in the **Action** column to modify the member website URLs in the group. Find the target group and click **Delete** in the **Action** column to delete the group.

Click **Add** to create a new website group.

Caution

If a website filtering rule in a website group is being referenced, the group cannot be deleted from the website group list. To delete this group, modify the website filtering configuration to remove the reference relationship first.

Website Filtering [Website Group](#)

Website Group
+ Add
Delete Selected

Up to **20** entries can be added.

	Group Name	Member	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	Games	duowan.com... More	Edit Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	Finance	*.10jqka.com.cn... More	Edit Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	Social	*.baihe.com... More	Edit Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	Shopping	*.taobao.com... More	Edit Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	Life	*.55bbs.com... More	Edit Delete

Add Group
×

* Group Name

* Member

*.56.com
 www.google.com

Cancel
OK

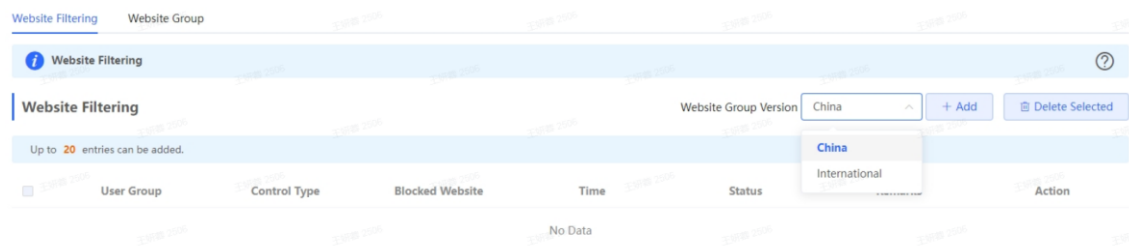
Table 7-6 Website group configuration

Parameter	Description
Group Name	Configure a unique name for the website group. The name can be a string of 1 to 64 characters.
Member	Specify members in the website group. You can enter multiple websites in a batch. The group member can be complete URL (such as www.baidu.com) or keywords in the URL (domain name with a wildcard in front, such as *.baidu.com). The wildcard can only appear at the beginning of a URL, and it cannot be in the middle or end of the domain name.

2. Configuring Website Filtering

Choose **Local Device > Behavior > Website Management > Website Filtering**.

- (1) Click the **Website Filtering** tab. On the page that appears, all the created website filtering rules are displayed in the list.
- (2) (Optional) Select the website group version.



- (3) Click **Add** to create a website filtering rule.

Add Website Filtering



Type User Group Custom

* User Group

Time

* Blocked Website

Remarks

Status

Table 7-7 Website filtering rule configuration

Parameter	Description
Type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● User Group: The policy is applicable to users in the specified user group. Please select the target user group. ● Custom: The policy is applicable to users in the specified IP range. Please manually enter the managed IP range.
User Group	<p>Select the users managed by the policy from the list of user groups. For the configuration of the user group list, see Section 6.2 User Management.</p> <p>If all members in the user group are selected, the policy takes effect for the user group and is also valid for new members added to this group.</p>

Parameter	Description
IP Address Group	If the IP range is restricted by the APP control policy and the type of the policy is set to Custom , please enter the IP range manually.
Time	Specify the time range under website filtering control. In the specified time range, managed clients cannot access the prohibited websites. You can select a time range defined in Section 7.3 Time Management from the drop-down list box, or select Custom and manually enter the specific time range.
Blocked Website	Configure the type of websites to block. You can select an existing website group. After a website group is selected, users are prohibited from accessing all websites in this group. For details on how to create or modify a website group, see Configuring Website Groups .
Remark	Enter the rule description.
Status	Specify whether to enable the website filtering rule.

After the website filtering rules are configured, click **Edit** to modify the rule information. Click **Delete** to delete the specific filtering rule.

7.6 Flow Control

7.6.1 Overview

Flow control is a mechanism that classifies flows based on certain rules and processes flows using different policies based on their categories. You can configure flow control to guarantee key flows and suppress malicious flows. You can enable flow control when the bandwidth is insufficient or flows need to be distributed properly.

7.6.2 Smart Flow Control

1. Overview

When you need to limit the uplink traffic and downlink traffic bandwidth of the device ports (such as WAN and WAN 1), you can enable the smart flow control function. After the line bandwidth is configured for a port, the uplink and downlink traffic of the port will be limited within the specified range. In addition, the per user bandwidth should be intelligently adjusted according to the number of users to ensure that users fairly share the bandwidth.

2. Configuration Steps

Choose **Local Device > Behavior > Flow Control > Smart Flow Control**.

Smart Flow Control Custom Policy Application Priority

Smart Flow Control
Intelligently adjust the network speed to ensure that each user shares the network fairly.


Enable **If you want to test the WAN rate, please disable smart flow control first.**

WAN0 Bandwidth * Uplink Mbps * Downlink Mbps

WAN1 Bandwidth * Uplink Mbps * Downlink Mbps

Turn on **Enable** on the **Smart Flow Control** tab and set the line bandwidth based on the bandwidth actually allocated by the ISP. If the device has multiple lines, you can set the bandwidth for these WAN ports separately. For details on the multi-line configuration, see [3.2 Port Settings](#).

Click **Save** to make the configuration take effect.

 **Caution**

Enabling flow control will affect network speed testing. If you want to test the network speed, disable flow control first.

Smart Flow Control Custom Policy Application Priority

Smart Flow Control
Adjust the bandwidth allocated to each user according to the user count.

Enable **If you want to test the WAN rate, please disable smart flow control first.**

WAN Bandwidth * Up Mbps * Down Mbps

WAN1 Bandwidth * Up Mbps * Down Mbps

WAN2 Bandwidth * Up Mbps * Down Mbps

Table 7-8 Smart flow control configuration

Parameter	Description
Enable	Specify whether to enable the smart flow control function. By default, smart flow control is disabled.

WAN Bandwidth	Set the uplink and downlink bandwidth limits for the WAN ports, in Mbit/s.
---------------	--

Note

Smart flow control can be used to control the line traffic in different networking modes, including bandwidth-based, static IP address, and dynamic IP address.

7.6.3 Custom Policies

1. Overview

Custom policies are used to restrict the traffic with specific IP addresses based on the smart flow control function, thereby meeting the bandwidth requirements of specific users or servers. When you create a custom flow control policy, you can flexibly configure the limited user range, the bandwidth limit, the limited application traffic, and the rate limit mode. When a custom policy is enabled, it takes precedence over the smart flow control configuration.

Custom policies fall into common policies and VPN policies.

Common policies include the custom policies configured on the Eweb or Ruijie Cloud and the flow control policies configured on Ruijie Cloud for authentication accounts. Common policies manage common traffic.

Common policies and VPN policies are used to manage common traffic and VPN traffic, respectively.

2. Getting Started

Before you configure a custom policy, enable smart flow control first. For details, see Section [7.6.2 Smart Flow Control](#).

3. Configuration Steps

Choose **Local Device > Behavior > Flow Control > Custom Policy**.

(1) Set Policy Type.



Note

The flow control policies configured on Ruijie Cloud and Eweb are displayed in the **Normal Policy** list. The flow control policies for authentication accounts configured on Ruijie Cloud cannot be edited or deleted on Eweb. You can only enable or disable these policies and change the priority of them.

(2) (Optional) Switch the application library

Note

This feature is only supported on RG-EG105G-V2 and RG-EG210G.

The application lists vary in different regions. The Chinese and International versions of the application library are provided. Please select the version based on the regions.

Click to select **Application Library Version** and click **OK**. The version is switched after a few minutes.

 **Caution**

- It takes about one minute to switch the application library version. Please wait.
- If you switch the application library, the template of the application priority will be reset (See Section [6.6.4 Application Priority](#) for details.), and the old application control policy may be inactive (See Section [6.4 App Control](#) for details.). Please proceed with caution.

Smart Flow Control [Custom Policy](#) Application Priority

Custom Policy
 Allocate bandwidth to the specified IP address or range. The priority is sorted as follows: Custom Policy > Smart Flow Control.
 When custom policy and template are applied to an application, the custom policy prevails.

Policy List [+ Add](#) [Delete Selected](#)

Up to **30** entries can be added. **1** entries are already added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Policy Name	IP / IP Range	Bandwidth Type	Channel	Application List	Uplink Rate	Downlink Rate	Interface	Status	Effective State	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	test	1.1.1.1-1.1.1.1	Shared	4	All Applications	No Limit	No Limit	WAN	Enable	Active	Edit Delete

(3) Set a custom policy.

- Set a custom policy.
 - a Set **Policy Type** to **Normal Policy** and click **Add** to create a custom flow control policy.
 You can set up to 30 custom common policies, including the custom policies configured on Eweb and Ruijie Cloud.

 You can set up to 20 flow control policies for authentication accounts on Ruijie Cloud. The Eweb only displays these policies.

Add
×

* Policy Name

Type User Group Custom

* User Group ?

Bandwidth Type Shared Independent

Application All Applications Application Group Custom

Channel Priority ?

Bandwidth Limit Limit Kbps No Limit

Uplink Bandwidth * Limit-at * Max-Limit ?

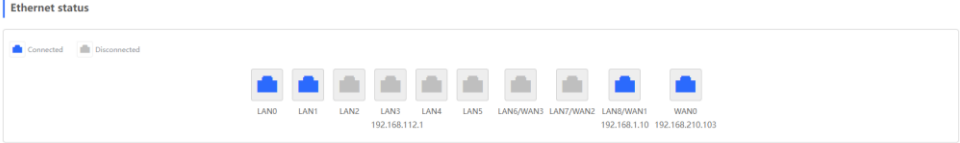
Downlink Rate * Limit-at * Max-Limit ?

* Interface


Enabled

b Configure items related to a common policy.

Parameter	Description
Policy Name	A policy name uniquely identifies a custom flow control policy. It cannot be modified.
Type	<p>The type of a flow control policy can be set to the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● User Group: Indicates that the policy is applied to users in a specified user group. You need to select a user group to be managed. ● Custom: Indicates that the policy is applied to users in a specified IP address segment. You need to manually enter the IP address range to be managed.
User Group	<p>Select a user to be managed by the policy from the user group list. For details about how to set the user group list, see 7.2 User Management.</p> <p>If you select all members of a user group, the policy takes effect on the entire user group (it also takes effect on members added to the user group later).</p> <p>This parameter is required when Type is set to User Group.</p>

Parameter	Description
IP/IP Range	<p>Specify the IP address range for the flow control policy to take effect. When Type is set to Custom, enter the IP address manually. You can enter a single IP address or an IP address segment.</p> <p>This parameter is required when Type is set to Client.</p> <p>The IP address range must be within a LAN segment. You can choose Overview > Ethernet status to check the network segment of the current LAN port. For example, the network segment of the LAN port shown in the figure below is 192.168.110.0/24.</p> 
Bandwidth Type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Shared: Indicates that all users in a user group (all IP addresses in an address range) share the configured uplink and downlink bandwidths, and the bandwidth of a single user is not limited. ● Independent: Indicates that all users in a user group (all IP addresses in an address range) share the configured uplink and downlink bandwidths, and the maximum bandwidth of a single user can be limited.
Application	<p>When Bandwidth Type is set to Shared, the flow control policy can be configured to take effect only on specified applications.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● All Applications: Indicates that the flow control policy takes effect on all applications in the current application library. ● Custom: Indicates that the flow control policy takes effect only on specified applications in the application list. ● Application Group: Indicates that the flow control policy takes effect only on specified applications in the application list. <p>When Bandwidth Type is set to Independent, some models do not support application selection and the flow control policy takes effect on all applications in the current application library by default.</p> <p>For the models, contact technical support engineers.</p>
Application List	<p>When Application is set to Custom, it specifies the applications, on which the policy takes effect. The traffic of the selected applications is subject to the policy.</p>
Application Group	<p>When Application is set to Application Group, it specifies the application groups, on which the policy takes effect. The traffic of the selected application group is subject to the policy.</p>
Channel Priority	<p>Specify the traffic guarantee level. The value range is from 0 to 7. A smaller value indicates a higher priority and the value 0 indicates the highest priority.</p> <p>Different traffic priority values correspond to different application groups in an application template. 2 indicates the key group, 4 indicates the normal group, and 6 indicates the suppression group. For the description of application groups in a priority template, see 7.6.4.</p>

Parameter	Description
Bandwidth Limit	<p>Configure whether to limit the bandwidth.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Limit Kbps: You can set the uplink and downlink bandwidth limits as needed. ● No Limit: When the bandwidth is sufficient, the maximum bandwidth is not limited. When the bandwidth is insufficient, the minimum bandwidth cannot be guaranteed.
Uplink Bandwidth	<p>Configure the data transmission rate in uploading, in Kbps. It includes Limit-at, Max-Limit, and Max-Limit per User.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Limit-at: Specifies the minimum bandwidth that can be shared by all users when the bandwidth is insufficient. ● Max-Limit: Specifies the total maximum bandwidth that can be occupied by all users when the bandwidth is sufficient. ● Max-Limit per User: Specifies the maximum bandwidth that can be occupied by each user when multiple users share the bandwidth. It is optional and can be configured only when Bandwidth Type is set to Independent. The rate is not limited by default.
Downlink Rate	<p>Configure the data transmission rate in uploading and downloading, in Kbps. It includes Limit-at, Max-Limit, and Max-Limit per User.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Limit-at: Specifies the minimum bandwidth that can be shared by all users when the bandwidth is insufficient. ● Max-Limit: Specifies the total maximum bandwidth that can be occupied by all users when the bandwidth is sufficient. ● Max-Limit per User: Specifies the maximum bandwidth that can be occupied by each user when multiple users share the bandwidth. It is optional and can be configured only when Bandwidth Type is set to Independent. The rate is not limited by default.
Interface	<p>Specify the WAN port, on which the policy takes effect. When it is set to All WAN Ports, the policy will be applied to all WAN ports.</p>
Enabled	<p>Set whether to enable the flow control policy. If it is disabled, the policy does not take effect.</p>

 **Caution**

After switching the application library version, you may need to reconfigure the application list.

- c Click **OK**.
- Set a custom VPN policy.
 - a Set **Policy Type** to **VPN Policy** and click **Add** to create a custom VPN flow control policy. A maximum of 10 VPN policies can be configured.

Add
×

* Policy Name

Type User Group Custom

* User Group ?

Effective User Internal IP/User External IP/External User ?

Application All Applications Application Group Custom

Bandwidth Limit Limit Kbps No Limit

Uplink Bandwidth * Max-Limit Max-Limit ?
per User

Downlink Rate * Max-Limit Max-Limit ?
per User

* Interface

Enabled

d Configure items related to a VPN policy.

Parameter	Description
Policy Name	A policy name uniquely identifies a custom flow control policy. It cannot be modified.
Type	The type of a flow control policy can be set to the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● User Group: Indicates that the policy is applied to users in a specified user group. You need to select a user group to be managed. ● Custom: Indicates that the policy is applied to users in a specified IP address segment. You need to manually enter the IP address range to be managed.
User Group	Select a user to be managed by the policy from the user group list. For details about how to set the user group list, see 7.2 User Management . If you select all members of a user group, the policy takes effect on the entire user group (it also takes effect on members added to the user group later). This parameter is required when Type is set to User Group .
IP/IP Range	Enter an IP address or IP range manually. This parameter is required when Type is set to Client .

Parameter	Description
Effective User	<p>Specify the type of effective users. It can be set to the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Internal IP/User: For a gateway, IP addresses of clients connected to the gateway are internal IP addresses. ● External IP/External User: For a gateway, non-gateway internal IP addresses are external IP addresses. <p>The configuration suggestions are as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When clients are configured to control VPN traffic, select Internal IP/ User to control the traffic of internal network users. When the VPN server is configured to control the VPN traffic, select External IP/External User to control the traffic of external network users. ● For the VPN of the NAT model, the external IP address of the server must be in the IP address segment of the VPN address pool. ● For the VPN in router mode, the IP address segment must be set to IP addresses of restricted users. For the VPN in router mode, to configure flow control on internal IP addresses of clients, set internal IP addresses to the IP addresses of the flow control objects. <p>Note: The external IP address configured by the Open VPN server is the IP address of the address pool. The internal IP address configured by the client is the actual IP address of the client.</p>
Application	<p>When Bandwidth Type is set to Shared, the flow control policy can be configured to take effect only on specified applications.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● All Applications: Indicates that the flow control policy takes effect on all applications in the current application library. ● Custom: Indicates that the flow control policy takes effect only on specified applications in the application list. ● Application Group: Indicates that the flow control policy takes effect only on specified application groups. The traffic of applications involved in the application group is subject to the policy. <p>When Bandwidth Type is set to Independent, some models do not support application selection and the flow control policy takes effect on all applications in the current application library by default.</p> <p>For the models, contact technical support engineers.</p>
Application List	<p>When Application is set to Custom, it specifies the applications, on which the policy takes effect. The traffic of the selected applications is subject to the policy.</p>
Application Group	<p>When Application is set to ApplicationGroup, it specifies the application group, on which the policy takes effect. The traffic of the selected application group is subject to the policy.</p>
Bandwidth Limit	<p>Configure whether to limit the bandwidth.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Limit Kbps: You can set uplink and downlink bandwidth limits as needed. ● No Limit: When the bandwidth is sufficient, the maximum bandwidth is not limited. When the bandwidth is insufficient, the minimum bandwidth is not guaranteed.
Uplink Bandwidth	<p>Configure the maximum uplink bandwidth shared by VPN users matching the policy in Kbps.</p> <p>When the bandwidth is shared by multiple users, you can also set the maximum uplink bandwidth per user in Kbps. The uplink bandwidth is not limited by default. Note: The parameter is valid when Bandwidth Limit is set to Limit Kbps.</p>

Parameter	Description
Downlink Rate	Configure the maximum downlink bandwidth shared by VPN users matching the policy in Kbps. When the bandwidth is shared by multiple users, you can also set the maximum downlink bandwidth per user in Kbps. The downlink bandwidth is not limited by default. Note: The parameter is valid when Bandwidth Limit is set to Limit Kbps .
Interface	Specify the VPN port, on which the policy takes effect. When it is set to All VPN Ports , the policy will be applied to all VPN ports.
Enabled	Set whether to enable the flow control policy. If it is disabled, the policy does not take effect.

- e Click OK.
- (4) View Custom Policies

The current custom policies are displayed in the **Policy List** section. You can modify and delete a custom policy. To delete multiple custom policies in a batch, select the desired policies and click **Delete Selected**.

● Normal policy list

Smart Flow Control **Custom Policy** Application Priority

Custom Policy
 Allocate bandwidth to the specified IP address or range. The priority is sorted as follows: Custom Policy > Smart Flow Control.
 When custom policy and template are applied to an application, the custom policy prevails.

Policy List + Add Delete Selected

Up to 30 entries can be added. 1 entries are already added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Policy Name	IP / IP Range	Bandwidth Type	Channel	Application List	Uplink Rate	Downlink Rate	Interface	Status	Effective State	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	test	1.1.1.1-1.1.1.1	Shared	4	All Applications	No Limit	No Limit	WAN	Enable	Active	Edit Delete

● VPN policy list

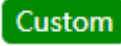
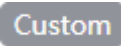


Policy Type Normal Policy VPN Policy Cloud Policy

Policy List Application Library Version: China + Add Delete Selected

Up to 10 entries can be added. 3 entries are already added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Policy Name	User Group	Application List	Uplink Bandwidth	Downlink Rate	Interface	Enabled	Effective State	Match Order	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	PPTP_SERVER_74624	1.1.1.1-255.255.255.255	All Applications	PIR per User No Limit	PIR per User No Limit	PPTP	Disable	Inactive	↓	Edit Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	L2TP_SERVER_49952	1.1.1.1-255.255.255.255	All Applications	PIR per User No Limit	PIR per User No Limit	L2TP	Disable	Inactive	↑ ↓	Edit Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	OPENVPN_SERVER_15522	1.1.1.1-255.255.255.255	All Applications	PIR per User No Limit	PIR per User No Limit	OpenVPN	Disable	Inactive	↑	Edit Delete

Table 7-9 Policy list information

Parameter	Description
Application List	The Application List contains the applications to which the policy is valid. If the Application Library matches with the Application that is set to Custom and supported by the policy,  is displayed in the Application List . If not,  is displayed.
Status	Indicate whether the current policy is enabled. You can click to edit the status. If the Application Library does not match with the Application that is set to Custom and supported by the policy, you cannot edit the Status directly. Please click Edit in the action bar to edit the policy or switch the application library.
Effective State	Indicate whether the policy is effective in the current system. If Inactive is displayed, check whether the policy is enabled, whether the policy-enabled port exists, and whether the Application Library matches with the Application to which the policy is valid.
Match Order	All the created custom policies are displayed in the policy list, with the latest policy listed on the top. The device matches the policies according to their sorting in the list. You can manually adjust the policy matching sequence by clicking  or  in the list.
Action	You can modify and delete the custom policy.

7.6.4 Application Priority

1. Overview

After smart flow control is enabled, you can set the application priority to provide guaranteed bandwidth to applications with high priority and suppress the bandwidth for applications with low priority. You can predefine a list of applications whose bandwidth needs to be guaranteed preferentially and a list of applications whose bandwidth needs to be suppressed based on actual needs.

Caution

If one application exists in both the custom policy list and the application priority list, the custom policy prevails.

2. Getting Started

- Before you configure application priority, enable smart flow control first. For details, see Section [7.6.2 Smart Flow Control](#).
- Confirm that the appropriate application library is selected on the **Custom Policy** page (See Section [6.6.3 Custom Policies](#) for details.).

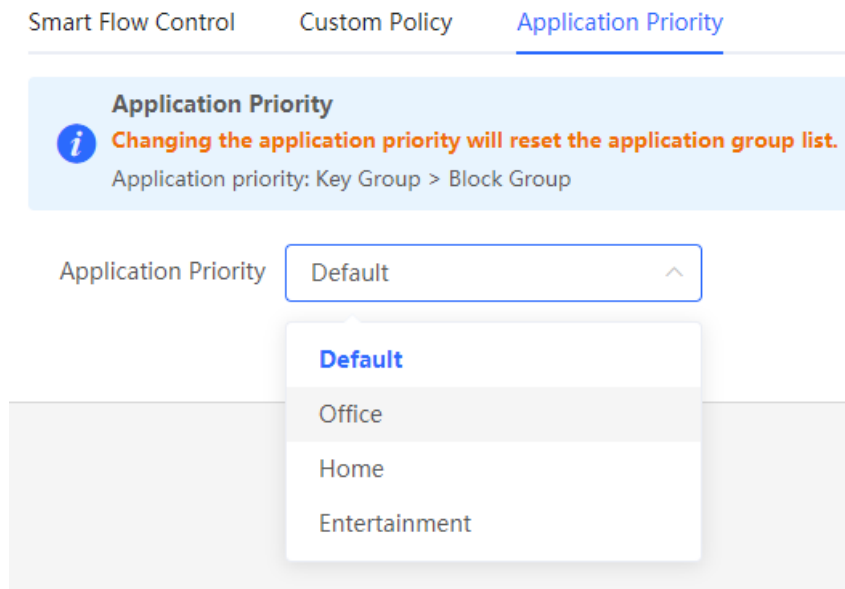
3. Configuration Steps

Choose **Local Device** > **Behavior** > **Flow Control** > **Application Priority**.

(1) Create an application priority template.

Select a template from the **Application Priority** drop-down list box.

Four application priority templates are predefined to meet the needs in different scenarios. You can switch among the templates based on actual needs.



The application priority templates are as follows:

- **Default:** This template is used during device initialization. The traffic bandwidth is not guaranteed or suppressed for any application.
- **Office:** This template is designed for the office scenario, where the application traffic from the office network is guaranteed preferentially.
- **Home:** This template is designed for the home scenario, where the application traffic from the home network is guaranteed preferentially.
- **Entertainment:** This template is designed for the entertainment scenario, where the application traffic from the entertainment network is guaranteed preferentially.

(2) Create an application group list.

Each default template has three application groups: key group, block group, and normal group. The application priority of the three groups decreases in the following order: key group, normal group, and block group.

- **Key Group:** The traffic from applications in the application list for this group is guaranteed preferentially.
- **Block Group:** The traffic from applications in the application list for this group is suppressed to preferentially guarantee the traffic from applications with higher priority.
- **Normal Group:** All the applications in the application library beyond the key group and block group are in this group. The traffic from applications in this group are guaranteed after that from the key group.

After you select a template, three application groups **Key Group**, **Block Group**, and **Normal Group** and the application list for each group in the current template are displayed. You can click **More** to view the details of each application list.

You can click **Edit** in the **Action** column next to the key group and block group to edit the application list for the groups, allowing the traffic from these applications to be guaranteed or suppressed.

Smart Flow Control Custom Policy Application Priority

Application Priority
i **Changing the application priority will reset the application group list.**
 Application priority: Key Group > Block Group

Application Priority Office ▾

Application Group List

Group Name	Application List	Action
Key Group	Communication	Edit
Block Group	Play... More Application List(2) <div style="display: flex; gap: 5px; margin-top: 2px;"> Play Video </div>	Edit
Normal Group	Other	Edit

Edit ✕

Group Name 抑制通道

Application List Play × Video × ✕ ▲

- Communication
- Video
- Shopping
- Play
- Databank
- P2PSoftware
- AppStore
- Payment

Cancel
OK

- ⚠ **Caution**
- If you switch the application library, the application list will change.
 - The application list will be reset after you switch the application priority template.

7.7 Access Control

7.7.1 Overview

The access control function matches data packets passing through the device based on specific rules and permits or drops data packets in the specified time range. This function controls whether to permit LAN user access to the Internet and whether to block a specific data flow. The device matches packets based on the MAC address or IP address.

7.7.2 Configuration Steps

Choose **Local Device > Behavior > Access Control**.

The access control rule list displays the created access control rules. Click **Add** to add an access control rule.

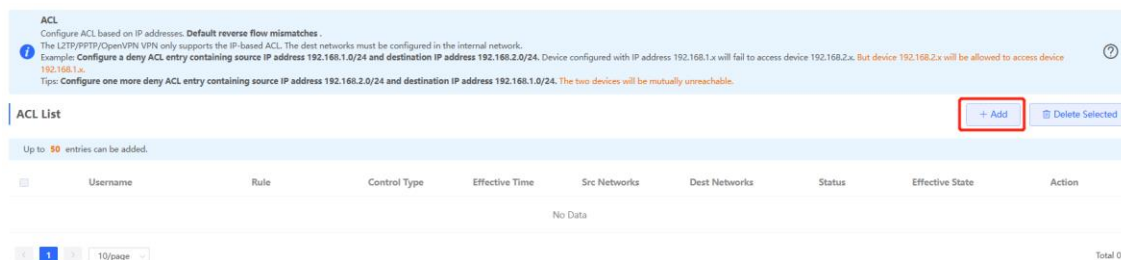





Table 7-10 Access Control Rule Information

Parameter	Description
Username	Identify the purpose of the rule.
Rule	Display a summary of the control information. MAC-based: Display the MAC address matching the rule. IP-based: Display the connection type, source IP address, destination IP address, and protocol type of packets matching the rule.
Control Type	Indicate how packets that match the rule are processed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Allow: Permit the packets that match the rule. Block: Discard the packets that match the rule.
Effective Time	Indicate the time period during which the rule takes effect.
Src Networks	Indicate the source interface that matches the rule. If the rule is based on the MAC address, then this field is set to "All Intranets" by default. If the rule is based on IP addresses, then this field can be set to "All Networks", "All Extranets", "All Intranets", or a specific network.
Dest Networks	Indicate the destination interface that matches the rule. If the rule is based on the MAC address, then this field is set to "All Extranets" by default. If the rule is based on IP addresses, then this field can be set to "All Networks", "All Extranets", "All Intranets", or a specific network.
Status	Indicate whether the rule is enabled. You can click to switch the status. When this toggle switch is off, the rule will not take effect.
Effective State	Indicate whether the rule is effective. If Ineffective is displayed, it might be because the current system time is not within the designated effective period. You can hover the mouse over  to view more details on the cause.

Parameter	Description
Match Order	All the created rules are displayed in the ACL list, with the latest rule listed on the top. The device matches the rules according to their sorting in the list. You can manually adjust the rule matching sequence by clicking  or  in the list.
Action	You can modify or delete a rule.

1. Configuring a MAC Address-based ACL Rule

MAC address-based ACL rules enable the device to match data packets based on the source MAC address, and are generally used to control Internet access from online users or specific clients.

Set **Based on MAC**, enter the MAC address of the client, select a rule type, set the effective time range, and click **OK**.

 Note

MAC address-based ACL rules are valid on WAN ports by default.

Add Rule



Status

Name

Based on MAC Address IP Address

* MAC Address

Control Type 

Effective Time 

Cancel

OK

Table 7-11 MAC address-based ACL configuration

Parameter	Description
Status	Indicate whether the rule is enabled. You can click to switch the status. When this toggle switch is off, the rule will not take effect.
Name	Identify the rule. This field can be customized by the user.
MAC Address	Enter the target MAC address. When you click on the input box, the information of the user currently online will be displayed. By simply clicking on the displayed information, the corresponding MAC address will be automatically filled in for you.
Control Type	Indicate how packets that match the rule are processed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Allow: Permit the packets that match the rule. ● Block: Discard the packets that match the rule.
Effective Time	Indicate the time period during which the rule takes effect. You can select a time range from the drop-down list in 7.3 Time Management , or select Custom to manually set a time range.

2. Configuring an IP Address-based ACL Rule

IP address-based ACL rules enable the device to match data flows according to the source IP address, destination IP address, and protocol number.

Set **Based on IP**, click **IPv4** or **IPv6** next to the **Internet** parameter and enter the source IP address and port and destination IP address and port of the data flow, select the protocol type, rule type, effective time range, and effective port, and click **OK**.

Caution

- IP address-based ACL rules are effective in only one direction. For example, in a block rule, the source IP address segment is 192.168.1.0/24 and the destination IP address segment is 192.168.2.0/24. According to this rule, the device with the IP address 192.168.1.x cannot access the device with the IP address 192.168.2.x, but the device with the IP address 192.168.2.x can access the device with the IP address 192.168.1.x. To block bidirectional access in this network segment, you need to configure another block rule with the source IP address segment 192.168.2.0/24 and destination IP address segment 192.168.1.0/24.
- L2TP/PPTP VPN supports only IP address-based access control and the effective ports must be in the LAN.

Add Rule



Status

Name

Based on MAC Address IP Address

Internet IPv4 IPv6

Src IP Address

Dest IP Address

Protocol Type ▼

Control Type ▼

Effective Time ▼

Src Networks ▼

Dest Networks ▼ ?

----- [Advanced Settings](#) -----

Cancel

OK

Table 7-12 IP address-based ACL configuration

Parameter	Description
Status	Indicate whether the rule is enabled. You can click to switch the status. When this toggle switch is off, the rule will not take effect.

Parameter	Description
Name	Identify the purpose of the rule, which can be customized by the user.
Internet	Format of the IP address. Both IPv4 and IPv6 address formats are supported.
Src IP Address: Port	<p>The source IP address and port of the packet. If this parameter is left empty, it means all IP addresses and ports.</p> <p>If the Internet is set to IPv4, then the format of the IP address is IPv4. Example: 192.168.1.1/24.</p> <p>If the Internet is set to IPv6, then the format of the IP address is IPv6. Example: 2000::1.</p>
Dest IP Address: Port	<p>The destination address and port of the packet. If this parameter is left empty, it means all IP addresses and ports.</p> <p>If the Internet is set to IPv4, then the format of the IP address is IPv4. Example: 192.168.1.1/24</p> <p>If the Internet is set to IPv6, then the format of the IP address is IPv6. Example: 2000::1</p>
Protocol Type	Specify the protocol type for data packet matching. The options are TCP, UDP, and ICMP.
Control Type	<p>Specify the method for processing data packets matching the conditions.</p> <p>Allow: Permit the data packets matching the conditions.</p> <p>Block: Drop the data packets matching the conditions. This rule is valid only in one direction, and does not block the reverse flow.</p>
Effective Time	You can select a time range defined in Section 7.3 Time Management from the drop-down list box, or select Custom and manually enter the specific time range.
Interface	<p>Select the port on which the rule applies.</p> <p>LAN: The rule takes effect on a LAN port to control data packets to the LAN.</p> <p>WAN: The rule takes effect on a WAN port to control data packets received from or sent to the Internet.</p>
Src Networks	Indicate the source interface that matches the rule. If the rule is based on the MAC address, then this field is set to "All Intranets" by default. If the rule is based on IP addresses, then this field can be set to "All Networks", "All Extranets", "All Intranets", or a specific network.

Parameter	Description
Dest Networks	Indicate the destination interface that matches the rule. If the rule is based on the MAC address, then this field is set to "All Extranets" by default. If the rule is based on IP addresses, then this field can be set to "All Networks", "All Extranets", "All Intranets", or a specific network.

To limit the session state of packets matching the rule, you can click **Advanced Settings** and select one or more session states as required. These session states include New, Established, Related, and Invalid. Then, click **OK**.

Note

If no session state is selected, the rule matches all sessions by default.

----- **Advanced Settings** -----

* Session State All

New Established Related

Invalid

7.8 Online User Management

Choose **Networkwide Management > Clients Management > Online Clients**.

You can view the wired users and wireless users in the current network. Find the target online user and click **Go** in the **Access Control** column to create an ACL rule for the user, to control the online behavior and networking time range of the user client. For details on how to configure an ACL rule, see Section [7.7 Access Control](#).

Device Name	Type	Access Location	IP Address/MAC Address	Current Rate	Wi-Fi	LimitSpeed	Action
EG210G-P-E-99C5FD	Wired	G1RS305000192	192.168.110.13 70:42:d3:99:c5:ff	Up:313.00bps Down:156.00bps	--	--	Access Control

Table 7-13 Online user information

Parameter	Description
Device Name	Indicate the device name of the client.

Parameter	Description
Type	Indicate the access type of the client. The access type can be Wireless or Wired .
Access Location	Indicate the SN of the device to which the client connects in wired or wireless mode.
IP Address/MAC Address	Indicate the IP address and MAC address of the client.
Current Rate	Indicate the current uplink and downlink data transmission rates.
Wi-Fi	Indicate the wireless signal information displayed when Username/Type is set to Wireless . The information includes the channel, signal strength, online duration, and negotiated rate.

Add Rule



Based on **MAC Address** IP Address

* MAC Address

Control Type

Effective Time

Remarks

Cancel

OK

7.9 Upgrading the Application Library

7.9.1 Overview

The app control function relies on the accuracy of the application library, and the application library is updated with the app version. You can upgrade the application library to the latest version on the **Application Library Update** page.

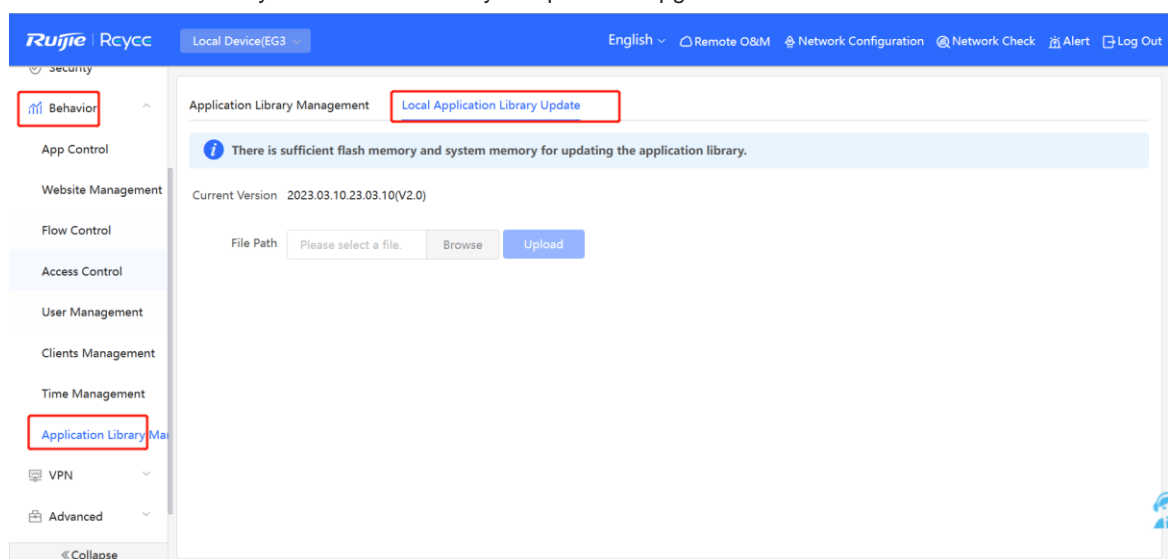
7.9.2 Local Upgrade

Choose **Local Device** > **Behavior** > **Application Library Update**> **Local Application Library Update**.

Caution

- Upgrading the application library version takes about one minute to take effect. Do not cut off power during the upgrade. You can view the current application library version on the page.
- Perform subsequent operations based on the memory information displayed on the page. If the memory is insufficient, you are advised to restart the device and then upgrade the application library.
- After the application library is upgraded, the original app control policy may become invalid. Therefore, exercise caution when performing this operation.


- (1) Click **Browse**. Select an application library upgrade file.
- (2) Click **Upload** to upload the upgrade file.
- (3) Click **OK**. Wait for the system to automatically complete the upgrade.



7.9.3 Online Upgrade

Choose **Local Device** > **Behavior** > **Application Library Management** > **Application Library Management**

Enable **Auto Update Version**. When the system identifies the latest version, the application library is automatically upgraded.

[Application Library Management](#)[Local Application Library Update](#) **Application Library Management**

Application Library Management

Auto Update Version

Application Recognition 2022.12.11.22.12.11(V2.0) (It is the latest version.)

Library

8 VPN

8.1 Configuring IPsec VPN

8.1.1 Overview

1. IPsec Overview

IP Security (IPsec) is a Layer 3 tunnel encryption protocol defined by the IETF. IPsec is used to provide end-to-end encryption and verification services in the network to provide high quality and interoperability for data transmission over the network and ensure transmission security by using cryptographic algorithms. The communicating parties obtain the following security services at the IP layer through encryption and data source authentication:

- Confidentiality: The IPsec sender encrypts packets before transmitting the packets over the network.
- Data integrity: The IPsec receiver authenticates packets received from the sender to ensure that data is not tampered with during the transmission.
- Data authentication: The IPsec receiver authenticates whether the sender of IPsec packets is valid.
- Anti-replay: The IPsec receiver detects and denies expired or repeated packets.

The IPsec protocol is widely used for communication between the HQ and branches of an organization. Currently, the device can be deployed as the IPsec server or client. A secure tunnel is established between the HQ and each branch based on the IPsec protocol to ensure the confidentiality of data transmission and improve network security.

2. IKE Overview

IPsec provides secure communication between two endpoints, which are called IPsec peers. Security Association (SA) is the establishment of shared security attributes between the peers to support secure communication. An SA may include attributes such as: security protocol used by the peers, characteristics of data flows to be protected, encapsulation mode of data transmitted between the peers, encryption and authentication algorithms,

keys for secure data conversion and transmission, and the SA lifetime. When you configure IPsec, you can use the Internet Key Exchange (IKE) protocol to establish an SA. IKE provides automatically negotiated keys for establishing and maintaining SAs, simplifying IPsec usage and management.

3. IPsec Security Policy

IPsec security policies define security proposals (equivalent to SA) for data flows. You can configure matching security policies on both parties engaged in the communication to establish IPsec tunnels between the IPsec client and the IPsec server, protecting the communication data. An IPsec security policy consists of two parts: basic settings and advanced settings. Advanced settings are optional and include the specific IKE policy and connection policy. You can keep the default settings unless otherwise specified. For details, see the Configuration Steps below.

8.1.2 Configuring the IPsec Server

Choose **Local Device > VPN > IPsec > IPsec Security Policy**.

1. Basic Settings

Click **Add**. In the dialog box that appears, set **Policy Type** to **Server**, enter the policy name and local subnet range, set the pre-shared key, and click **OK**.

IPSec Security Policy
IPSec Connection Status

IPSec Security Policy

Note: Example: IP address/number of subnet mask bits.
Tip: If it is set to 192.168.110.x/24, the address range is from 192.168.110.1 to 192.168.110.254.

Policy List

+ Add

Up to **1** entries can be added.

Policy Type	Policy Name	Peer Gateway	Local Subnet	Peer Subnet	Status	Action
No Data						

Add
×

Policy Type Client Server

Internet IPv4 IPv6 ?

* Policy Name

Interface ?

Key Exchange IKEv1 IKEv2 ?

Version

* Subnets

+ Local Subnets

* Pre-shared Key

Status

1. Set IKE Policy

2. Connection Policy

Table 8-1 IPsec server basic settings

Parameter	Description
Policy Name	Specify the name of the IPsec security policy. The name must be a string of 1 to 28 characters.
Internet	Format of the IP address. Both IPv4 and IPv6 address formats are supported.
Interface	Select a local WAN port from the drop-down list box. The Peer Gateway parameter set for the communication peer (IPsec client) must use the IP address of the WAN port specified here. In the multi-line scenario, you are advised to set this parameter to Auto .

Parameter	Description
Key Exchange Version	<p>Select the IKE version for SA negotiation. There are two options available:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● IKEv1: The negotiation of SA in IKEv1 primarily consists of two phases. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Phase 1: The purpose is to establish an IKE SA using one of two negotiation modes: Main Mode and Aggressive Mode. Main Mode requires six ISAKMP (Internet Security Association and Key Management Protocol) messages to complete the negotiation, while Aggressive Mode only requires three ISAKMP messages. Aggressive Mode offers faster IKE SA establishment. However, it combines key exchange and identity authentication, which means it does not provide identity protection. ○ Phase 2: The purpose is to establish an IPsec SA for data transmission, utilizing a fast exchange mode that requires only three ISAKMP messages to complete the negotiation. ● IKEv2: In IKEv2, the negotiation process for SA is simplified. The establishment of one IKE SA and one pair of IPsec SAs can be accomplished using two exchanges with four messages. If there is a need to establish more than one pair of IPsec SAs, only one additional exchange is needed for each pair. This enables the negotiation to be completed with just two messages per pair.
Subnets	Specify the local subnet address range for the data flows to be protected, that is, the LAN port network segment of the server. The value is the combination of IP address and subnet mask.
Pre-shared Key	Specify the same pre-shared key as the credential for authentication between communicating parties. For higher security, different peers must be configured with different pre-shared keys. That is, a pair of interface bound to the IPsec server and peer gateway of the IPsec client must be configured with the same unique pre-shared key.
Status	Specify whether to enable the security policy.

2. Advanced Settings (Phase 1)

- The key exchange version in the basic setting is IKEv1:

Click **1. Set IKE Policy** to expand the configuration items. Keep the default settings unless otherwise specified.

1. Set IKE Policy

IKE Policy 1 IKE Policy 2 IKE Policy 3 IKE Policy 4 IKE Policy 5 Negotiation Main Mode Aggressive Mode
ModeLocal ID Type IP NAMEPeer ID Type IP NAME* Lifetime DPD Enable Disable* DPD Interval
seconds

2. Connection Policy

Table 8-2 IPsec server IKEv1 policy configuration

Parameter	Description
IKE Policy	<p>Select the hash algorithm, encryption algorithm, and Diffie-Hellman (DH) group ID used by the IKE protocol. An IKE policy is composed of the three parameters. You can set five sets of IKE policies. To ensure successful IKE negotiation, the two parties engaged in IKE negotiation must have at least one set of consistent IKE policy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Hash algorithm: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ sha1: SHA-1 algorithm ○ md5: MD5 algorithm ● Encryption algorithm: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ des: DES algorithm using 56-bit keys ○ 3des: 3DES algorithm using 168-bit keys ○ aes-128: AES algorithm using 128-bit keys ○ aes-192: AES algorithm using 192-bit keys ○ aes-256: AES algorithm using 256-bit keys ● DH group ID: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ dh1: 768-bit DH group ○ dh2: 1024-bit DH group ○ dh5: 1536-bit DH group
Negotiation Mode	<p>Select Main Mode or Aggressive Mode. The negotiation mode on the IPsec server and IPsec client must be the same.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Main Mode: Generally, this mode is applicable to communication between fixed public network IP addresses and point-to-point communication between devices. In this mode, the peer identity is authenticated to provide high security. ● Aggressive Mode: The public network IP addresses obtained by ADSL dial-up users are not fixed and an NAT device may exist. Therefore, the aggressive mode is used to implement NAT traversal. In this mode, you need to set the local and peer ID type to NAME as the IP address is not fixed. The aggressive mode does not authenticate the peer identity, so it has low security.
Local/Peer ID Type	<p>Specify the ID type of the local or peer device. The local ID type of the peer device must be the same as the peer ID type of the local device.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● IP: The IP address is used as the identity ID. The IDs of the local and peer devices are generated automatically. ● NAME: The host character string is used as the identity ID. The IDs of the local and peer devices are generated automatically. When the IP address is not fixed, you need to set Local ID Type to NAME and modify the peer device settings accordingly. In this case, you also need to configure the host character string that is used as the identity ID.
Local/Peer ID	<p>When the local or peer ID type is set to NAME, you also need to host character string that is used as the identity ID. The local ID of the peer device must be the same as peer ID of the local device.</p>
Lifetime	<p>Specify the lifetime of the IKE SA. (The negotiated IKE SA lifetime prevails.) You are advised to use the default value.</p>

Parameter	Description
DPD	Specify whether to enable Dead Peer Detection (DPD) to detect the IPsec neighbor status. After DPD is enabled, if the receiver does not receive IPsec encrypted packets from the peer within the DPD detection interval, DPD query will be triggered and the receiver actively sends a request packet to detect whether the IKE peer exists. You are advised to configure DPD when links are unstable.
DPD Interval	Specify the DPD detection interval. That is, the interval for triggering DPD query. You are advised to keep the default setting.

- The key exchange version in the basic setting is IKEv2:
Click **IKE Policy** to expand the configuration items. Keep the default settings unless otherwise specified.

----- IKE Policy -----

Authentication-Encryption-DH Group

IKE Policy 1

IKE Policy 2

IKE Policy 3

IKE Policy 4

IKE Policy 5

Local ID Type IP Address NAME

Peer ID Type IP Address NAME

* Lifetime

DPD Enable Disable

* DPD Interval seconds

Table 8-3 IPsec server IKEv2 policy configuration

Parameter	Description
IKE Policy	<p>Select the hash algorithm, encryption algorithm, and Diffie-Hellman (DH) group ID used by the IKE protocol. An IKE policy is composed of the three parameters. You can set five sets of IKE policies. To ensure successful IKE negotiation, the two parties engaged in IKE negotiation must have at least one set of consistent IKE policy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Hash algorithm: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ sha1: SHA-1 algorithm ○ md5: MD5 algorithm ● Encryption algorithm: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ des: DES algorithm using 56-bit keys ○ 3des: 3DES algorithm using 168-bit keys ○ aes-128: AES algorithm using 128-bit keys ○ aes-192: AES algorithm using 192-bit keys ○ aes-256: AES algorithm using 256-bit keys ● DH group ID: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ dh1: 768-bit DH group ○ dh2: 1024-bit DH group ○ dh5: 1536-bit DH group
Local/Peer ID Type	<p>Specify the ID type of the local or peer device. The local ID type of the peer device must be the same as the peer ID type of the local device.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● IP: The IP address is used as the identity ID. The IDs of the local and peer devices are generated automatically. ● NAME: The host character string is used as the identity ID. The IDs of the local and peer devices are generated automatically. When the IP address is not fixed, you need to set Local ID Type to NAME and modify the peer device settings accordingly. In this case, you also need to configure the host character string that is used as the identity ID.
Local/Peer ID	<p>When the local or peer ID type is set to NAME, you also need to host character string that is used as the identity ID. The local ID of the peer device must be the same as peer ID of the local device.</p>
Lifetime	<p>Specify the lifetime of the IKE SA. (The negotiated IKE SA lifetime prevails.) You are advised to use the default value.</p>
DPD	<p>Specify whether to enable Dead Peer Detection (DPD) to detect the IPsec neighbor status. After DPD is enabled, if the receiver does not receive IPsec encrypted packets from the peer within the DPD detection interval, DPD query will be triggered and the receiver actively sends a request packet to detect whether the IKE peer exists.</p> <p>You are advised to configure DPD when links are unstable.</p>
DPD Interval	<p>Specify the DPD detection interval. That is, the interval for triggering DPD query. You are advised to keep the default setting.</p>

3. Advanced Settings (Phase 2)

Click **2. Connection Policy** to expand the configuration items. Keep the default settings unless otherwise specified.

2. Connection Policy

Transform Set 1

Transform Set 2

Perfect Forward

Secrecy

* Lifetime

Table 8-4 IPsec server connection policy configuration

Parameter	Description
Transform Set	<p>Specify the set of security protocol and algorithms. During IPsec SA negotiation, the two parties use the same transform set to protect specific data flow. The transform set on the IPsec server and IPsec client must be the same.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Security protocol: The Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) protocol provides data source authentication, data integrity check, and anti-replay functions for IPsec connections and guarantees data confidentiality. ● Verification algorithm: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ sha1: SHA-1 HMAC ○ md5: MD5 HMAC ● Encryption algorithm: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ des: DES algorithm using 56-bit keys ○ 3des: 3DES algorithm using 168-bit keys ○ aes-128: AES algorithm using 128-bit keys ○ aes-192: AES algorithm using 192-bit keys ○ aes-256: AES algorithm using 256-bit keys

Parameter	Description
Perfect Forward Secrecy	<p>Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS) is a security feature that can guarantee the security of other keys when one key is cracked, because there is no derivative relationship among the keys. After PFS is enabled, temporary private key exchange is performed when an IKE negotiation is initiated using a security policy. If PFS is configured on the local device, it must also be configured on the peer device that initiates negotiation and the DH group specified on the local and peer devices must be the same. Otherwise, negotiation will fail.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● none: Disable PFS. ● d1: 768-bit DH group ● d2: 1024-bit DH group ● d5: 1536-bit DH group <p>By default, PFS is disabled.</p>

8.1.3 Configuring the IPsec Client

Choose **Local Device > VPN > IPsec > IPsec Security Policy**.

Click **Add**. In the dialog box that appears, set **Policy Type** to **Client**, enter the policy name, peer gateway, local subnet range, and peer subnet range, set the pre-shared key, and click **OK**.

IPSec Security Policy IPSec Connection Status

IPSec Security Policy ?

Note: Example: IP address/number of subnet mask bits.
Tip: If it is set to 192.168.110.x/24, the address range is from 192.168.110.1 to 192.168.110.254.

Policy List + Add

Up to **1** entries can be added.

Policy Type	Policy Name	Peer Gateway	Local Subnet	Peer Subnet	Status	Action
No Data						

Add
×

Policy Type Client Server

Internet IPv4 IPv6 ?

* Policy Name

* Peer Gateway ? +

Interface ?

Key Exchange IKEv1 IKEv2 ?

Version

* Subnets

Local Subnets
+
Peer Subnets

* Pre-shared Key

Status

1. Set IKE Policy

2. Connection Policy

Table 8-5 IPsec client basic settings

Parameter	Description
Policy Name	Specify the name of the IPsec security policy. The name must be a string of 1 to 28 characters.
Internet	Format of the IP address. Both IPv4 and IPv6 address formats are supported.
Peer Gateway	Enter the IP address or domain name of the peer device.

Parameter	Description
Interface	Select a WAN port used locally from the drop-down list box. In the multi-line scenario, you are advised to set this parameter to Auto .
Key Exchange Version	Select the IKE version for SA negotiation. There are two options available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● IKEv1: The negotiation of SA in IKEv1 primarily consists of two phases. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Phase 1: The purpose is to establish an IKE SA using one of two negotiation modes: Main Mode and Aggressive Mode. Main Mode requires six ISAKMP (Internet Security Association and Key Management Protocol) messages to complete the negotiation, while Aggressive Mode only requires three ISAKMP messages. Aggressive Mode offers faster IKE SA establishment. However, it combines key exchange and identity authentication, which means it does not provide identity protection. ○ Phase 2: The purpose is to establish an IPsec SA for data transmission, utilizing a fast exchange mode that requires only three ISAKMP messages to complete the negotiation. ● IKEv2: In IKEv2, the negotiation process for SA is simplified. The establishment of one IKE SA and one pair of IPsec SAs can be accomplished using two exchanges with four messages. If there is a need to establish more than one pair of IPsec SAs, only one additional exchange is needed for each pair. This enables the negotiation to be completed with just two messages per pair.
Local Subnets	Specify the local subnet address range for the data flows to be protected, that is, the LAN port network segment of the server. The value is the combination of IP address and subnet mask.
Peer Subnets	Specify the peer subnet address range for the data flows to be protected, that is, the LAN port network segment of the client. The value is the combination of IP address and subnet mask.
Pre-shared Key	Configure the pre-shared key the same as that on the IPsec server.
Status	Specify whether to enable the security policy.

You can configure advanced parameters by referring to the corresponding settings on the IPsec server. For details, see [Advanced Settings \(Phase 1\)](#) and

[The key exchange version](#) in the basic setting is IKEv2:

Click **IKE Policy** to expand the configuration items. Keep the default settings unless otherwise specified.

----- IKE Policy -----

Authentication-Encryption-DH Group

IKE Policy 1

IKE Policy 2

IKE Policy 3

IKE Policy 4

IKE Policy 5

Local ID Type IP Address NAME

Peer ID Type IP Address NAME

* Lifetime

DPD Enable Disable

* DPD Interval seconds

Table 8-6 IPsec server IKEv2 policy configuration

Parameter	Description
IKE Policy	<p>Select the hash algorithm, encryption algorithm, and Diffie-Hellman (DH) group ID used by the IKE protocol. An IKE policy is composed of the three parameters. You can set five sets of IKE policies. To ensure successful IKE negotiation, the two parties engaged in IKE negotiation must have at least one set of consistent IKE policy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Hash algorithm: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ sha1: SHA-1 algorithm ○ md5: MD5 algorithm ● Encryption algorithm: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ des: DES algorithm using 56-bit keys ○ 3des: 3DES algorithm using 168-bit keys ○ aes-128: AES algorithm using 128-bit keys ○ aes-192: AES algorithm using 192-bit keys ○ aes-256: AES algorithm using 256-bit keys ● DH group ID: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ dh1: 768-bit DH group ○ dh2: 1024-bit DH group ○ dh5: 1536-bit DH group
Local/Peer ID Type	<p>Specify the ID type of the local or peer device. The local ID type of the peer device must be the same as the peer ID type of the local device.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● IP: The IP address is used as the identity ID. The IDs of the local and peer devices are generated automatically. ● NAME: The host character string is used as the identity ID. The IDs of the local and peer devices are generated automatically. When the IP address is not fixed, you need to set Local ID Type to NAME and modify the peer device settings accordingly. In this case, you also need to configure the host character string that is used as the identity ID.
Local/Peer ID	<p>When the local or peer ID type is set to NAME, you also need to host character string that is used as the identity ID. The local ID of the peer device must be the same as peer ID of the local device.</p>
Lifetime	<p>Specify the lifetime of the IKE SA. (The negotiated IKE SA lifetime prevails.) You are advised to use the default value.</p>
DPD	<p>Specify whether to enable Dead Peer Detection (DPD) to detect the IPsec neighbor status. After DPD is enabled, if the receiver does not receive IPsec encrypted packets from the peer within the DPD detection interval, DPD query will be triggered and the receiver actively sends a request packet to detect whether the IKE peer exists.</p> <p>You are advised to configure DPD when links are unstable.</p>
DPD Interval	<p>Specify the DPD detection interval. That is, the interval for triggering DPD query. You are advised to keep the default setting.</p>

Advanced Settings (Phase 2).

8.1.4 Viewing the IPsec Connection Status

Choose **Local Device** > **VPN** > **IPsec** > **IPsec Connection Status**.

You can view the IPsec tunnel connection status on the current page.

IPSec Security Policy [IPSec Connection Status](#)

i **IPSec Connection Status** ?

IPSec Connection Status
Refresh

Name	SPI	Direction	Tunnel Endpoint	Flow	Status	Security Protocol	Algorithm
test	32569111 34	in	172.26.1.200<--172.26.30.192	192.168.120.0/24 <-- 192.168.110.0/24	OK	ESP	AH Authentication: -- ESP Authentication: SHA1 ESP Security: AES-128
test	32874839 13	out	172.26.1.200-->172.26.30.192	192.168.120.0/24 --> 192.168.110.0/24	OK	ESP	AH Authentication: -- ESP Authentication: SHA1 ESP Security: AES-128

Table 8-7 IPsec tunnel connection status information

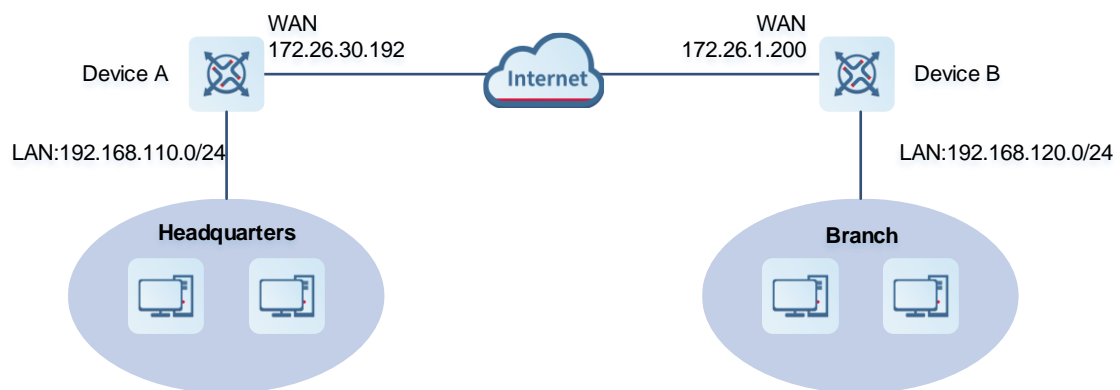
Parameter	Description
Name	Indicate the security policy name on the IPsec server or client.
SPI	Indicate the Security Parameter Index (SPI) of the IPsec connection, used to associate the received IPsec data packets with the corresponding SA. The SPI of each IPsec connection must be unique.
Direction	Indicate the direction of the IPsec connection. The value in indicates inbound, and the value out indicates outbound.
Tunnel Client	Indicate the gateway addresses on two ends of the IPsec connection. The arrow indicates the direction of data flows to be protected by the current tunnel.
Flow	Indicate the subnet range on two ends of the IPsec connection. The arrow indicates the direction of data flows to be protected by the current tunnel.
Status	Indicate the IPsec tunnel connection status.
Security Protocol	Indicate the security protocol used by the IPsec connection.
Algorithm	Indicate the encryption algorithm and authentication algorithm used by the IPsec connection.

8.1.5 Typical Configuration Example

1. Networking Requirements

The HQ and branch of an enterprise are connected through the Internet. An IPsec tunnel needs to be established between the HQ gateway and branch gateway to ensure the confidentiality of transmitted data.

2. Networking Diagram



3. Configuration Roadmap

- Configure the HQ gateway Device A as the IPsec server.
- Configure the branch gateway Device B as the IPsec client.

4. Configuration Steps

(1) Configure the HQ gateway.

- Log in to the web management system and choose VPN > IPsec > IPsec Security Policy to access the IPsec Security Policy page.

The screenshot shows the Ruijie web management system interface. The navigation menu on the left includes Overview, Basics, Security, Behavior, VPN, IPsec, L2TP, PPTP, OpenVPN, VPN Clients, Advanced, Diagnostics, and System. The main content area displays the 'IPsec Security Policy' configuration page. The page includes a header with 'Ruijie | Rcycc' and 'Local Device(EG2)', and a main content area with a 'Policy List' table and a '+ Add' button.

Policy Type	Policy Name	Peer Gateway	Local Subnet	Peer Subnet	Status	Action
No Data						

- b Click Add. In the dialog box that appears, set Policy Type to Server, enter the policy name, select the bound interface, and configure the local subnet to be accessed through IPsec and the pre-shared key.

If the device connects to other EG devices in the Reye network, you are advised to keep the default settings in IKE phase 1 and phase 2. If the device connects to devices from another vendor, keep the parameter settings consistent on the connected devices.

Add
×

Policy Type Client Server

Internet IPv4 IPv6 ?

* Policy Name

Interface ?

Key Exchange IKEv1 IKEv2 ?

Version

* Subnets

+ Local Subnets

* Pre-shared Key

Status

1. Set IKE Policy

2. Connection Policy

(2) Configure the branch gateway.

- a Log in to the web management system and access the IPsec Security Policy page.

Click Add. In the dialog box that appears, set Policy Type to Client, enter the policy name, select the peer gateway (WAN port address or domain name of the HQ gateway), and configure the local subnet that needs to access the peer subnet and the pre-shared key the same as that on the HQ gateway. Keep the other phase 1 and phase 2 parameters consistent with those on the IPsec server.

Add
×

Policy Type Client Server

Internet IPv4 IPv6 ?

* Policy Name

* Peer Gateway ? +

Interface ?

Key Exchange IKEv1 IKEv2 ?

Version

* Subnets

Local Subnets
+
Peer Subnets

* Pre-shared Key

Status

----- 1. Set IKE Policy -----

----- 2. Connection Policy -----

Cancel
OK

5. Verifying Configuration

- (1) Log in to the web management system of the HQ or branch gateway and choose **VPN > IPsec > IPsec Connection Status**. You can view the IPsec connection status between the HQ and branch.

IPSec Security Policy [IPSec Connection Status](#)

i IPSec Connection Status ?

IPSec Connection Status Refresh

Name	SPI	Direction	Tunnel Client	Flow	Status	Security Protocol	Algorithm
test	3483169 338	in	172.26.30.192<--172.26.1.200	192.168.110.0/24 <-- 192.168.120.0/24	OK	ESP	AH Authentication: -- ESP Authentication: SHA1 ESP Security: AES-128
test	3281459 512	out	172.26.30.192-->172.26.1.200	192.168.110.0/24 --> 192.168.120.0/24	OK	ESP	AH Authentication: -- ESP Authentication: SHA1 ESP Security: AES-128

- (2) Perform ping test between clients on the two ends that need to access each other. The clients can successfully ping and access each other.

8.1.6 Solution to IPsec VPN Connection Failure

- (1) Run the ping command to test the connectivity between the client and server. For details, see Section [9.9.3 Network Tools](#). If the ping fails, check the network connection settings. Check whether the branch EG can ping to HQ EG. If the ping fails, check the network connection between the two EGs.

Click **Diagnostics** > **Network Tools**. Then, you can start the ping operation. For details, see Section [9.9.3 Network Tools](#).

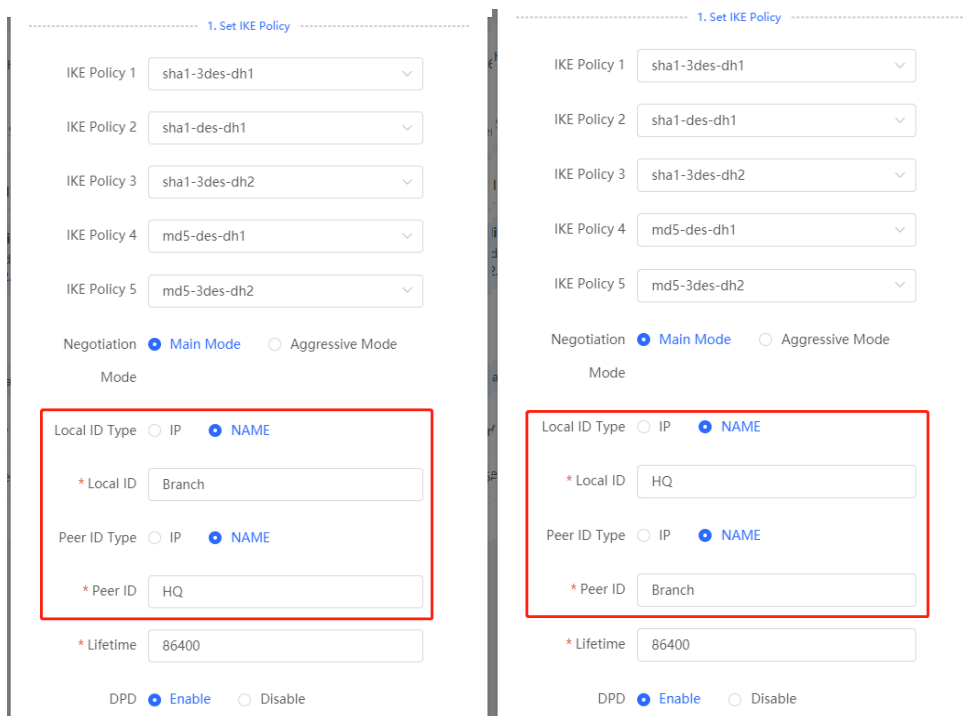
- (2) Confirm that the configurations on the IPsec server and IPsec client are correct.

Choose **VPN** > **IPsec** > **IPsec Security Policy** and confirm that the security policies configured on the two ends are matching.

Policy List							+ Add
Up to 1 entries can be added.							
Policy Type	Policy Name	Peer Gateway	Local Subnet	Peer Subnet	Status	Action	
Server	test	0.0.0.0	192.168.110.0/24	0.0.0.0/0	Enable ☺	Edit Delete	

Policy List							+ Add
Up to 1 entries can be added.							
Policy Type	Policy Name	Peer Gateway	Local Subnet	Peer Subnet	Status	Action	
Client	test	172.26.30.192	192.168.120.0/24	192.168.110.0/24	Enable ☺	Edit Delete	

- (3) Check whether the WAN IP address of your HQ EG is a public IP address. If not, you need to configure DMZ or port mapping (UDP 500 and 4500 used as IPsec VPN port) on your egress gateway and set **Local ID Type** to **NAME** on HQ and branch gateways.



8.2 Configuring L2TP VPN

8.2.1 Overview

Layer Two Tunneling Protocol (L2TP) is a virtual tunneling protocol, usually used in virtual private networks.

The L2TP protocol does not provide encryption and reliability verification functions, but it can work with a security protocol to implement encrypted data transmission. L2TP is frequently used with IPsec to encapsulate packets using L2TP before encapsulating packets using IPsec. This combination implements user verification and address allocation through L2TP and ensures communication security through IPsec.

L2TP VPN can be used to establish secure tunnels between the enterprise HQ and branches and allow traveling employees to access the HQ. Currently, the device can be deployed as the L2TP server or client.

8.2.2 Configuring the L2TP Server

1. Basic Settings of L2TP Server

Choose **Local Device > VPN > L2TP > L2TP Settings**.

Turn on the L2TP function, set **L2TP Type** to **Server**, set L2TP server parameters, and click **Save**.

i **L2TP Settings**

Enable

L2TP Type Server Client

* Local Tunnel IP

* IP Range ?

* DNS Server

Tunnel Authentication Disable Enable

IPSec Security Open Security


Flow Control Disable Enable

* PPP Hello Interval

Table 8-8 L2TP server configuration

Parameter	Description
Local Tunnel IP	Specify the local virtual IP address of the L2TP server. Clients can dial up to access the L2TP server through this address.
IP Range	Specify the address pool used by the L2TP server to allocate IP addresses to clients.
DNS Server	Specify the DNS server address pushed by the L2TP server to clients.

Parameter	Description
Tunnel Authentication	<p>Specify whether to enable L2TP tunnel authentication. If you enable this function, you need to configure a tunnel authentication key. By default, tunnel authentication is disabled.</p> <p>The tunnel authentication request can be initiated by clients. If tunnel authentication is enabled on one end, a tunnel to the peer can be established only when tunnel authentication is also enabled on the peer and consistent keys are configured on the two ends. Otherwise, the local end will automatically shut down the tunnel connection. If tunnel authentication is disabled on both ends, no authentication key is required for tunnel establishment.</p> <p>When a PC functions as the client to access the L2TP server, you are advised not to enable tunnel authentication on the L2TP server.</p>
IPsec Security	<p>Specify whether to encrypt the tunnel. If you select Security, the device encrypts the L2TP tunnel using IPsec, indicating the L2TP over IPsec mode.</p> <p>If an IPsec security policy is enabled on the current device, you cannot enable IPsec encryption for the L2TP tunnel. If you want to configure L2TP over IPsec, disable the IPsec security policy first.</p> <p>The IPsec encryption configuration on the L2TP server and client must be consistent. For details, see Configuring the L2TP over IPsec Server.</p>
Flow Control	<p>The VPN server has a lower priority to control the traffic of the client than the custom policy. The VPN server can only limit the maximum uplink and downlink bandwidth per user for the client. For details, see 7.6.2 Smart Flow Control.</p>
PPP Hello Interval	<p>Specify the interval for sending PPP Hello packets after L2TP VPN is deployed. You are advised to retain the default configuration.</p>

 **Caution**

The local tunnel address and IP address range of the address pool cannot overlap the network segment of the LAN port on the device.

2. Configuring the L2TP over IPsec Server

Choose **Local Device > VPN > L2TP > L2TP Settings**.

After you complete [Basic Settings of L2TP Server](#), enable IPsec encryption on the L2TP server to guarantee communication security. For details on the IPsec configuration, see Section [8.1 Configuring IPsec VPN](#).

L2TP Type Server Client

* Local Tunnel IP


* IP Range 


* DNS Server

Tunnel Authentication Disable Enable

IPSec Security Open Security

* Pre-shared Key

IKE Policy 

Transform Set 

Negotiation Mode Main Mode Aggressive Mode

Local ID Type IP NAME

* PPP Hello Interval seconds

Table 8-9 L2TP over IPsec server configuration

Parameter	Description
Pre-shared Key	Specify the same unique pre-shared key as the credential for mutual authentication between the server and client.
IKE Policy	<p>Select the encryption algorithm, hash algorithm, and DH group ID used by the IKE protocol. To ensure successful IKE negotiation, the two parties engaged in IKE negotiation must have at least one set of consistent IKE policy. The IKE policies on the server and client must be consistent.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Hash algorithm: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ sha1: SHA-1 algorithm ○ md5: MD5 algorithm ● Encryption algorithm: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ des: DES algorithm using 56-bit keys ○ 3des: 3DES algorithm using 168-bit keys ○ aes-128: AES algorithm using 128-bit keys ○ aes-192: AES algorithm using 192-bit keys ○ aes-256: AES algorithm using 256-bit keys ● DH group ID: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ dh1: 768-bit DH group ○ dh2: 1024-bit DH group ○ dh5: 1536-bit DH group
Transform Set	<p>Specify the set of security protocol and algorithms. During IPsec SA negotiation, the two parties use the same transform set to protect specific data flow. The transform set on the server and client must be the same.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Security protocol: The Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) protocol provides data source authentication, data integrity check, and anti-replay functions for IPsec connections and guarantees data confidentiality. ● Verification algorithm: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ sha1: SHA-1 HMAC ○ md5: MD5 HMAC ● Encryption algorithm: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ des: DES algorithm using 56-bit keys ○ 3des: 3DES algorithm using 168-bit keys ○ aes-128: AES algorithm using 128-bit keys ○ aes-192: AES algorithm using 192-bit keys ○ aes-256: AES algorithm using 256-bit keys

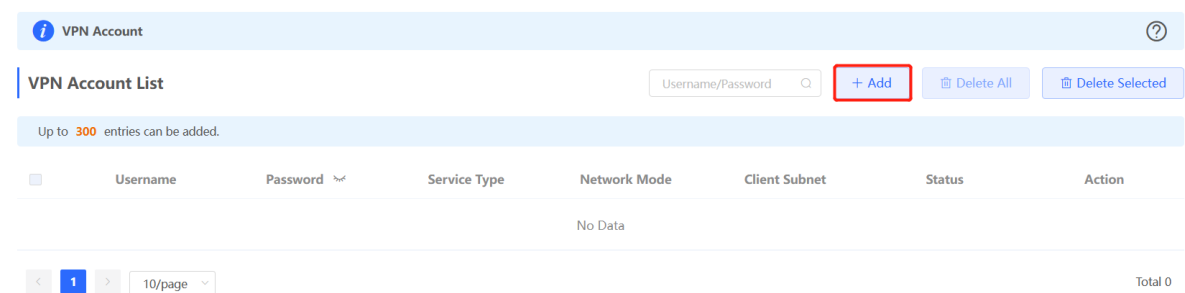
Parameter	Description
Negotiation Mode	<p>Select Main Mode or Aggressive Mode. The negotiation mode on the server and client must be the same.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Main Mode: This mode is applicable to communication between fixed public network IP addresses and point-to-point communication between devices. In this mode, the peer identity is authenticated to provide high security. ● Aggressive Mode: The public network IP addresses obtained by ADSL dial-up users are not fixed and an NAT device may exist. Therefore, the aggressive mode is used to implement NAT traversal. In this mode, you need to set the local and peer ID type to NAME as the IP address is not fixed. The aggressive mode does not authenticate the peer identity, so it has low security.
Local ID Type	<p>Specify the ID type of the local device. The peer ID of the client must be the same as local ID of the server.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● IP: The IP address is used as the identity ID. The ID of the local device is generated automatically. ● NAME: The host character string is used as the identity ID. The ID of the local device is generated automatically. In this case, you also need to configure the host character string that is used as the identity ID. <p>When the WAN port IP address of the server is a private network address, you need to set Local ID Type to NAME and configure DMZ on the external device.</p> <p>When the IP address is not fixed, you need to set Local ID Type to NAME and modify the peer device settings accordingly.</p>
Local ID	<p>When Local ID Type is set to NAME, the host character string is used as the identity ID. The peer ID of the client must be the same as local ID of the server.</p>

3. Configuring L2TP User

Choose **Local Device > VPN > VPN Account**

Only user accounts added to the VPN client list are allowed to dial up to connect to the L2TP server. Therefore, you need to manually configure user accounts for clients to access the L2TP server.

Click **Add**. In the dialog box that appears, set **Service Type** to **L2TP** or **ALL**. (If you select **ALL**, the created account can be used to establish all types of VPN tunnels.) Enter the username, password, and peer subnet, select a network mode, and click **OK**.



Add User
✕

Service Type ALL ▼

* Username Please enter a username.

* Password Please enter a password. 👁

Network Mode PC to Router ▼

Status

Cancel
OK

Table 8-10 L2TP user configuration

Parameter	Description
Username/Password	Specify the name and password of the L2TP user allowed to dial up to connect to the L2TP server. The username and password are used to establish a connection between the server and client.
Network Mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● PC to Router: The dial-up client is an individual. Select this mode when a PC wants to dial up to communicate with the remote PC through the LAN. ● Router to Router: The dial-up client is a user in a network segment. Select this mode when the LANs on two ends of the tunnel need to communicate through router dial-up.
Client Subnet	<p>Specify the IP address range used by the LAN on the peer end of the L2TP tunnel. Generally, the Client Subnet is the IP address network segment of the LAN port on the device. (The LAN network segments of the server and client cannot overlap.)</p> <p>For example, when a branch dials up to connect to the HQ, enter the LAN network segment of the router.</p> <p>Note: When the Network Mode is set to Router to Router, you can click + to set multiple pairs of peer subnets for scenarios where multiple clients are connected to the same server.</p>
Status	Specify whether to enable the user account.

8.2.3 Configuring the L2TP Client

1. Basic Settings of L2TP Client

Choose **Local Device** > **VPN** > **L2TP** > **L2TP Settings**.

Turn on the L2TP function, set **L2TP Type** to **Client**, set L2TP client parameters, and click **Save**.

[L2TP Settings](#) [Tunnel List](#)

L2TP Settings

Enable

L2TP Type Server **Client**

* Username

* Password

Interface

Tunnel IP **Dynamic** Static

* Server Address

* Server Subnet +

Route All Traffic over ?

VPN

Tunnel Authentication **Disable** Enable

IPSec Security **Open** Security

Working Mode **NAT** Router

* PPP Hello Interval seconds

Save

Table 8-11 L2TP client configuration

Parameter	Description
Username/Password	Specify the username and password for identity authentication for communication over the L2TP tunnel. The values must be the same as those configured on the L2TP server.
Interface	Specify the WAN port used by the client.
Tunnel IP	Specify the virtual IP address of the VPN tunnel client. If you select Dynamic , the client obtains an IP address from the server address pool. If you select Static , manually configure an idle static address within the range of the server address pool as the local tunnel IP address.
Server Address	Enter the WAN port IP address or domain name of the server. This address must be a public network IP address.
Server Subnet	Enter the LAN network segment in which clients want to access the server. The value cannot overlap with the LAN network segment of the client.
Route ALL Traffic over VPN	Once this feature is enabled, all traffic will be directed through the VPN connection, that is, VPN is configured as the default route.
Tunnel Authentication	Specify whether to enable L2TP tunnel authentication. If you enable this function, you need to enter tunnel authentication key the same as that configured on the server. By default, tunnel authentication is disabled. To protect tunnel security, you are advised to enable tunnel authentication.
IPsec Security	Specify whether to encrypt the tunnel. If you select Security , the device Enable the L2TP tunnel using IPsec, indicating the L2TP over IPsec mode. The IPsec encryption configuration on the server and client must be consistent. For details, see Configuring the L2TP over IPsec Client .
Working Mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● NAT: Perform NAT traversal on the data packet passing through the L2TP tunnel. That is, replace the source IP address of the data packet with the local virtual IP address of the L2TP tunnel. In NAT mode, the server cannot access the LAN where the client resides. ● Router: Only route the data packet passing through the L2TP tunnel. In router mode, the server can access the LAN where the client resides.
PPP Hello Interval	Specify the interval for sending PPP Hello packets after L2TP VPN is deployed. You are advised to retain the default configuration.

2. Configuring the L2TP over IPsec Client

Choose **Local Device > VPN > L2TP > L2TP Settings**.

After you complete [Basic Settings of L2TP Client](#), enable IPsec encryption on the L2TP client to guarantee communication security. The IPsec encryption configuration on the server and client must be consistent. For details, see [Configuring the L2TP over IPsec Server](#).

Tunnel Authentication Disable Enable

IPSec Security Open Security

* Pre-shared Key

IKE Policy

Transform Set

Negotiation Mode Main Mode Aggressive Mode

Peer ID Type IP Address NAME

Working Mode NAT Router

* PPP Hello Interval seconds

8.2.4 Viewing the L2TP Tunnel Information

Choose **Local Device > VPN > L2TP > Tunnel List**.

It takes some time to establish a VPN connection between the server and client. After the configuration of the server and client is completed, wait for 1 to 2 minutes to refresh the page and view the L2TP tunnel establishment status.

L2TP Settings [Tunnel List](#)

i Tunnel List ?

	Username	Server/Client	Tunnel Name	Virtual Local IP	Access Server IP	Peer Virtual IP	DNS	Status	Action
No Data									

Total 0

Table 8-12 L2TP tunnel information

Parameter	Description
Username	Indicate the username used by the client for identity authentication.
Server/Client	Indicate the role of the current device, which is client or server.
Tunnel Name	Indicate the name of the vNIC generated by L2TP.
Virtual Local IP	Indicate the local virtual IP address of the tunnel. The virtual IP address of the L2TP client is allocated by the L2TP server.
Access Server IP	Indicate the real IP address of the peer connecting to the L2TP tunnel.
Peer Virtual IP	Indicate the peer virtual IP address of the tunnel. The virtual IP address of the L2TP client is allocated by the L2TP server.
DNS	Indicate the DNS server address allocated by the L2TP server.

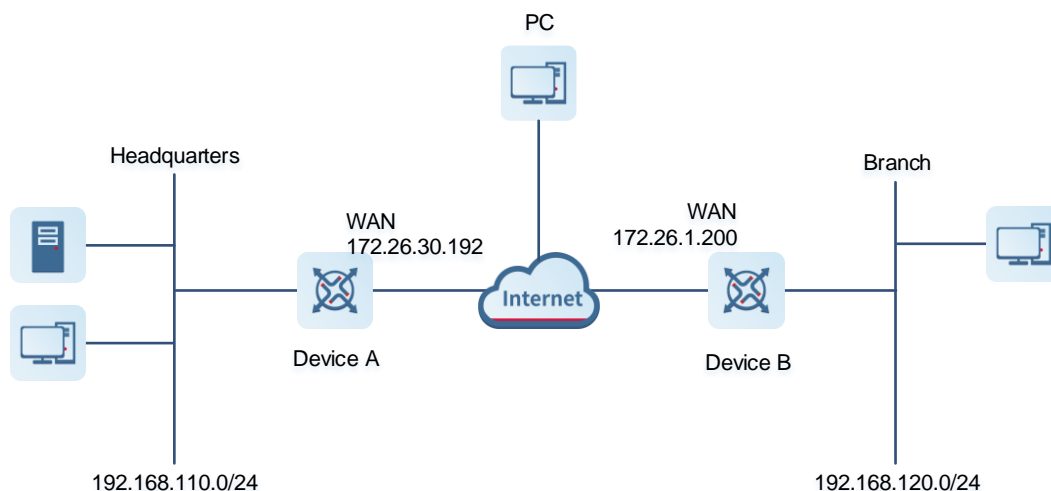
8.2.5 Typical Configuration Example

1. Networking Requirements

An enterprise wants to establish an L2TP tunnel to allow its traveling employees and branch employees to access the servers deployed in the HQ LAN.

- Traveling employees want to access the HQ servers from their PCs through L2TP VPN.
- Branch employees need to frequently access documents on the HQ servers. The enterprise wants to deploy the branch router (Device B) as the L2TP client, so that branch employees can dial up to transparently and directly access documents on the HQ servers, as if they are accessing servers inside the branch.

2. Networking Diagram



3. Configuration Roadmap

- Configure the HQ gateway Device A as the L2TP server.
- Configure the branch gateway Device B as the L2TP client.
- Configure the PC of the traveling employee as the L2TP client.

4. Configuration Steps

- (1) Configure the HQ gateway.

Note

The LAN address of the HQ cannot conflict with that of the branch. Otherwise, resource access will fail.

- a Log in to the web management system and choose **VPN > L2TP > L2TP Settings** to access the L2TP Settings page.

The screenshot displays the 'L2TP Settings' configuration page in the Ruijie Rcycc web management system. The page is titled 'Local Device(EG3)'. The left sidebar contains a navigation menu with the following items: Device Overview, Online Clients, Network, Security, Behavior, VPN, IPSec, L2TP, PPTP, OpenVPN, VPN Account, Advanced, Diagnostics, and System. The main content area shows the 'L2TP Settings' page with the following configuration options:

- Enable:** A toggle switch is turned on.
- L2TP Type:** Radio buttons for 'Server' (selected) and 'Client'.
- * Local Tunnel IP:** A text input field with the example value '1.1.1.1'.
- * IP Range:** A text input field with the example value '1.1.1.2-1.1.1.100' and a help icon.
- * DNS Server:** A text input field with the example value '1.1.1.1'.
- Tunnel Authentication:** Radio buttons for 'Disable' (selected) and 'Enable'.
- IPSec Security:** Radio buttons for 'Open' (selected) and 'Security'.
- Flow Control:** Radio buttons for 'Disable' (selected) and 'Enable'.
- * PPP Hello Interval:** A text input field with the value '10' and the unit 'seconds'.

A blue 'Save' button is located at the bottom of the configuration area.

- b Turn on the L2TP function, set L2TP Type to Server, enter the local tunnel address, address pool IP address range, and DNS server address, specify whether to enable IPsec encryption and tunnel authentication, and click Save.

[L2TP Settings](#) Tunnel List

L2TP Settings

Enable

L2TP Type Server Client

* Local Tunnel IP


* IP Range 


* DNS Server

Tunnel Authentication Disable Enable

IPSec Security Open Security

* Pre-shared Key

IKE Policy 

Transform Set 

Negotiation Mode Main Mode Aggressive Mode

Local ID Type IP Address NAME

Flow Control Disable Enable

* PPP Hello Interval seconds

Save


Table 8-13 L2TP server configuration

Parameter	Description
Local Tunnel IP	Enter an IP address not in the LAN network segment. The PC can dial up to access the server through this IP address.
IP Range	Enter an IP address range not in the LAN network segment, which is used to allocate IP addresses to clients.
DNS Server	Enter an available DNS server address.
Tunnel Authentication	By default, tunnel authentication is disabled. After this function is enabled, the server and client can be connected only when they use the same tunnel key. You can keep tunnel authentication disabled.
IPsec Security	Specify whether to encrypt the L2TP tunnel using the IPsec protocol. You are advised to select Security to guarantee data security. If an IPsec security policy is enabled on the current device, you cannot enable IPsec encryption for the L2TP tunnel. If you want to configure L2TP over IPsec, disable the IPsec security policy first.
Pre-shared Key	Enter the key for IPsec authentication. The client can access the server only when the same pre-shared key is configured on the client.
IKE Policy Transform Set Negotiation Mode Local ID Type Local ID	Keep the default settings unless otherwise specified.
PPP Hello Interval	Keep the default settings unless otherwise specified.

- c Choose **VPN > VPN Account** and add L2TP user accounts for the traveling employee and branch employee to access the HQ.

For the traveling employee account, set **Network Mode** to **PC to Router**.

For the branch employee account, set **Network Mode** to **Router to Router** and **Peer Subnet** to the LAN network segment of the branch gateway, which is 192.168.120.0/24.

 **Caution**

The LAN network segments of the server and client cannot overlap.

Add User ×

Service Type: L2TP

* Username: branch

* Password:

Network Mode: Router to Router

* Client Subnet: 192.168.120.0/24 +

Status:

Cancel OK

Add User ×

Service Type: L2TP

* Username: pc@l2tp

* Password:

Network Mode: PC to Router

Status:

Cancel OK

VPN Client List Username/Password

Up to 100 entries can be added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Username	Password	Service Type	Network Mode	Peer Subnet	Status	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	test	test	ALL	PC to Router	-	Enable	Edit Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	branch	branch	L2TP	Router to Router	192.168.120.0/24	Enable	Edit Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	pc@l2tp	pc@l2tp	L2TP	PC to Router	-	Enable	Edit Delete

- (2) Configure the branch gateway.
- a Log in to the web management system and access the L2TP Settings page.
 - b Turn on the L2TP function, set L2TP Type to Client, enter the username and password configured on the server, server address, and LAN network segment of the peer, configure IPsec encryption parameters the same as those on the server, and click Save.

[L2TP Settings](#) Tunnel List

i L2TP Settings

Enable

L2TP Type Server Client

* Username

* Password 

Interface 

Tunnel IP Dynamic Static

* Server Address

* Server Subnet 

Route All Traffic over  

VPN

Tunnel Authentication Disable Enable

IPSec Security Open Security

* Pre-shared Key

IKE Policy

Transform Set

Negotiation Mode Main Mode Aggressive Mode

Peer ID Type IP Address NAME

Working Mode NAT Router

* PPP Hello Interval seconds

Save

Table 8-14 L2TP client configuration

Parameter	Description
Username/Password	Enter the username and password configured on the server.
Interface	Select the WAN port on the client to establish a tunnel with the server.
Tunnel IP	Select Dynamic to automatically obtain the tunnel IP address. You can also select Static and enter an IP address in the address pool of the server.
Server Address	Enter the WAN port address of the server, which is 172.26.30.192.
Server Subnet	Enter the LAN network segment (LAN port IP address range) of the server, which is 192.168.110.0/24.
Tunnel Authentication	The value must be the same as that on the server. In this example, you need to disable tunnel authentication.

Parameter	Description
IPsec Security	The value must be the same as that on the server. In this example, you need to set this parameter to Security .
Pre-shared Key	Enter the pre-shared key configured on the server.
IKE Policy Transform Set Negotiation Mode Peer ID Type Peer ID	The settings must be the same as those on the server. Set Peer ID Type to the same value as that of Local ID Type on the server.
Working Mode	If the HQ wants to access the LAN of the branch, set this parameter to Router .
PPP Hello Interval	Specify the interval for sending PPP Hello packets after L2TP VPN is deployed. Keep the default settings.

(3) Configure the PC of the traveling employee.

 Note

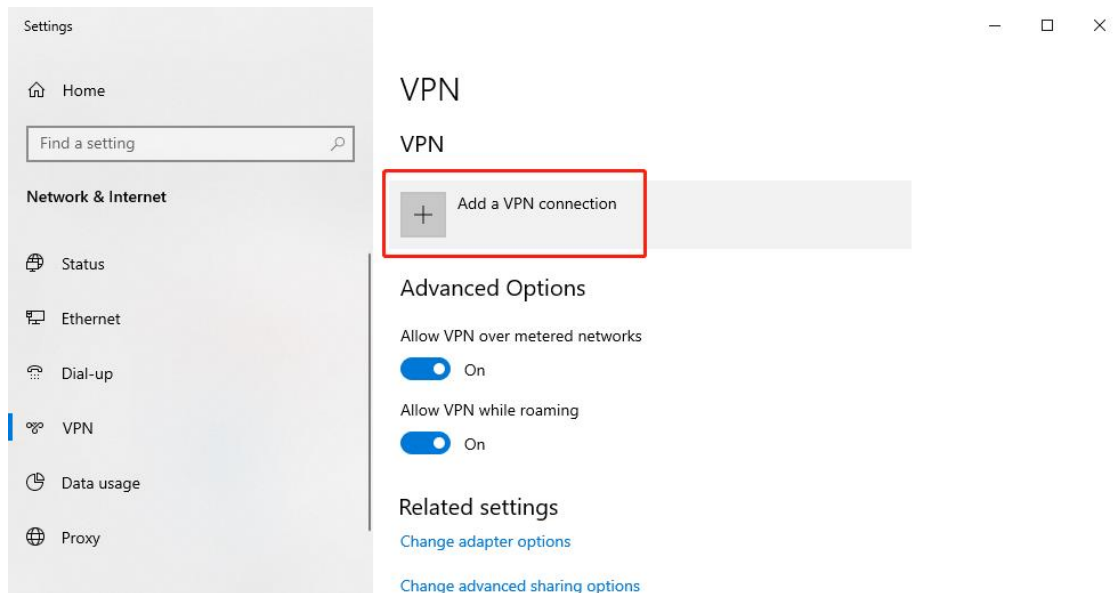
Configure the PC of a traveling employee as the L2TP client. The following uses the PC running Windows 10 operating system as an example.

The Windows XP (shorted as XP) system and Windows 7/Windows 10 (shorted as Win7/10) system differ in their support for L2TP VPN: To enable L2TP VPN in the XP system, you need to modify the service registries. L2TP is supported in the Win7/10 system by default, without the need to modify registries.

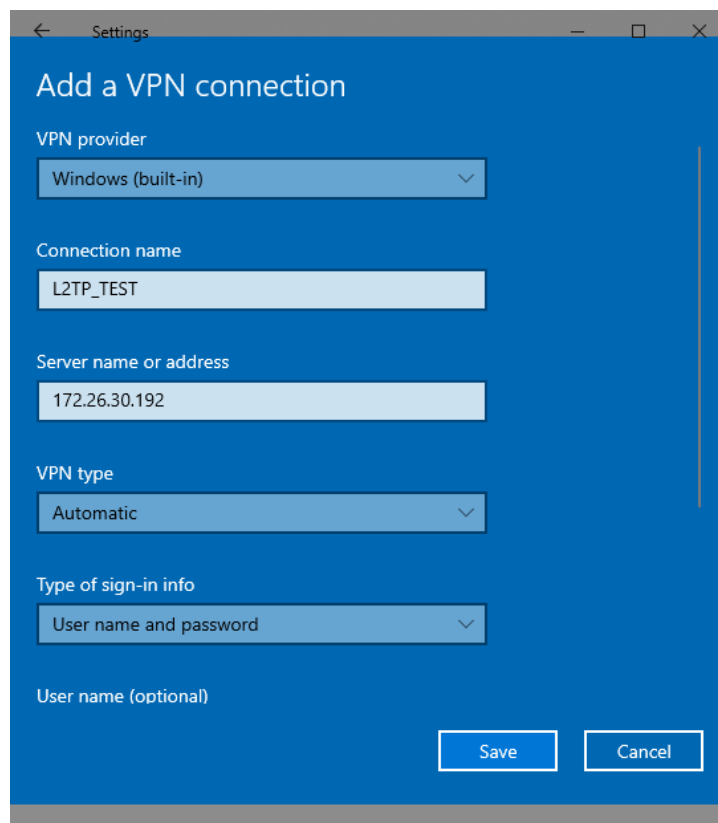
Neither the Win7/Win10 system nor the XP system supports L2TP tunnel authentication. Therefore, tunnel authentication must be disabled on the server.

Apple mobile phones support L2TP over IPsec but do not support IPsec encryption for L2TP dial-up.

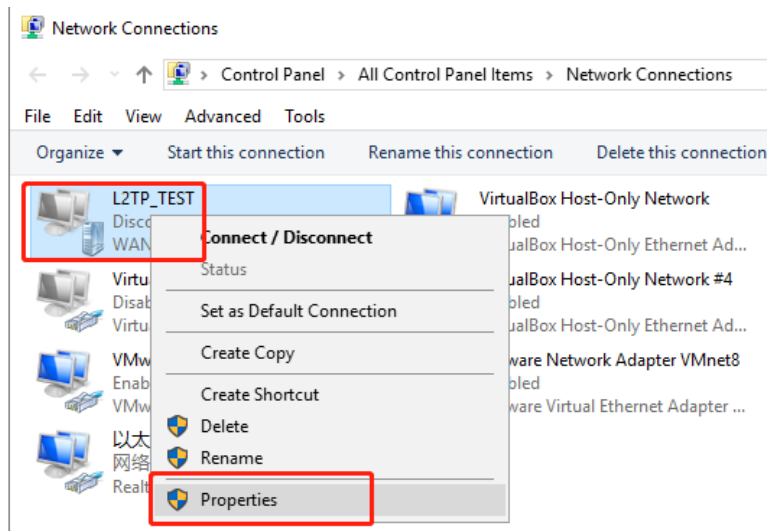
a Choose **Settings > Network & Internet > VPN** to access the VPN page.



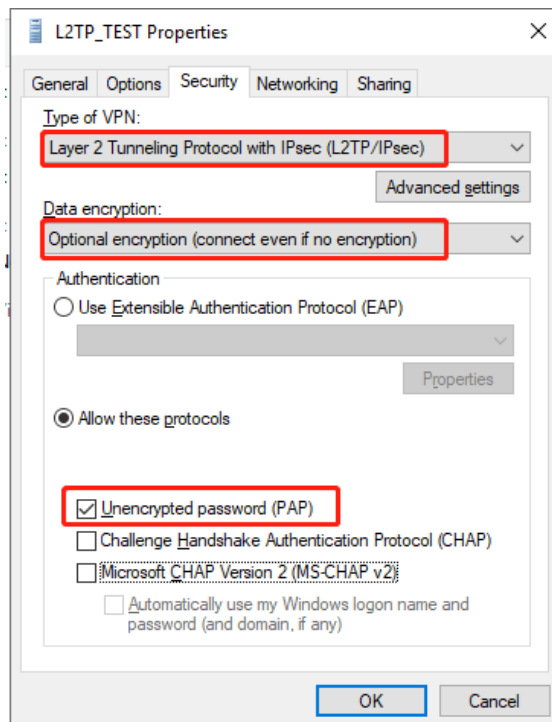
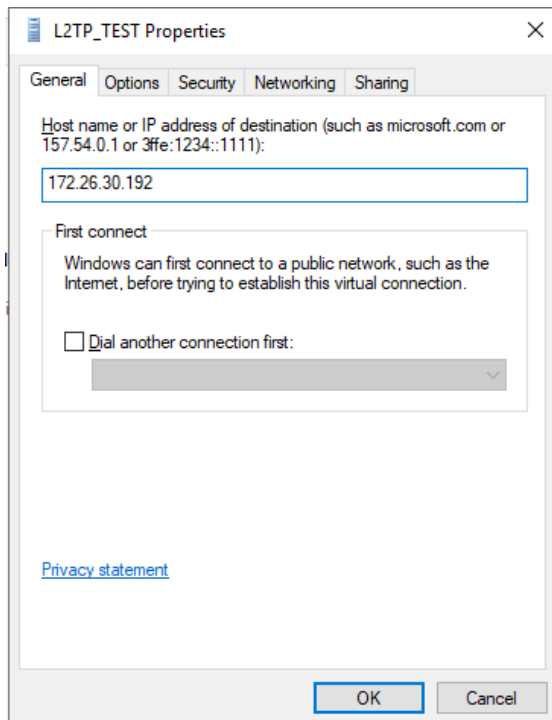
- b Click **Add a VPN connection**. In the dialog box that appears, set VPN provider to **Windows**, enter the connection name and server address or domain name, and click **Save**.



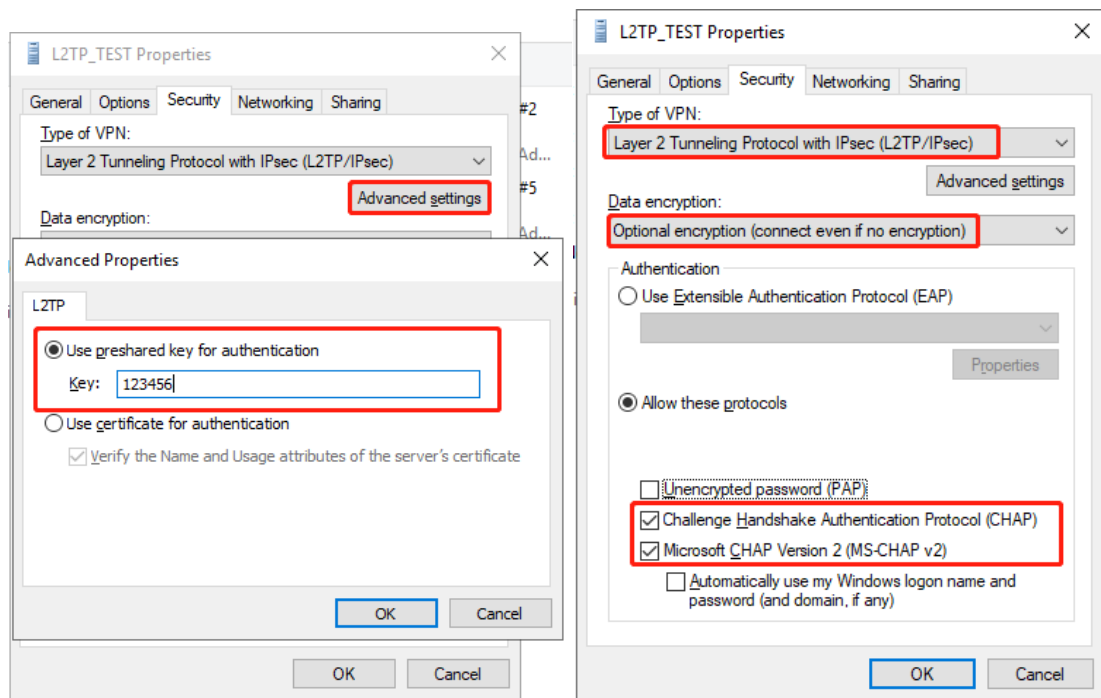
- c Right-click the created VPN connection named **L2TP_TEST** and select Properties to view the properties of the network connection.



- d In the dialog box that appears, click the **Security** tab, and set **Type of VPN** to **Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol with IPsec (L2TP/IPsec)** and **Data encryption** to **Optional encryption (connect even if no encryption)**. If IPsec encryption is not enabled on the L2TP server, select **Unencrypted password (PAP)** and click **OK**. Skip Step e .
- If IPsec encryption is enabled on the L2TP server, perform Step e .




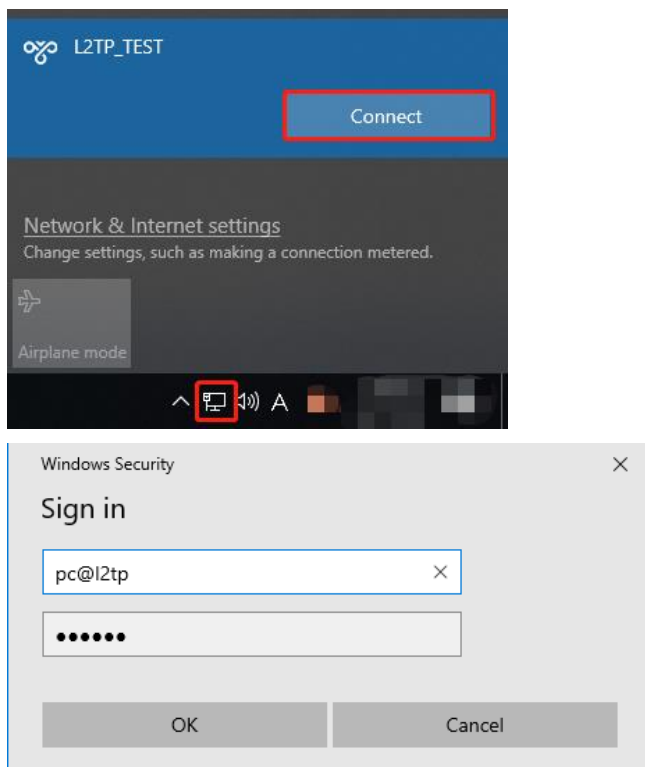
- e If IPsec encryption is enabled on the server, select **CHAP** and **MS-CHAP v2** as the identity authentication protocols and click **Advanced settings**. In the dialog box that appears, configure the pre-shared key the same as that on the server. After completing the configuration, click **OK**.



Note

The device does not support EAP for identity authentication. Therefore, you cannot select EAP-related identity authentication options in the Windows client. Otherwise, the VPN connection fails.

- f After the L2TP client configuration is completed on the PC, initiate a VPN connection on the PC. Click the network icon  in the task bar, select the created L2TP VPN connection, and click Connect. In the dialog box that appears, enter the username and password configured on the server.



5. Verifying Configuration

- (1) After the server and client are configured, wait for about 1 minute. If you can view the L2TP tunnel connection information on the HQ server and branch client, the connection is successful.

HQ:

L2TP Settings [Tunnel List](#)

Tunnel List								
	Username	Server/Client	Tunnel Name	Virtual Local IP	Access Server IP	Peer Virtual IP	DNS	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	pc@l2tp	Server	ppp2	20.0.0.1	172.26.1.200	20.1.1.3	114.114.114.114	Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	branch	Server	ppp0	20.0.0.1	172.26.1.200	20.1.1.2	114.114.114.114	Delete

Branch:

Tunnel List								
	Username	Server/Client	Tunnel Name	Virtual Local IP	Access Server IP	Peer Virtual IP	DNS	Action
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	branch	Client	l2tp	20.1.1.2	172.26.30.192	20.0.0.1	114.114.114.114	Delete

- (2) Ping the LAN address of the peer from the HQ or branch. The HQ and branch can successfully communicate. The PC of the traveling employee and the PC of the branch employee can access the HQ server.

```
Administrator: C:\Windows\system32\cmd.exe

C:\Users\Administrator>ping 192.168.110.1

Pinging 192.168.110.1 with 32 bytes of data:
Reply from 192.168.110.1: bytes=32 time=2ms TTL=64
Reply from 192.168.110.1: bytes=32 time=2ms TTL=64
Reply from 192.168.110.1: bytes=32 time=2ms TTL=64
Reply from 192.168.110.1: bytes=32 time=2ms TTL=64

Ping statistics for 192.168.110.1:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
        Minimum = 2ms, Maximum = 2ms, Average = 2ms
```

8.2.6 Solution to L2TP VPN Connection Failure

- (1) Run the ping command to test the connectivity between the client and server. For details, see Section [9.9.3 Network Tools](#). If the ping fails, check the network connection settings. Check whether the branch EG can ping to HQ EG. If the ping fails, check the network connection between the two EGs.

Choose **Diagnostics > Network Tools**. Then, you can start the ping operation. For details, see Section [9.9.3 Network Tools](#).

- (2) Check whether the username and password used by the client are the same as those configured on the server.
- (3) Check whether the WAN port IP address of your HQ EG is a public network IP address. If not, you need to configure DMZ on your egress gateway.

8.3 Configuring PPTP VPN

8.3.1 Overview

Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol (PPTP) is an enhanced security protocol designed based on the Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP). It allows an enterprise to use private tunnels to expand its enterprise network over the public network. PPTP relies on the PPP protocol to implement security functions such as encryption and identity authentication. Generally, PPTP works with Password Authentication Protocol (PAP), Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP), Microsoft Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (MS-CHAPv1/v2), or Extensible Authentication Protocol-Transport Layer Security (EAP-TLS) for identity authentication and Microsoft Point-to-Point Encryption (MPPE) for encryption to improve security.

Currently, the device can be deployed as the PPTP server or client. It supports MPPE for encryption MSCHAP-v2 for identity authentication, and does not support EAP authentication.

8.3.2 Configuring the PPTP Service

1. Configuring the PPTP Server

Choose **Local Device > VPN > PPTP > PPTP Settings**.

Turn on the PPTP function, set **PPTP Type** to **Server**, configure PPTP server parameters, and click **Save**.

PPTP Settings

Tunnel List

i PPTP Settings

Enable

PPTP Type Server Client

* Local Tunnel IP

* IP Range ?

* DNS Server

MPPE Disable Enable


Flow Control Disable Enable

* PPP Hello Interval seconds

Table 8-15 PPTP server configuration

Parameter	Description
Local Tunnel IP	Specify the local virtual IP address of the L2TP server. Clients can dial up to access the L2TP server through this address.
IP Range	Specify the address pool used by the PPTP server to allocate IP addresses to clients.
DNS Server	Specify the DNS server address pushed by the PPTP server to clients.

Parameter	Description
MPPE	<p>Specify whether to use MPPE to encrypt the PPTP tunnel.</p> <p>After MPPE is enabled on the server: If Data encryption is set to Optional encryption on the client, the server and client can be connected but the server does not encrypt packets. If Data encryption is set to Require encryption on the client, the server and client can be connected and the server encrypts packets. If Data encryption is set to No encryption allowed on the client, the server and client cannot be connected.</p> <p>If MPPE is disabled on the server but the client requires encryption, the server and client connection fails.</p> <p>By default, MPPE is disabled on the server. After you enable MPPE, the bandwidth performance of the device degrades. You are advised to keep MPPE disabled if there are no special security requirements.</p>
Flow Control	<p>The VPN server has a lower priority to control the traffic of the client than the custom policy. The VPN server can only limit the maximum uplink and downlink bandwidth per user for the client. For details, see 7.6.2 Smart Flow Control.</p>
PPP Hello Interval	<p>Specify the interval for sending PPP Hello packets after PPTP VPN is deployed.</p>

 **Caution**

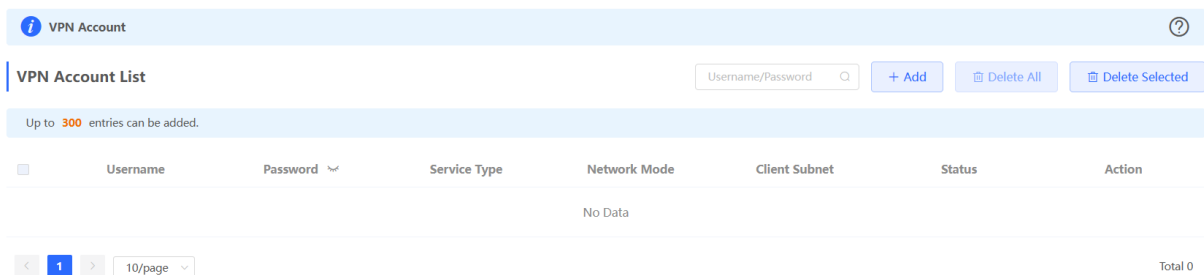
The local tunnel address and IP address range of the address pool cannot overlap the network segment of the LAN port on the device.

2. Configuring PPTP User

Choose **Local Device > VPN > VPN Account**.

Only user accounts added to the VPN client list are allowed to dial up to connect to the PPTP server. Therefore, you need to manually configure user accounts for clients to access the PPTP server.

Click **Add**. In the dialog box that appears, set **Service Type** to **PPTP** or **ALL**. (If you select **ALL**, the created account can be used to establish all types of VPN tunnels.) Enter the username, password, and peer subnet, select a network mode, and click **OK**.



Add User
×

Service Type ALL ▼

* Username Please enter a username.

* Password Please enter a password. 👁

Network Mode PC to Router ▼

Status

Cancel
OK

Table 8-16 PPTP user configuration

Parameter	Description
Username/Password	Specify the name and password of the PPTP user allowed to dial up to connect to the PPTP server. The username and password are used to establish a connection between the server and client.
Network Mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● PC to Router: The dial-up client is an individual. Select this mode when a PC wants to dial up to communicate with the remote PC through the LAN. ● Router to Router: The dial-up client is a user in a network segment. Select this mode when the LANs on two ends of the tunnel need to communicate through router dial-up.
Client Subnet	<p>Specify the IP address range used by the LAN on the peer end of the PPTP tunnel. Generally, the peer subnet is the IP address network segment of the LAN port on the device. (The LAN network segments of the server and client cannot overlap.)</p> <p>For example, when a branch dials up to connect to the HQ, enter the LAN network segment of the router.</p> <p>Note: When the Network Mode is set to Router to Router, you can click + to set multiple pairs of peer subnets for scenarios where multiple clients are connected to the same server.</p>
Status	Specify whether to enable the user account.

8.3.3 Configuring the PPTP Client

Choose **Local Device > VPN > PPTP > PPTP Settings**.

Turn on the PPTP function, set **PPTP Type** to **Client**, configure PPTP client parameters, and click **Save**.

PPTP Settings Tunnel List

PPTP Settings

Enable

PPTP Type Server Client

* Username

* Password

Interface

Tunnel IP Dynamic Static

* Server Address

* Server Subnet +

Route All Traffic over ?

VPN

MPPE Disable Enable

Working Mode NAT Router

* PPP Hello Interval seconds

Save

Table 8-17 PPTP client configuration

Parameter	Description
Username/Password	Specify the username and password for identity authentication for communication over the PPTP tunnel. The values must be the same as those configured on the PPTP server.
Interface	Specify the WAN port used by the client.

Parameter	Description
Tunnel IP	Specify the virtual IP address of the VPN tunnel client. If you select Dynamic , the client obtains an IP address from the server address pool. If you select Static , manually configure an idle static address within the range of the server address pool as the local tunnel IP address.
Server Address	Enter the WAN port IP address or domain name of the server. This address must be a public network IP address.
Server Subnet	Enter the LAN network segment in which clients want to access the server. The value cannot overlap with the LAN network segment of the client.
MPPE	Specify whether to use MPPE to encrypt the PPTP tunnel. The value must be the same as that on the server.
Working Mode	NAT: The client can access the server network, but the server cannot access the client network. Router: The server can access the client network.
PPP Hello Interval	Specify the interval for sending PPP Hello packets after a PPTP tunnel is established. You are advised to retain the default configuration.

8.3.4 Viewing the PPTP Tunnel Information

Choose **Local Device > VPN > PPTP > Tunnel List**.

It takes some time to establish a VPN connection between the server and client. After the configuration of the server and client is completed, wait for 1 to 2 minutes to refresh the page and view the PPTP tunnel establishment status.

PPTP Settings [Tunnel List](#)

Tunnel List ⓘ ?

[Export Log File](#) [Delete Selected](#)

<input type="checkbox"/>	Username	Server/Client	Tunnel Name	Virtual Local IP	Access Server IP	Peer Virtual IP	DNS	Status	Action
No Data									

< **1** > 10/page Total 0

Table 8-18 PPTP tunnel information

Parameter	Description
Username	Indicate the username used by the client for identity authentication.

Parameter	Description
Server/Client	Indicate the role of the current device, which is client or server.
Tunnel Name	Indicate the name of the vNIC generated by PPTP.
Virtual Local IP	Indicate the local virtual IP address of the tunnel. The virtual IP address of the PPTP client is allocated by the PPTP server.
Access Server IP	Indicate the real IP address of the peer connecting to the PPTP tunnel.
Peer Virtual IP	Indicate the peer virtual IP address of the tunnel. The virtual IP address of the PPTP client is allocated by the PPTP server.
DNS	Indicate the DNS server address allocated by the PPTP server.

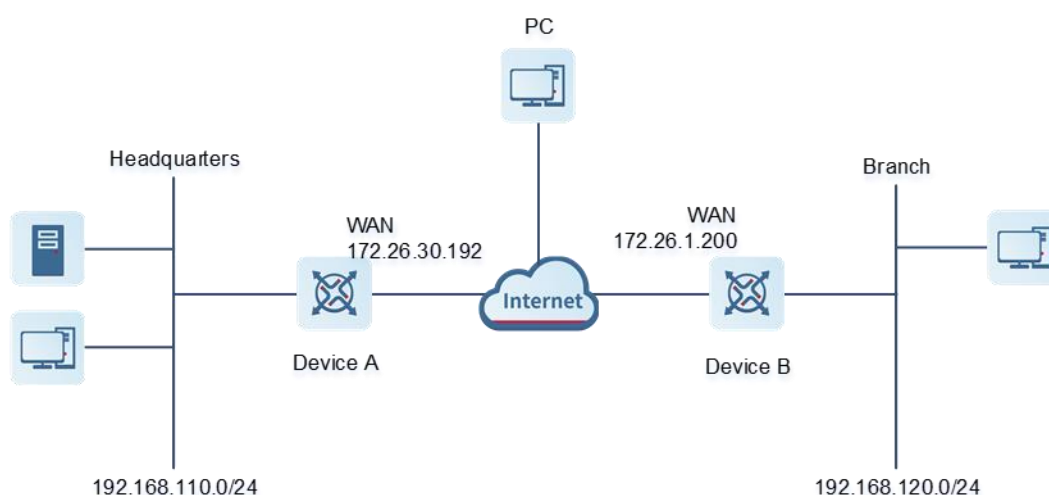
8.3.5 Typical Configuration Example

1. Networking Requirements

An enterprise wants to establish a PPTP tunnel to allow its traveling employees and branch employees to access the servers deployed in the HQ LAN.

- Traveling employees want to access the HQ servers from their PCs through PPTP dial-up.
- Branch employees need to frequently access documents on the HQ servers. The enterprise wants to deploy the branch router (Device B) as the PPTP client, so that branch employees can dial up to transparently and directly access documents on the HQ servers, as if they are accessing servers inside the branch.

2. Networking Diagram



3. Configuration Roadmap

- Configure the HQ gateway Device A as the PPTP server.

- Configure the branch gateway Device B as the PPTP client.
- Configure the PC of the traveling employee as the PPTP client.

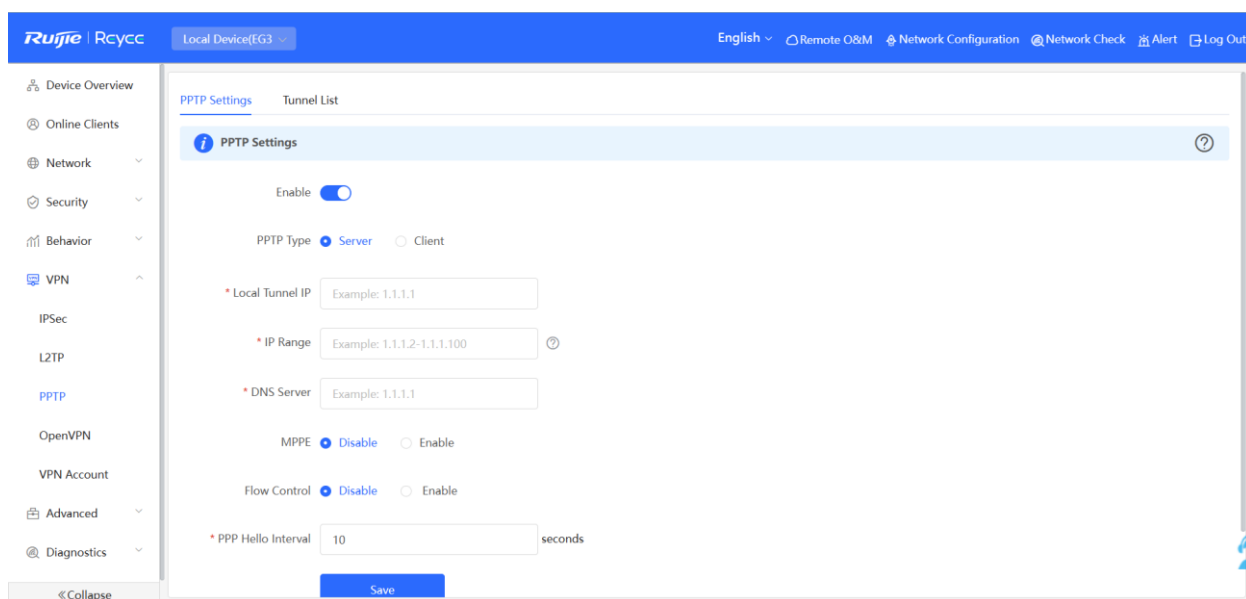
4. Configuration Steps

- (1) Configure the HQ gateway.

Note

The LAN address of the HQ cannot conflict with that of the branch. Otherwise, resource access will fail.

- a Log in to the web management system and choose VPN > PPTP > PPTP Settings to access the PPTP Settings page.



- b Turn on the PPTP function, set PPTP Type to Server, enter the local tunnel address, address pool IP address range, and DNS server address, specify whether to enable MPPE encryption, and click Save.

PPTP Settings

Tunnel List

i **PPTP Settings**

Enable

PPTP Type Server Client

* Local Tunnel IP

* IP Range ?

* DNS Server

MPPE Disable Enable

Flow Control Disable Enable

* PPP Hello Interval seconds

Save

Table 8-19 PPTP server configuration


Parameter	Description
Local Tunnel IP	Enter an IP address not in the LAN network segment. The PC can dial up to access the server through this IP address.
IP Range	Enter an IP address range not in the LAN network segment, which is used to allocate IP addresses to clients.

Parameter	Description
DNS Server	Enter an available DNS server address.
MPPE	Specify whether to use MPPE to encrypt the PPTP tunnel. The value must be the same as that on the client. After you enable MPPE, the device security is improved but the bandwidth performance of the device degrades. You are advised to keep MPPE disabled if there are no special security requirements.
Flow control	Flow control is disabled by default.
PPP Hello Interval	Keep the default settings unless otherwise specified.

- c Choose **VPN > VPN Account** and add PPTP user accounts for the traveling employee and branch employee to access the HQ.

For the traveling employee account, set **Network Mode** to **PC to Router**.

For the branch employee account, set **Network Mode** to **Router to Router** and **Client Subnet** to the LAN network segment of the branch gateway.

 **Caution**

The LAN network segments of the server and client cannot overlap.

Add User



Service Type

* Username

* Password

Network Mode

* Client Subnet +

Status

Add User ✕

Service Type

* Username

* Password

Network Mode

Status

VPN Account List Username/Password

Up to 300 entries can be added.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Username	Password	Service Type	Network Mode	Client Subnet	Status	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	pc@pptp	*****	PPTP	PC to Router	-	Enable	Edit Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	branch	*****	PPTP	Router to Router	192.168.120.0/24	Enable	Edit Delete

Total 2

(2) Configure the branch gateway.

- a Log in to the web management system and access the PPTP Settings page.
- b Turn on the PPTP function, set PPTP Type to Client, enter the username and password configured on the server, server address, and LAN network segment of the peer, configure IPsec encryption parameters the same as those on the server, and click Save.

[PPTP Settings](#) [Tunnel List](#)

PPTP Settings

Enable

PPTP Type Server Client

* Username

* Password

Interface

Tunnel IP Dynamic Static

* Server Address

* Server Subnet +

Route All Traffic over ?

VPN

MPPE Disable Enable

Working Mode NAT Router

* PPP Hello Interval seconds

[Save](#)

Table 8-20 PPTP client configuration

Parameter	Description
Username/Password	Enter the username and password configured on the server.
Interface	Select the WAN port on the client to establish a tunnel with the server.
Tunnel IP	Select Dynamic to automatically obtain the tunnel IP address. You can also select Static and enter an IP address in the address pool of the server.

Parameter	Description
Server Address	Enter the WAN port address of the server.
Server Subnet	Enter the LAN network segment (LAN port IP address range) of the server.
MPPE	The value must be the same as that on the server.
Working Mode	If the HQ wants to access the LAN of the branch, set this parameter to Router .
PPP Hello Interval	Specify the interval for sending PPP Hello packets after PPTP VPN is deployed. Keep the default settings.

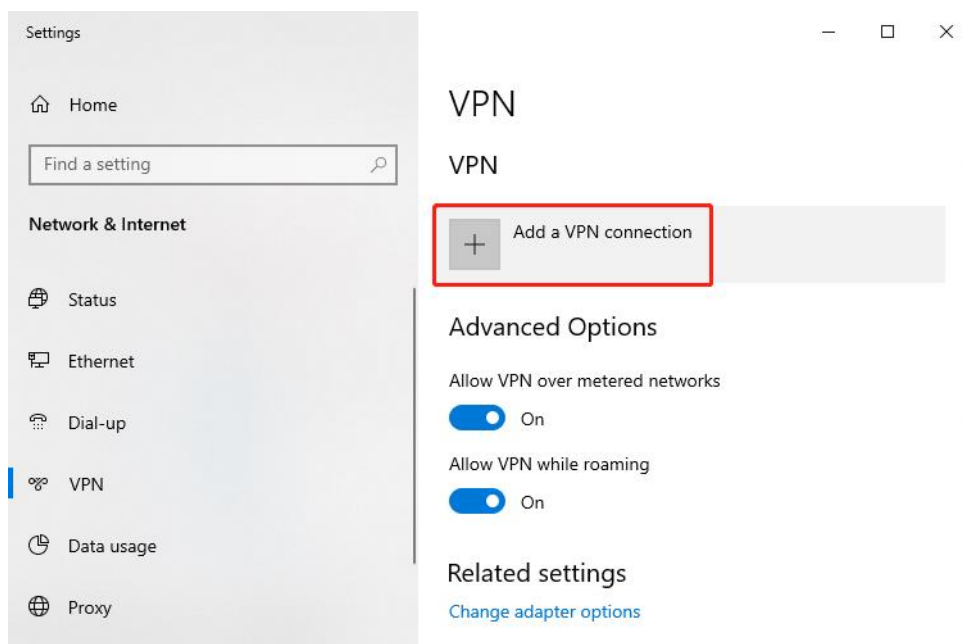
(3) Configure the PC of the traveling employee.

i Note

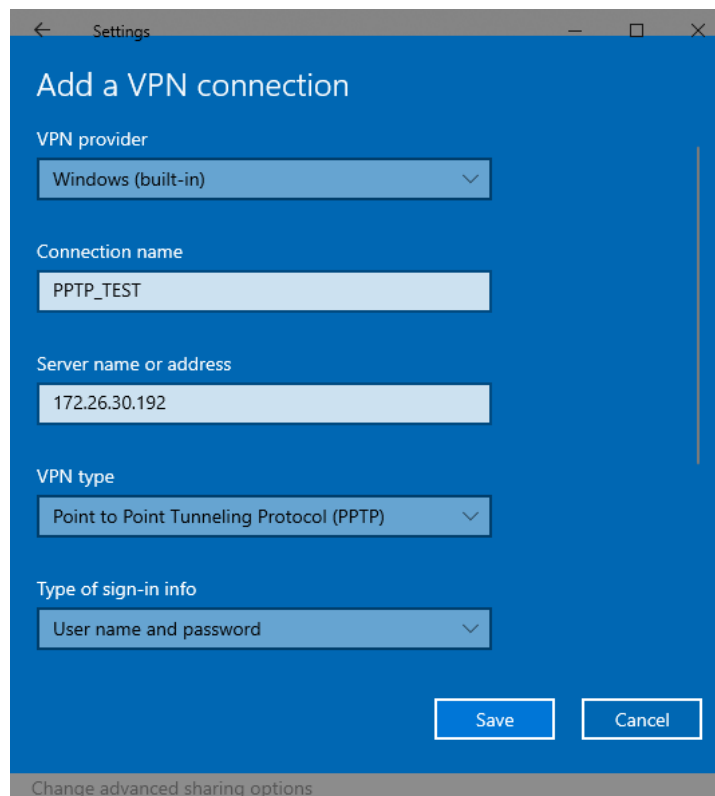
Configure the PC of a traveling employee as the PPTP client. The following uses the PC running Windows 10 operating system as an example.

Enable ports 1723 (PPTP) and 47 (GRE) on the PC firewall.

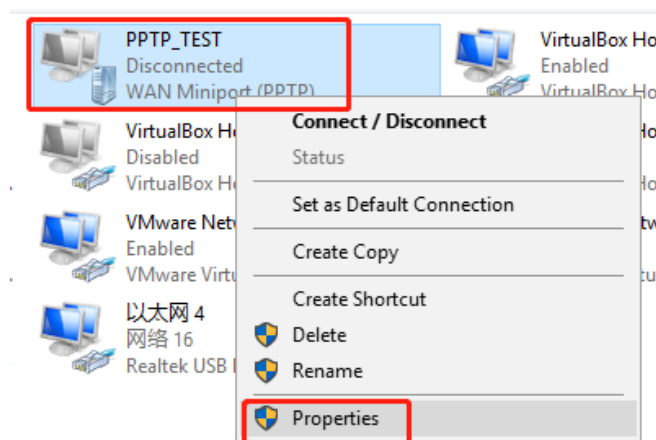
a Choose Settings > Network & Internet > VPN to access the VPN page.



b Click **Add a VPN connection**. In the dialog box that appears, set VPN provider to **Windows** and VPN type to **Point to Point Tunneling Protocol (PPTP)**, enter the connection name and server address or domain name, and click **Save**.



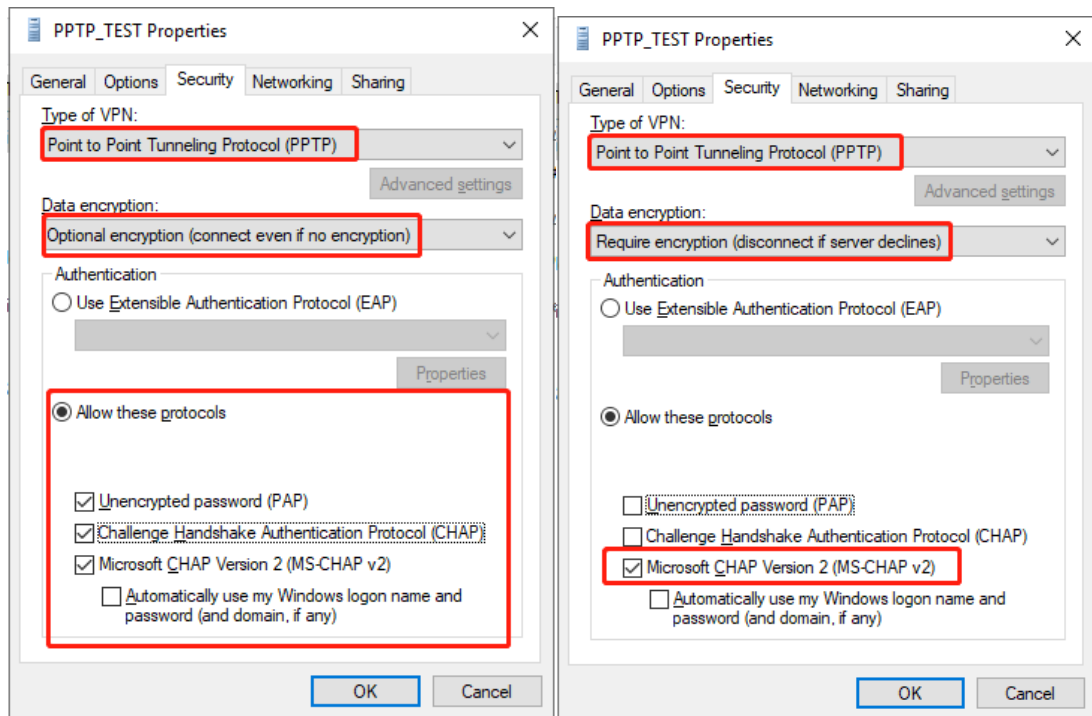
- c Right-click the created VPN connection named **PPTP_TEST** and select Properties to view the properties of the network connection.



- d In the dialog box that appears, click the **Security** tab.

If MPPE is not enabled on the PPTP server, set **Data encryption** to **Optional encryption** or **No encryption allowed** and use PAP, CHAP, or MS-CHAP v2 for identity authentication, as shown in the following figure on the left.

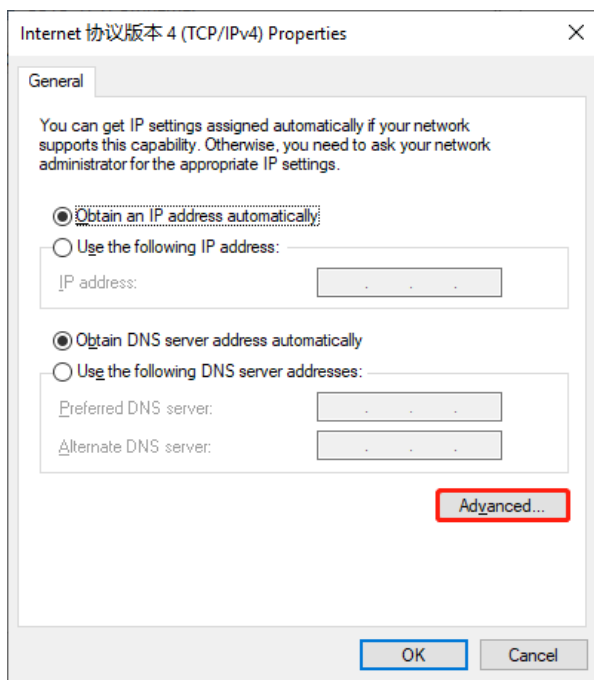
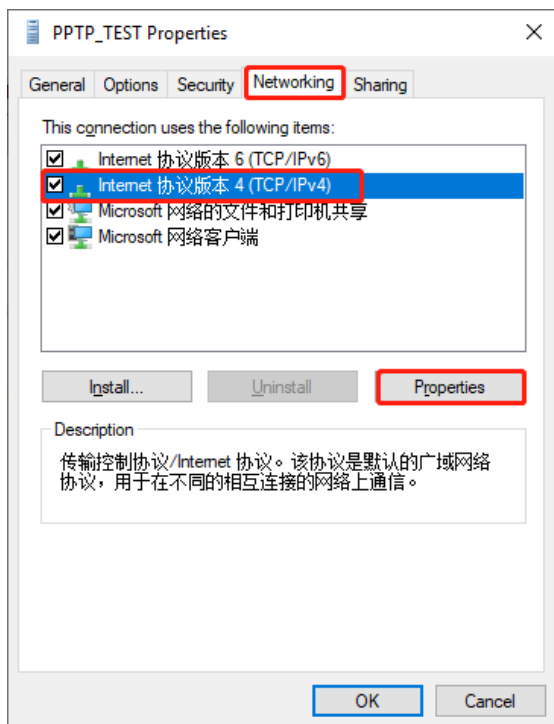
If MPPE is enabled on the PPTP server, set **Data encryption** to **Require encryption** or **Maximum strength encryption** and use MS-CHAP v2 for identity authentication, as shown in the following figure on the right.

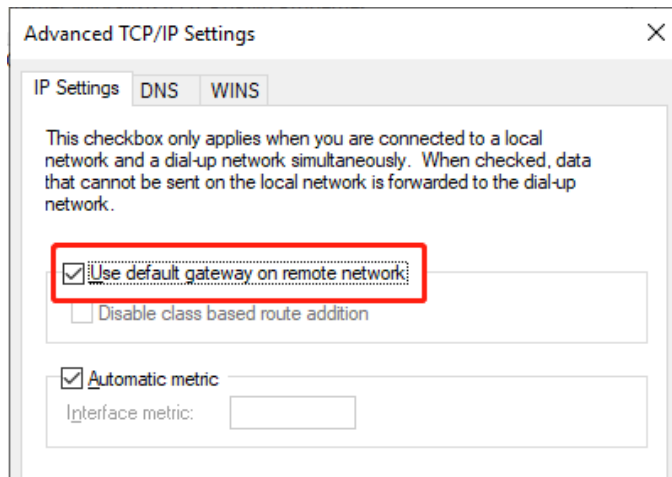



Note

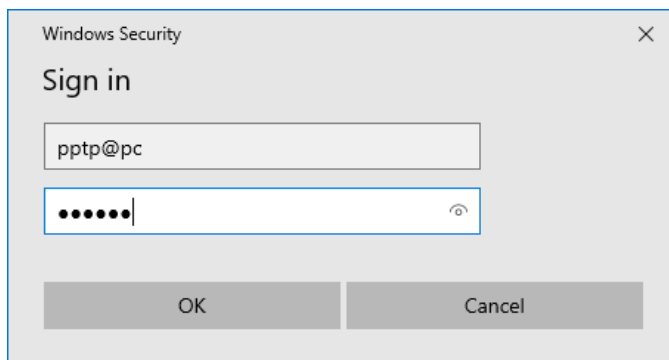
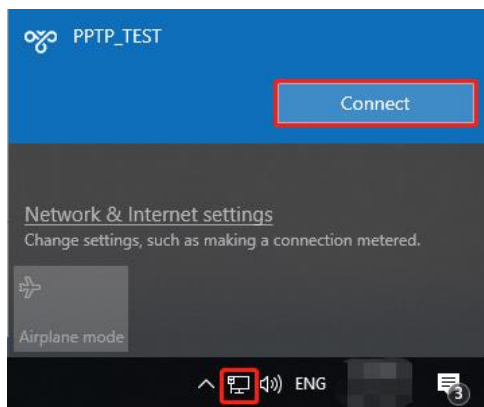
The device does not support EAP for identity authentication. Therefore, you cannot select EAP-related identity authentication options in the Windows client. Otherwise, the VPN connection fails.

- e When the PC functions as a dial-up client, configure the PC by using either of the following methods:
 - o Add a route to the VPN peer network segment on the PC as the administrator.
 - o In the **Properties** dialog box of the local VPN connection, select **Use default gateway on remote network**. After the VPN connection is successful, all data flows from the PC to the Internet are routed to the VPN tunnel. The following figures show the detailed configuration.





- f After the PPTP client configuration is completed on the PC, initiate a VPN connection on the PC. Click the network icon  in the task bar, select the PPTP VPN connection, and click **Connect**. In the dialog box that appears, enter the username and password configured on the server.



5. Verifying Configuration

- (1) After the server and client are configured, wait for about 1 minute. If you can view the L2TP tunnel connection information on the HQ server and branch client, the connection is successful.

HQ:

PPTP Settings [Tunnel List](#)

Tunnel List								
<input type="checkbox"/>	Username	Server/Client	Tunnel Name	Virtual Local IP	Access Server IP	Peer Virtual IP	DNS	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	pc@pptp	Server	ppp2	10.1.1.1	172.26.1.200	10.2.2.3	114.114.114.114	Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	branch	Server	ppp1	10.1.1.1	172.26.1.200	10.2.2.2	114.114.114.114	Delete

Branch:

Tunnel List								
<input type="checkbox"/>	Username	Server/Client	Tunnel Name	Virtual Local IP	Access Server IP	Peer Virtual IP	DNS	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	branch	Client	pptp	10.2.2.2	172.26.30.192	10.1.1.1	114.114.114.114	Delete

- Ping the LAN address of the peer from the HQ or branch. The HQ and branch can successfully communicate. The PC of the traveling employee and the PC of the branch employee can access the HQ server.

```

ca: Administrator: C:\Windows\system32\cmd.exe

C:\Users\Administrator>ping 192.168.110.1

Pinging 192.168.110.1 with 32 bytes of data:
Reply from 192.168.110.1: bytes=32 time=2ms TTL=64
Reply from 192.168.110.1: bytes=32 time=2ms TTL=64
Reply from 192.168.110.1: bytes=32 time=2ms TTL=64
Reply from 192.168.110.1: bytes=32 time=2ms TTL=64

Ping statistics for 192.168.110.1:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
        Minimum = 2ms, Maximum = 2ms, Average = 2ms
  
```

8.3.6 Solution to PPTP VPN Connection Failure

- iPhones and other IOS devices do not support PPTP VPN. Please use L2TP VPN instead
- Run the ping command to test the connectivity between the client and server. For details, see Section [9.9.3 Network Tools](#). If the ping fails, check the network connection settings. Check whether the branch EG can ping to HQ EG. If the ping fails. Check the network connection between the two EGs.

Choose **Diagnostics > Network Tools**. Then, you can start the ping operation. For details, see Section [9.9.3 Network Tools](#).

- Check whether the username and password used by the client are the same as those configured on the server.
- Check whether the WAN port IP address of your HQ EG is a public network IP address. If not, please configure DMZ on your egress gateway.

8.4 Configuring OpenVPN

 Caution

- The RG-EG105G does not support the OpenVPN function.
 - IPTV connection is not supported only in the Chinese environment. To connect to IPTV in the Chinese environment, switch the system language. For details, see Section [9.11 Switching System Language](#).
-

8.4.1 Overview

1. OpenVPN Overview

Due to security considerations or cross-NAT communication needs, private channels need to be established between enterprises or between individual and enterprise. OpenVPN is used to establish Layer 2 or Layer 3 VPN tunnels by using the vNIC. OpenVPN supports flexible client authorization modes, supports authentication through certificate or username and password, and allows users to connect to VPN virtual interfaces through the firewall. It is easier to use than other types of VPN technologies. OpenVPN can run in the Linux, xBSD, Mac OS X, and Windows 2000/XP systems. The device can establish VPN connections to PCs, Android/Apple mobile phones, routers, and Linux devices, and it is compatible with most OpenVPN products in the market.

OpenVPN connections can traverse most proxy servers and can function well in the NAT environment. The OpenVPN server can push the following network configuration to clients: IP address, routes, and DNS settings.

2. Certificate Overview

The major advantage of OpenVPN lies in its high security, but OpenVPN security requires the support of certificates.

The OpenVPN client supports certificates **ca.crt**, **ca.key**, **client.crt**, and **client.key** and the OpenVPN server supports certificates **ca.crt**, **ca.key**, **server.crt**, and **server.key**.

8.4.2 Configuring the OpenVPN Server

Choose **Local Device > VPN > OpenVPN**.

1. Basic Settings

Turn on **Enable** to enable the OpenVPN function, set **OpenVPN Type** to **Server**, set other parameters, and click **Save**. After the basic settings are completed, you can view the tunnel information of the server in the tunnel list.

OpenVPN Tunnel List

i **OpenVPN**

Enable

OpenVPN Type Server Client

Server Mode Account v

Protocol UDP v

* Server Address IP/Domain

* Port ID 1194 1-65535

* IP Range 10.80.12.0/24 ?

Deliver Route 192.168.110.0 255.255.255.0 ? +

Flow Control Disable Enable

Expand

Client Config Export

Save

Table 8-21 OpenVPN server basic settings

Parameter	Description
Server Mode	<p>Select a server authentication mode. The options are Account, Certificate, and Account & Certificate.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Account: Enter the correct username and password and upload the CA certificate on the client to connect to the server. The configuration is simple. ● Certificate: Upload the CA certificate and client certificate and enter the correct private key on the client to connect to the server. ● Account & Certificate: Upload the CA certificate and client certificate and enter the correct username, password, and private key. This mode is applicable to scenarios with high security requirements.

Parameter	Description
Protocol	<p>Select a protocol for all OpenVPN communications based on a single IP port. The options are UDP and TCP.</p> <p>The default value is UDP, which is recommended. When you select a protocol, pay attention to the network status between two encrypted tunnel ends. If high latency or heavy packet loss occurs, select TCP as the underlying protocol.</p>
Server Address	Specify the server address for client connection. You can set this parameter to a domain name.
Port ID	Specify the port used by the OpenVPN service process. Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) specifies port 1194 as the official port for the OpenVPN service. If the port is in use or disabled in the local network, the server log prompts port binding failure and you are asked to change the port number.
IP Range	Specify the network segment of the OpenVPN address pool. The first available in the address pool is allocated to the server, and the other addresses are allocated to clients. For example, if this parameter is set to 10.80.12.0/24 , the VPN virtual address of the server is 10.80.12.1.
Deliver Route	Specify the VPN dial-up line for clients to access the LAN network segment of the server. The server informs clients that want to access the server LAN of the route information. You can configure a maximum of three routes.
Flow Control	The VPN server has a lower priority to control the traffic of the client than the custom policy. The VPN server can only limit the maximum uplink and downlink bandwidth per user for the client. For details, see 7.6.2 Smart Flow Control .
Client Config	<p>Click Export to export the parameter configuration of the client connected to the server in the .tar compressed package. The decompressed information is used for setting the OpenVPN client.</p> <p>In account mode, the compressed package contains the configuration file client.ovpn, CA certificate ca.crt, and CA private key ca.key.</p> <p>If certificate authentication is configured, the compressed package contains the configuration file client.ovpn, CA certificate ca.crt, CA private key ca.key, client certificate client.crt, and client private key client.key.</p> <p>If TLS authentication is enabled, the compressed package contains the TLS identity authentication key tls.key apart from the preceding files. For details on TLS authentication, see Advanced Settings.</p>

Parameter	Description
Server Log	Click Export to export server log files, including the server start time and client dial-up logs.

 **Caution**

The IP address range of the device cannot overlap the network segment of the LAN port on the device.

OpenVPN [Tunnel List](#)

Tunnel List					
<input type="checkbox"/>	Username	Server/Client	Status	Real IP Address	Virtual IP Address
<input type="checkbox"/>	openvpn	Server	OK	172.26.30.192	10.80.12.1

2. Advanced Settings

Click **Expand** to configure the advanced parameters. Keep the default settings unless otherwise specified.

[Collapse](#)

TLS Authentication ?

Allow Data Compression ?

Route All Traffic over VPN ?

Cipher ?

Deliver DNS ? +

Auth

Table 8-22 OpenVPN server advanced settings

Parameter	Description
TLS Authentication	Specify the TLS key for enhanced OpenVPN security by allowing the communicating parties to possess the shared key before TLS handshake. After TLS authentication is enabled, you must import the TLS key on the client. (The version of the peer OpenVPN client must be higher than 2.40.)

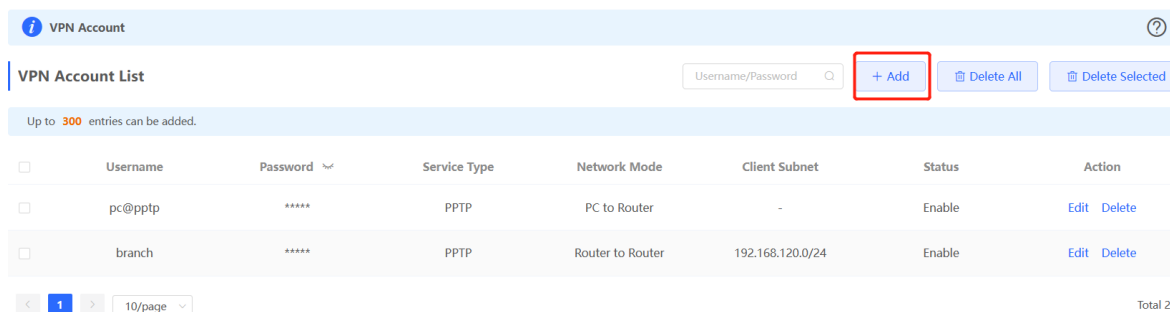
Parameter	Description
Allow Data Compression	Specify whether to enable data compression. If this function is enabled, transmitted data is compressed using the LZO algorithm. Data compression saves bandwidth but consumes certain CPU resources. The setting on the client must be the same as that on the server. Otherwise, the connection fails.
Route All Traffic over VPN	Specify whether to route all traffic over VPN. After this function is enabled, all the traffic is routed over the VPN tunnel. This means that the VPN tunnel is the default route.
Cipher	Select the data encryption mode before data transmission to ensure that even data packets are intercepted during transmission, the leaked data cannot be interpreted. If this parameter is set to Auto on the server, you can set this parameter to any option on the client. If a specific encryption algorithm is configured on the server, you must select the same encryption algorithm on the client. Otherwise, the connection fails.
Deliver DNS	Specify the DNS server address pushed by the server to clients. Currently, the device can push the DNS server address to Windows clients only.
Auth	Specify the MD5 algorithm used by the server. The server will inform the clients of this information. The default value is SHA1 .

3. Configuring OpenVPN User

Choose **Local Device > VPN > VPN Account**.

Only user accounts added to the VPN client list are allowed to dial up to connect to the OpenVPN server. Therefore, you need to manually configure user accounts for clients to access the OpenVPN server.

Click **Add**. In the dialog box that appears, set **Service Type** to **OpenVpn**, enter the username and password, and click **OK**. The **Status** parameter specifies whether to enable the user account.



Add User ×

Service Type

* Username
Please enter a username.

* Password 👁

Status

8.4.3 Configuring the OpenVPN Client

Choose **Local Device > VPN > OpenVPN**.

Currently, you can configure the device as the OpenVPN client in either of the following methods:

Web Settings: Configure OpenVPN client on the web page. This method is used when the device is connected to a non-EG server.

Import Config: Manually import the configuration file. This method is used when the device is connected to a similar device. The client configuration file **client.ovpn** can be directly exported from the connected OpenVPN server.

OpenVPN

Enable

OpenVPN Type Server Client

Client Config Import Config Web Settings

Server Mode

1. Import Config

Turn on **Enable** to enable the OpenVPN function, set **OpenVPN Type** to **Client** and **Client Config** to **Import Config**, select a server mode, set relevant parameters, and click **Browse** to import the client configuration file. Then, click **Save** to make the configuration take effect.

OpenVPN Tunnel List

OpenVPN
 OpenVPN Client [Download Link](#)

Enable

OpenVPN Type Server Client

Client Config Import Config Web Settings

Server Mode

* Username ?

* Password ?

Client Config It already exists.

Table 8-23 OpenVPN client configuration in Import Config method

Parameter	Description
Server Mode	<p>Select a server authentication mode. The options are Account, Certificate, Account & Certificate and Pre-Shared Key.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Account: Enter the correct username and password and upload the CA certificate on the client. The CA certificate information is embedded in the client configuration file. ● Certificate: Upload the CA certificate and client certificate and enter the correct private key on the client. All the information is embedded in the client configuration file. ● Account & Certificate: Enter the correct username, password, and private key and upload the CA certificate, and client certificate on the client. The information of the CA certificate, client certificate, and private key is embedded in the client configuration file. ● Pre-Shared Key: Upload the pre-shared key file apart from the client configuration file.

Parameter	Description
Username & Password	Enter the username and password configured on the server.
Client Config	Click Browse , select the client configuration file exported from the server, and upload the file.
Pre-Shared Key	Click Browse , select the pre-shared key file, and upload the file.
Working Mode	This parameter is available only when Server Mode is set to Pre-Shared Key . NAT: The client can access the server network, but the server cannot access the client network. Router: The server can access the client network.
Client Log	Click Export to export the client log file.

2. Web Settings

Turn on **Enable** to enable the OpenVPN function, set **OpenVPN Type** to **Client** and **Client Config** to **Web Settings**, configure parameters such as **Device Mode** and **Device Mode**, and click **Save** to make the configuration take effect.

(1) Basic Settings

OpenVPN Tunnel List

i OpenVPN

Enable

OpenVPN Type Server Client

Client Config Import Config Web Settings

Device Mode

Server Mode

* Username ?

* Password ?

Protocol

* Server Address

* Server Port ID 1-65535

----- Expand -----

Table 8-24 OpenVPN client configuration in Web Settings method

Parameter	Description
Device Mode	Specify the mode of the EG device that functions as a client. The options are TUN and TAP . The value must be the same as that configured on the server. When the EG device works as a server, it supports the TUN mode only.
Server Mode	Select a client authentication mode. The options are Account , Certificate , and Account & Certificate . <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Account: Enter the correct username and password and upload the CA certificate on the client. ● Certificate: Upload the correct CA certificate, client certificate, and private key file on the client. ● Account & Certificate: Enter the correct username and password, and upload the CA certificate, client certificate, and private key file on the client.

Parameter	Description
Protocol	Select the protocol running on the device. The options are UDP and TCP . The value must be the same as that configured on the server.
Server Address	Enter the address or domain name of the server to be connected.
Server Port ID	Enter the port number of the server to be connected.
CA Certificate	Click Browse , select the CA certificate file with the file name extension .ca , and upload the file.
Client Key	Click Browse , select the client private file with the file name extension .key , and upload the file.
Client Certificate	Click Browse , select the client certificate file with the file name extension .crt , and upload the file.
Client Certificate Key	Specify the client certificate key if the client certificate provided by the server (such as the MikroTik server) is encrypted twice.
Client Log	Click Export to export the client log file.

(2) Advanced Settings

Click **Expand** to configure the advanced parameters. Keep the default settings unless otherwise specified.

[Collapse](#)

Use Explicit Signature for ?
 Server Certificate

TLS Authentication ?

Cipher ?

Auth ?

Allow Data Compression ?

Use Route Pushed by ?
 Server

Table 8-25 OpenVPN client configuration in Web Settings method

Parameter	Description
Use Explicit Signature for Server Certificate	Specify whether to verify the server certificate using explicit signature. By default, this function is enabled. If the server certificate does not use explicit signature, for example, the MikroTik server, you need to disable this function. Otherwise, the connection fails.
TLS Authentication	Specify whether to enable TLS authentication for the server. If this function is enabled, you need to upload the TLS certificate file.
Cipher	Select a data compression algorithm. The value must be the same as that configured on the server. Otherwise, the connection fails.
Auth	Select an MD5 algorithm for data packet verification. The options are SHA1 , MD5 , SHA256 , and NULL . The value must be the same as that configured on the server. Otherwise, the connection fails.
Allow Data Compression	Specify whether to allow data compression. After this function is enabled, the transmitted data can be compressed by using the LZO algorithm. The value must be the same as that configured on the server.


Parameter	Description
Use Route Pushed by Server	Specify whether to use the routes pushed by the server. If this function is disabled, the device cannot accept the routes pushed by the server. If the server needs to access LAN devices, you must set this parameter to Yes .

8.4.4 Viewing the OpenVPN Tunnel Information

Choose **Local Device > VPN > OpenVPN > Tunnel List**.

After the server and client are configured, you can view the OpenVPN tunnel connection status. If the tunnel is established successfully, the client tunnel information is displayed in the tunnel list of the server.

OpenVPN [Tunnel List](#)

 Tunnel List

<input type="checkbox"/>	Username	Server/Client	Status	Real IP Address	Virtual IP Address
<input type="checkbox"/>	openvpn	Server	OK	172.26.30.192	10.80.12.1

Table 8-26 OpenVPN tunnel information

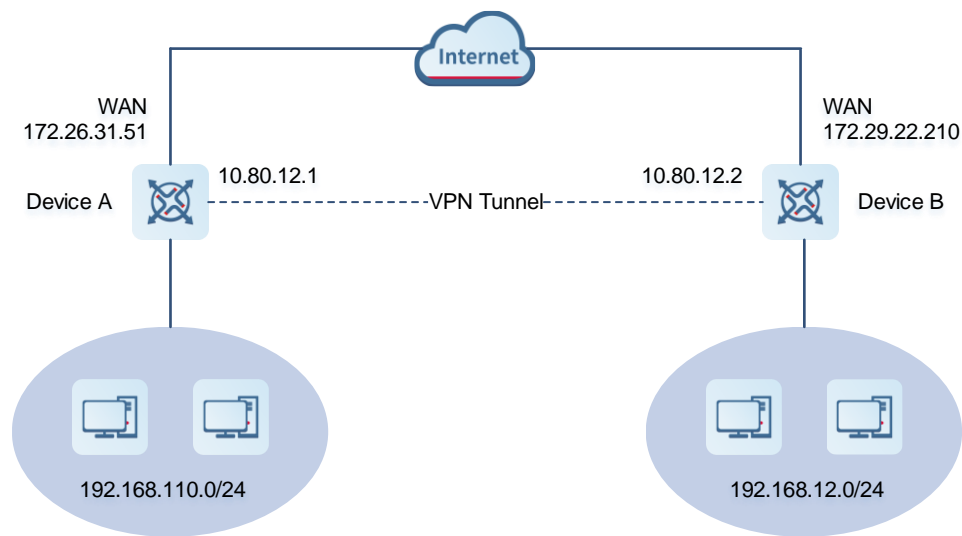
Parameter	Description
Username	Indicate the username used by the client for identity authentication. By default, the username displayed on the server is openvpn .
Server/Client	Indicate the role of the local end of the tunnel, which can be client or server.
Status	Indicate the tunnel establishment status.
Real IP Address	Indicate the real IP address used by the local end to connect to the VPN.
Virtual IP Address	Indicate the local virtual IP address of the tunnel. The virtual IP address of the OpenVPN client is allocated by the OpenVPN server.

8.4.5 Typical Configuration Example

1. Networking Requirements

The enterprise wants to allow the client network to dial up to the server through OpenVPN, implementing mutual access between the server and client.

2. Networking Diagram



3. Configuration Roadmap

- Configure Device A as the OpenVPN server.
- Configure Device B as the OpenVPN client.
- The server needs to push the local LAN network segment to the client to allow the client to access the server in the LAN.

4. Configuration Steps

(1) Configure Device A.

- a Log in to the web management system and choose **VPN > OpenVPN > OpenVPN** to access the OpenVPN page.

[OpenVPN](#) Tunnel List

OpenVPN
OpenVPN Client [Download Link](#)

Enable

OpenVPN Type Server Client

Server Mode

Protocol

* Server Address

* Port ID 1-65535

* IP Range ?

* Deliver Route ?+

Flow Control Disable Enable

- b Turn on Enable to enable the OpenVPN function, set OpenVPN Type to Server, select a server mode and protocol, enter the port number (1194 by default) and server address (external IP address of the local device), and click **Save**.

OpenVPN Tunnel List

i **OpenVPN**
 OpenVPN Client [Download Link](#)

Enable

OpenVPN Type Server Client

Server Mode

Protocol

* Server Address

* Port ID 1-65535

* IP Range ?

* Deliver Route ? +

Flow Control Disable Enable

Expand

Client Config

Table 8-27 OpenVPN server configuration

Parameter	Description
Server Mode	Select an authentication mode. In this example, select Account . In scenarios with high security requirements, select Account & Certificate .
Protocol	Select UDP unless otherwise specified. When the network status between two encrypted tunnel ends is poor, such as high latency or heavy packet loss, select TCP .
Server Address	Enter the WAN port address of the server, which is 172.26.31.51 .

Parameter	Description
Port ID	The default value is 1194 . Keep the default value unless otherwise specified. If the port is in use or disabled in the current network, change to an available port number.
IP Range	Specify the network segment of the OpenVPN address pool. The first available in the address pool is allocated to the server, and the other addresses are allocated to clients. For example, if this parameter is set to 10.80.12.0/24 , the VPN virtual address of the server is 10.80.12.1.
Deliver Route	Add routes to the corresponding network segment if the client wants to the LAN network segment where the server resides.

- c Click **Expand** to configure more advanced parameters. If the device connects to other EG devices in the Reeye network, you are advised to keep the default values for advanced settings. If the device connects to devices from another vendor, keep the parameter settings consistent on the connected devices.

Collapse

TLS Authentication ?

Allow Data Compression Yes ?

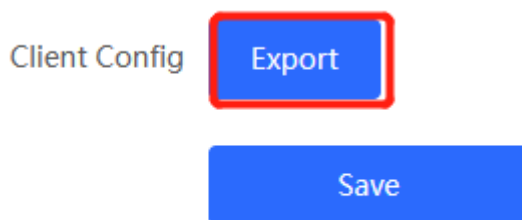
Route All Traffic over VPN No ?

Cipher AES-128-CBC ?

Deliver DNS Example: 1.1.1.1 ? +

Auth SHA1

- d Click **Export** to export the compressed package of the client parameter configuration. Download the compressed package to the local device and decompress it for setting the OpenVPN client in subsequent steps.



- e Choose **VPN > VPN Account** and add an OpenVPN user account.

The screenshot shows the 'VPN Clients' configuration page. At the top, there is a header 'VPN Clients' with an information icon on the left and a help icon on the right. Below the header is a 'VPN Client List' section with a search box labeled 'Username/Password' and two buttons: '+ Add' (highlighted with a red box) and 'Delete Selected'. A message below the search box states 'Up to 100 entries can be added.' Below this is a table with columns: Username, Password, Service Type, Network Mode, Peer Subnet, Status, and Action. An 'Add User' modal dialog is open, containing the following fields: 'Service Type' (dropdown menu set to 'OpenVpn'), '* Username' (text input with '456'), '* Password' (password input with masked characters and a toggle icon), and a 'Status' toggle switch which is currently turned on. At the bottom of the modal are 'Cancel' and 'OK' buttons.

(2) Configure Device B.

- a Log in to the web management system and access the OpenVPN page.
- b Turn on Enable to enable the OpenVPN function and set OpenVPN Type to Client. Two methods are available for configuring the client. The Import Config method is recommended.

Import Config:

OpenVPN Tunnel List

OpenVPN

Enable

OpenVPN Type Server Client

Client Config Import Config Web Settings

Server Mode

* Username ?

* Password ?

Client Config [It already exists.](#)

Table 8-28 OpenVPN client configuration in Import Config method

Parameter	Description
Client Config	Select Import Config .
Server Mode	The value must be the same as that on the server. In this example, select Account .
Username & Password	Enter the username and password configured on the server.
Client Config	Click Browse , select the client configuration file exported from the server, and upload the file.

Web Settings:

i **OpenVPN**

Enable

OpenVPN Type Server Client

Client Config Import Config Web Settings

Device Mode

Server Mode

* Username ?

* Password ?

Protocol

* Server Address

* Server Port ID 1-65535

Table 8-29 OpenVPN client configuration in Web Settings method

Parameter	Description
Client Config	Select Web Settings .
Device Mode	The value must be the same as that on the server. In this example, select TUN .
Server Mode	The value must be the same as that on the server. In this example, select Account .
Username & Password	Enter the username and password configured on the server.
Protocol	The value must be the same as that on the server. In this example, select UDP .
Server Address	Enter the public network IP address of the server, which is 172.26.31.51 .
Server Port ID	Enter the port number used by the server, such as 1194 .

Import the corresponding files according to the value of **Server Mode**.

If **Server Mode** is set to **Certificate** or **Account & Certificate**, you need to import the CA certificate file, client certificate file, and client private key file. If **Server Mode** is set to **Account**, you only need to import

the CA certificate file. If the client certificate is encrypted, you also need to enter the pre-shared key specified by **Client Certificate Key**.

CA Certificate

Client Key

Client Certificate

Client Certificate Key

Click **Expand** to configure more parameters. Configure **Use Route Pushed by Server** to specify whether to accept routes pushed by the server. The value must be the same as that on the server. If the client is connected to a non-EG device, such as MikroTik server outside China, you need to turn off **Use Explicit Signature for Server Certificate**.

----- Collapse -----

Use Explicit Signature for
Server Certificate

TLS Authentication

Cipher

Auth

Allow Data Compression

Use Route Pushed by
Server

- c After the configuration is completed, click Save to make the configuration take effect.

5. Verifying Configuration

After the server and client are configured, view the two tunnel end information in the tunnel list.

Client:

OpenVPN [Tunnel List](#)


<input type="checkbox"/>	Username	Server/Client	Status	Real IP Address	Virtual IP Address
<input type="checkbox"/>	456	Client	OK	172.26.31.53	10.80.12.3

Server:

OpenVPN [Tunnel List](#)

<input type="checkbox"/>	Username	Server/Client	Status	Real IP Address	Virtual IP Address
<input type="checkbox"/>	openvpn	Server	OK	172.26.31.51	10.80.12.1
<input type="checkbox"/>	456	Client	OK	172.26.31.53	10.80.12.3

9 Configuring PoE

 **Caution**

This feature is supported by only the models ending with -P, for example, RG-EG105G-P and RG-EG210G-P.

Choose **Local Device > Network > PoE**.

The device supplies power to PoE powered devices through ports. You can check the total power, current consumption, remaining consumption, and whether PoE power supply status is normal. Move the cursor over a port. The **PoE** toggle appears. You can click it to control whether to enable PoE on the port.

PoE

PoE Consumption Details

Max Consumption 70.0W	Current Consumption 0.0W	Remaining Consumption 70.0W
---------------------------------	------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

PoE Device Panel

Powered On
 Powered Off
 PoE Error

Current Consumption: 0.0W PoE:

0.0W	0.0W	0.0W	0.0W	0.0W	0.0W	0.0W	0.0W
LAN0	LAN1	LAN2	LAN3	LAN4	LAN5	LAN6/WAN3	LAN7/WAN2

10 System Management

10.1 Setting the Login Password

Turn off **Self-Organizing Network Discovery**. Choose **Local Device > System > Login > Login Password**.


Turn on **Self-Organizing Network Discovery**. Choose **Networkwide Management > System > Login Password**.

Enter the old password and new password. After saving the configuration, log in again using the new password.

 **Caution**

In the self-organizing network mode, the login password of all devices in the network will be changed synchronously.

[Login Password](#) [Session Timeout](#)

 Change the login password. Please log in again with the new password later.

*** Old**

Management Password

*** New**

Management Password There are four requirements for setting the password:

- **The password must contain at least 8 characters.**
- The password must contain uppercase and lowercase letters, numbers and three types of special characters.
- The password cannot contain admin.
- The password cannot contain question marks, spaces, and Chinese characters.

*** Confirm**

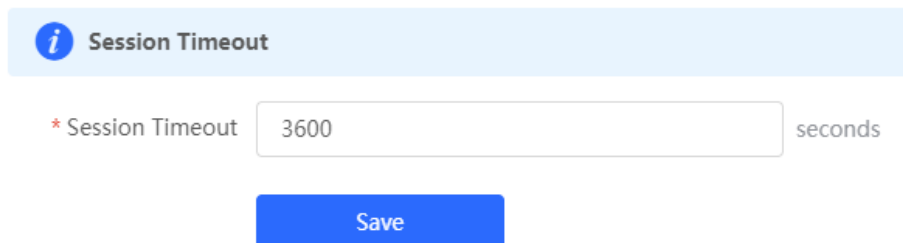
Management Password

Password Hint

10.2 Setting the Session Timeout Duration

Choose **Local Device > System > Login > Session Timeout**.

If no operation is performed on the Web page within a period of time, the session is automatically disconnected. When you need to perform operations again, enter the password to log in again. The default timeout duration is 3600 seconds, that is, 1 hour.

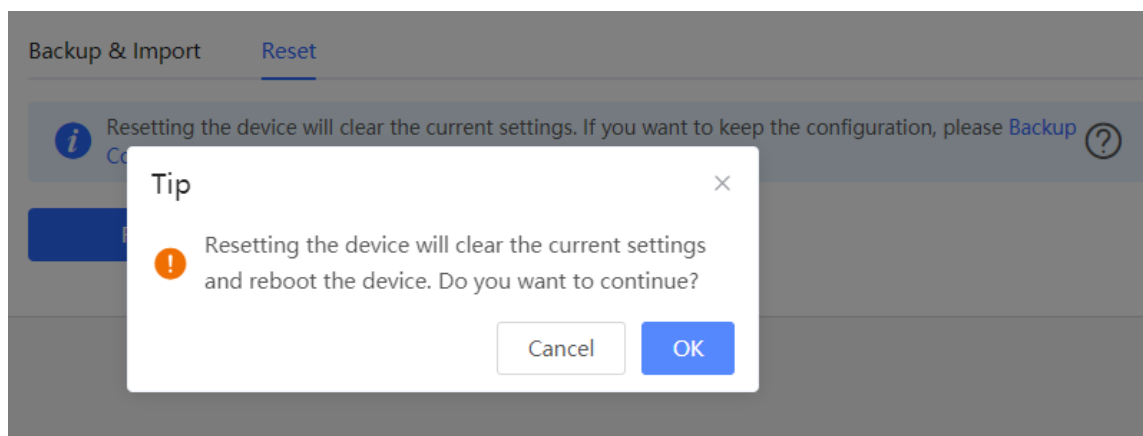
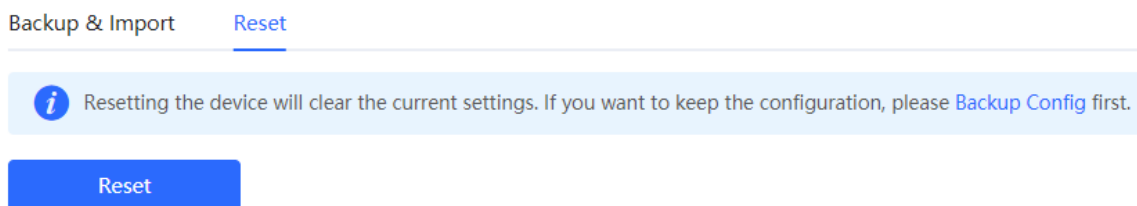


10.3 Restoring Factory Settings

10.3.1 Restoring the Current Device to Factory Settings

Choose **Local Device > System > Backup > Reset**.

Click **Reset** to restore the current device to the factory settings.



Caution


The operation will clear all configuration of the current device. If you want to retain the current configuration, back up the configuration first. (For details, see [Configuring Backup and Import](#).) Therefore, exercise caution when performing this operation.

10.3.2 Restoring All Devices to Factory Settings

Choose **Networkwide Management > System > Backup > Reset**.

Click **All Devices**, select whether to enable **Keep Account and Password**, and click **Reset All Devices**. All devices in the network will be restored to factory settings.

[Backup & Import](#) [Reset](#)

 Resetting the device will clear the current settings. To retain the configuration, [back up the profile](#).

Select master device All Devices

Keep Account and Password (The device information on the live network is kept in the cloud account.)

 **Caution**

The operation will clear all configuration of all devices in the network. Therefore, exercise caution when performing this operation.

10.4 Configuring SNMP

10.4.1 Overview

The Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is a protocol for managing network devices. Based on the client/server model, it can achieve remote monitoring and control of network devices.

SNMP uses a manager and agent architecture. The manager communicates with agents through the SNMP protocol to retrieve information such as device status, configuration details, and performance data. It can also be used to configure and manage devices.

SNMP can be used to manage various network devices, including routers, switches, servers, firewalls, etc. You can achieve user management through the SNMP configuration interface and monitor and control devices through the third-party software.

10.4.2 Global Configuration

1. Overview

The purpose of global configuration is to enable the SNMP service and make the SNMP protocol version (v1/v2c/v3) take effect, so as to achieve basic configuration of local port, device location, and contact information.

SNMP v1: As the earliest version of SNMP, SNMP v1 has poor security, and only supports simple community string authentication. SNMP v1 has certain flaws, such as plaintext transmission of community strings and vulnerability to attacks. Therefore, SNMP v1 is not recommended for modern networks.

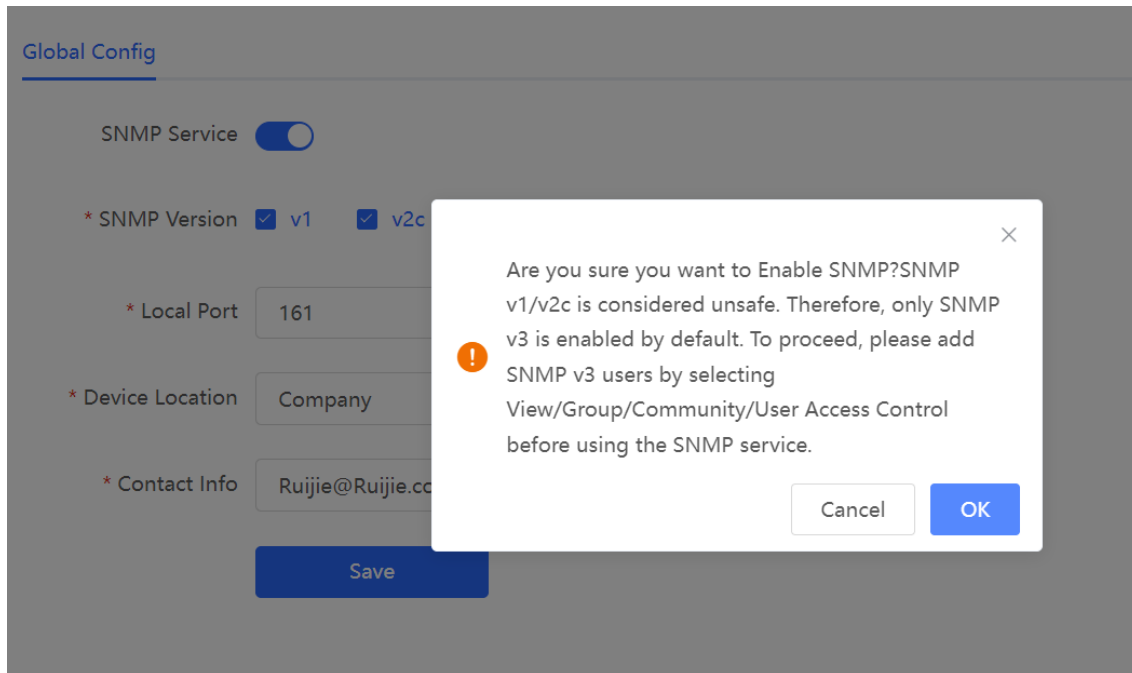
SNMP v2c: As an improved version of SNMP v1, SNMP v2c supports richer functions and more complex data types, with enhanced security. SNMP v2c performs better than SNMP v1 in terms of security and functionality, and is more flexible. It can be configured according to different needs.

SNMP v3: As the newest version, SNMP v3 supports security mechanisms such as message authentication and encryption compared to SNMP v1 and SNMP v2c. SNMP v3 has achieved significant improvements in security and access control.

2. Configuration Steps

[Network-wide - Wizard] **System** > **SNMP** > **Global Config**

(1) Enable the SNMP service.



When it is enabled for the first time, SNMP v3 is enabled by default. Click **OK**.

(2) Set SNMP service global configuration parameters.

Global Config

View/Group/Community/Client Access Control

Trap Settings

SNMP Service

* SNMP Version v1 v2c v3

* Local Port

* Device Location

* Contact Info

Save

Table 10-1 Global Configuration Parameters

Parameter	Description
SNMP Server	Indicates whether SNMP service is enabled.
SNMP Version	Indicates the SNMP protocol version, including v1, v2c, and v3 versions.
Local Port	The port range is 1 to 65535.
Device Location	1-64 characters. Chinese characters, full-width characters, question marks, and spaces are not allowed.
Contact Info	1-64 characters. Chinese characters, full-width characters, question marks, and spaces are not allowed.

(3) Click **Save**.

After the SNMP service is enabled, click **Save** to make basic configurations such as the SNMP protocol version number take effect.

10.4.3 View/Group/Community/User Access Control

1. Configuring Views

- Overview

Management Information Base (MIB) can be regarded as a database storing the status information and performance data of network devices. It contains a large number of object identifiers (OIDs) to identify the status information and performance data of these network devices.

Views in SNMP can limit the range of MIB nodes that the management system can access, thereby improving the security and reliability of network management. Views are an indispensable part of SNMP and need to be configured or customized according to specific management requirements.

A view can have multiple subtrees. The management system can only access MIB nodes in these subtrees, and cannot access other unauthorized MIB nodes. This can prevent unauthorized system administrators from accessing sensitive MIB nodes, thereby protecting the security of network devices. Moreover, views can also improve the efficiency of network management and speed up the response from the management system.

- Configuration Steps

[Network-wide - Wizard] **System > SNMP > View/Group/Community/Client Access Control**

(1) Click **Add** under the **View List** to add a view.

View List + Add Delete Selected

Up to **20** entries are allowed.

<input type="checkbox"/>	View Name	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	all	
<input type="checkbox"/>	none	

(2) Configure basic information of a view.

Add ×

* View Name

OID

Add Included Rule Add Excluded Rule

Rule/OID List Delete Selected

Up to **100** entries are allowed.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Rule	OID	Action
No Data			

Total 0 < 1 > Go to page

Cancel OK

Table 10-2 View Configuration Parameters

Parameter	Description
View Name	Indicates the name of the view. 1-32 characters. Chinese or full width characters are not allowed.
OID	Indicates the range of OIDs included in the view, which can be a single OID or a subtree of OIDs.
Type	There are two types of rules: included and excluded rules. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The included rule only allows access to OIDs within the OID range. Click Add Included Rule to set this type of view. ● Excluded rules allow access to all OIDs except those in the OID range. Click Add Excluded Rule to configure this type of view.

 Note

A least one OID rule must be configured for a view. Otherwise, an alarm message will appear.

(3) Click **OK**.

2. Configuring v1/v2c Users

- Overview

When the SNMP version is set to v1/v2c, user configuration is required.

[Global Config](#) [View/Group/Community/Client Access Control](#) [Trap Settings](#)

SNMP Service

* SNMP Version v1 v2c v3

* Local Port

* Device Location

* Contact Info

Save

 Note

Select the SNMP protocol version, and click **Save**. The corresponding configuration options will appear on the **View/Group/Community/User Access Control** page.

● Configuration Steps

[Network-wide - Wizard] **System > SNMP > View/Group/Community/Client Access Control**

(1) Click **Add** in the **SNMP v1/v2c Community Name List** pane.

SNMP v1/v2c Community Name List

Up to 20 entries are allowed.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Community Name	Access Mode	MIB View	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	Tttttt8	Read & Write	all	Edit Delete
<input type="checkbox"/>	hello_12121	Read & Write	all	Edit Delete

(4) Add a v1/v2c user.

Add ×

* Community Name

* Access Mode

* MIB View [Add View +](#)

Table 10-3 v1/v2c User Configuration Parameters

Parameter	Description
Community Name	At least 8 characters. It must contain at least three character categories, including uppercase and lowercase letters, digits, and special characters. Admin, public or private community names are not allowed. Question marks, spaces, and Chinese characters are not allowed.
Access Mode	Indicates the access permission (read-only or read & write) for the community name.
MIB View	The options under the drop-down box are configured views (default: all, none).

 Note

- Community names cannot be the same among v1/v2c users.
 - Click **Add View** to add a view.
-

3. Configuring v3 Groups

- Overview

SNMP v3 introduces the concept of grouping to achieve better security and access control. A group is a group of SNMP users with the same security policies and access control settings. With SNMP v3, multiple groups can be configured, each with its own security policies and access control settings. Each group can have one or more users.

- Prerequisites

When the SNMP version is set to v3, the v3 group configuration is required.

SNMP Service

* SNMP Version v1 v2c v3

* Local Port

* Device Location

* Contact Info

Save

 **Note**

Select the SNMP protocol version, and click **Save**. The corresponding configuration options will appear on the **View/Group/Community/User Access Control** page.

● **Configuration Steps**

[Network-wide - Wizard] **System > SNMP > View/Group/Community/Client Access Control**

(1) Click **Add** in the **SNMP v3 Group List** pane to create a group.

SNMP v3 Group List						
	Group Name	Security Level	Read-Only View	Read & Write View	Notification View	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	default_group	Auth & Security	all	none	none	Edit Delete

(2) Configure v3 group parameters.

Add
✕

* Group Name

* Security Level Allowlist & Security ▼

* Read-Only View all ▼ [Add View +](#)

* Read & Write View all ▼ [Add View +](#)

* Notification View none ▼ [Add View +](#)

Cancel
OK

Table 10-4 v3 Group Configuration Parameters

Parameter	Description
Group Name	Indicates the name of the group. 1-32 characters. Chinese characters, full-width characters, question marks, and spaces are not allowed.
Security Level	Indicates the minimum security level (authentication and encryption, authentication but no encryption, no authentication and encryption) of the group.
Read-Only View	The options under the drop-down box are configured views (default: all, none).
Read & Write View	The options under the drop-down box are configured views (default: all, none).
Notify View	The options under the drop-down box are configured views (default: all, none).

- Note**
- A group defines the minimum security level, read and write permissions, and scope for users within the group.
 - The group name must be unique. To add a view, click **Add View**.

(3) Click **OK**.

2. Configuring v3 Users

- Prerequisites

When the SNMP version is set to v3, the v3 group configuration is required.

[Global Config](#) [View/Group/Community/Client Access Control](#) [Trap Settings](#)

SNMP Service

* SNMP Version v1 v2c v3

* Local Port

* Device Location

* Contact Info

 Note

Select the SNMP protocol version, and click **Save**. The corresponding configuration options will appear on the **View/Group/Community/User Access Control** page.

- Configuration Steps

[Network-wide - Wizard] **System > SNMP > View/Group/Community/Client Access Control**

(1) Click **Add** in the **SNMP v3 Client List** pane to add a v3 user.

SNMP v3 Client List + Add Delete Selected

Up to 50 entries are allowed.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Username	Group Name	Security Level	Auth Protocol	Auth Password	Encryption Protocol	Encrypted Password	Action
No Data								

(2) Configure v3 user parameters.

Add
×

* Username

* Group Name

* Security Level

* Auth Protocol * Auth Password

* Encryption Protocol * Encrypted Password

Table 10-5 v3 User Configuration Parameters

Parameter	Description
Username	Username At least 8 characters. It must contain at least three character categories, including uppercase and lowercase letters, digits, and special characters. Admin, public or private community names are not allowed. Question marks, spaces, and Chinese characters are not allowed.
Group Name	Indicates the group to which the user belongs.
Security Level	Indicates the security level (authentication and encryption, authentication but no encryption, and no authentication and encryption) of the user.
Auth Protocol, Auth Password	Authentication protocols supported: MD5/SHA/SHA224/SHA256/SHA384/SHA512. Authentication password: 8-31 characters. Chinese characters, full-width characters, question marks, and spaces are not allowed. It must contain at least three character categories, including uppercase and lowercase letters, digits, and special characters. Note: This parameter is mandatory when the security level is authentication and encryption, or authentication but no encryption.

Parameter	Description
Encryption Protocol, Encryption Password	<p>Encryption protocols supported: DES/AES/AES192/AES256.</p> <p>Encryption password: 8-31 characters. Chinese characters, full-width characters, question marks, and spaces are not allowed.</p> <p>It must contain at least three character categories, including uppercase and lowercase letters, digits, and special characters.</p> <p>Note: This parameter is mandatory when the security level is authentication and encryption.</p>

 Note

- The security level of v3 users must be greater than or equal to that of the group.
- There are three security levels, among which authentication and encryption requires the configuration of authentication protocol, authentication password, encryption protocol, and encryption password. Authentication but no encryption only requires the configuration of authentication protocol and encryption protocol, while no authentication and encryption does not require any configuration.

10.4.4 SNMP Service Typical Configuration Examples

1. Configuring SNMP v2c

- Application Scenario

You only need to monitor the device information, but do not need to set and deliver it. A third-party software can be used to monitor the data of nodes like 1.3.6.1.2.1.1 if v2c version is configured.

- Configuration Specification

According to the user's application scenario, the requirements are shown in the following table:

Table 10-6 User Requirement Specification

Item	Description
View range	Included rule: the OID is .1.3.6.1.2.1.1, and the custom view name is "system".
Version	For SNMP v2c, the custom community name is "public", and the default port number is 161.
Read & write permission	Read-only permission.

- Configuration Steps

- (1) In the global configuration interface, select v2c and set other settings as default. Then, click **Save**.

[Global Config](#)[View/Group/Community/Client Access Control](#)[Trap Settings](#)SNMP Service * SNMP Version v1 v2c v3

* Local Port

* Device Location

* Contact Info

- (2) Add a view on the **View/Group/Community/Client Access Control** interface.
- Click **Add** in the **View List** pane to add a view.
 - Enter the view name and OID in the pop-up window, and click **Add Included Rule**.
 - Click **OK**.

×

Add

* View Name

OID

Rule/OID List

Up to **100** entries are allowed.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Rule	OID	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	Included	.1.3.6.1.2.1.1	Delete

Total 1 Go to page

- (3) On the View/Group/Community/Client Access Control interface, enter the SNMP v1/v2c community name.
 - a Click **Add** in the **SNMP v1/v2c Community Name List** pane.
 - b Enter the group name, access mode, and view in the pop-up window.
 - c Click **OK**.

Add
×

* Community Name

* Access Mode ▾

* MIB View ▾ Add View +

2. Configuring SNMP v3

- Application Scenario

You need to monitor and control devices, and use the third-party software to monitor and deliver device information to public nodes (1.3.6.1.2.1). The security level of v3 is authentication and encryption.

- Configuration Specification

According to the user’s application scenario, the requirements are shown in the following table:

Table 10-7 User Requirement Specification

Item	Description
View range	Included rule: the OID is .1.3.6.1.2.1, and the custom view name is “public_view”.
Group configuration	Group name: group Security level: authentication and encryption Select public_view for a read-only view. Select public_view for a read & write view. Select none for a notify view.
Configuring v3 Users	User name: v3_user Group name: group Security level: authentication and encryption Authentication protocol/password: MD5/Ruijie123 Encryption protocol/password: AES/Ruijie123
Version	For SNMP v3, the default port number is 161.

- Configuration Steps
- (2) On the global configuration interface, select v3, and change the port number to 161. Set other settings to defaults. Then, click **Save**.

Global Config View/Group/Community/Client Access Control Trap Settings

SNMP Service

* SNMP Version v1 v2c v3

* Local Port

161

* Device Location

Company

* Contact Info

Ruijie@Ruijie.com

Save

- (3) Add a view on the **View/Group/Community/Client Access Control** interface.
- Click **Add** in the **View List** pane.
 - Enter the view name and OID in the pop-up window, and click **Add Included Rule**.
 - Click **OK**.

×

Add

* View Name

OID

Rule/OID List

Up to **100** entries are allowed.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Rule	OID	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	Included	.1.3.2.6.1.2.1	Delete

Total 1 Go to page

- (3) On the **View/Group/Community/Client Access Control** interface, add an SNMP v3 group.
 - a Click **Add** in the **SNMP v3 Group List** pane.
 - b Enter the group name and security level on the pop-up window. As this user has read and write permissions, select `public_view` for read-only and read & write views, and select none for notify views.
 - c Click **OK**.

Add ×

* Group Name

* Security Level

* Read-Only View [Add View +](#)

* Read & Write View [Add View +](#)

* Notification View [Add View +](#)

- (4) On the **View/Group/Community/Client Access Control** interface, add an SNMP v3 user.
- a Click **Add** in the **SNMP v3 Client List** pane.
 - b Enter the user name and group name in the pop-up window. As the user's security level is authentication and encryption, enter the authentication protocol, authentication password, encryption protocol, and encryption password.
 - c Click **OK**.

Add ×

* Username

* Group Name

* Security Level

* Auth Protocol * Auth Password

* Encryption Protocol * Encrypted Password

10.4.5 Configuring Trap Service

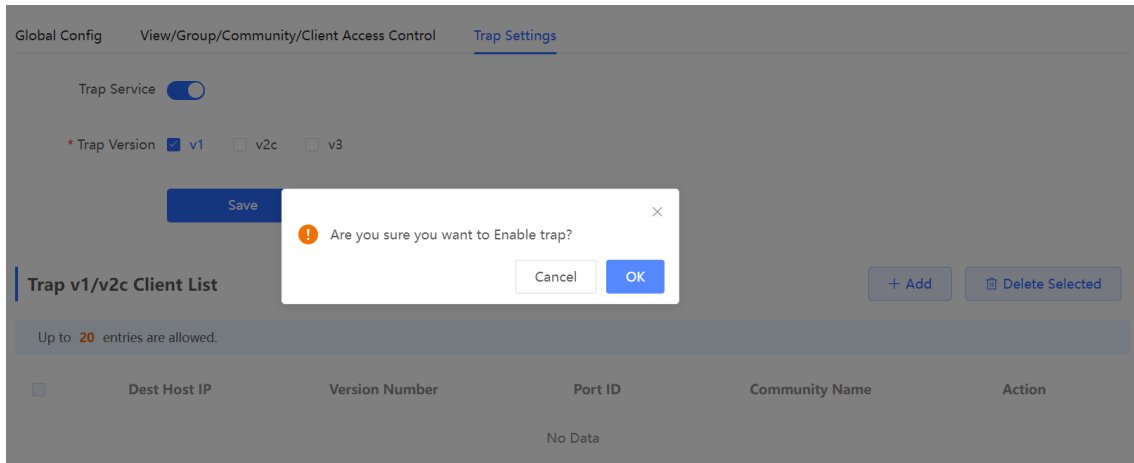
Trap is a notification mechanism of the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) protocol. It is used to report the status and events of network devices to administrators, including device status, faults, performance, configuration, and security management. Trap provides real-time network monitoring and fault diagnosis services, helping administrators discover and solve network problems in a timely manner.

1. Enabling Trap Service

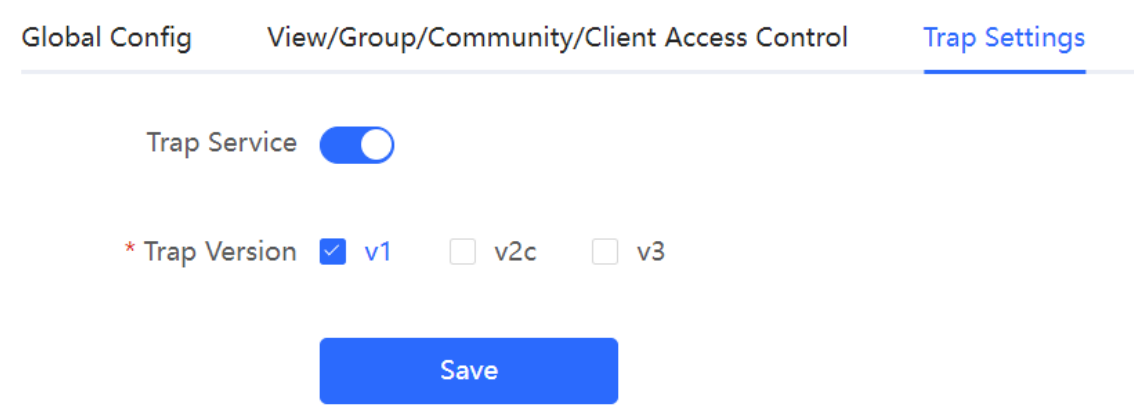
Enable the trap service and select the effective trap version, including v1, v2c, and v3 versions.

[Network-wide - Wizard] **System > SNMP > Trap Setting**

(5) Enable the trap service.



When the trap service is enabled for the first time, the system will pop up a prompt message. Click **OK**.



(6) Set the trap version.

The trap versions include v1, v2c, and v3.

(7) Click **OK**.

After the trap service is enabled, click **Save** for the configuration to take effect.

2. Configuring Trap v1/v2c Users

- Overview

Trap is a notification mechanism that is used to send alerts to administrators when important events or failures occur on devices or services. Trap v1/v2c are two versions in the SNMP protocol for network management and monitoring.

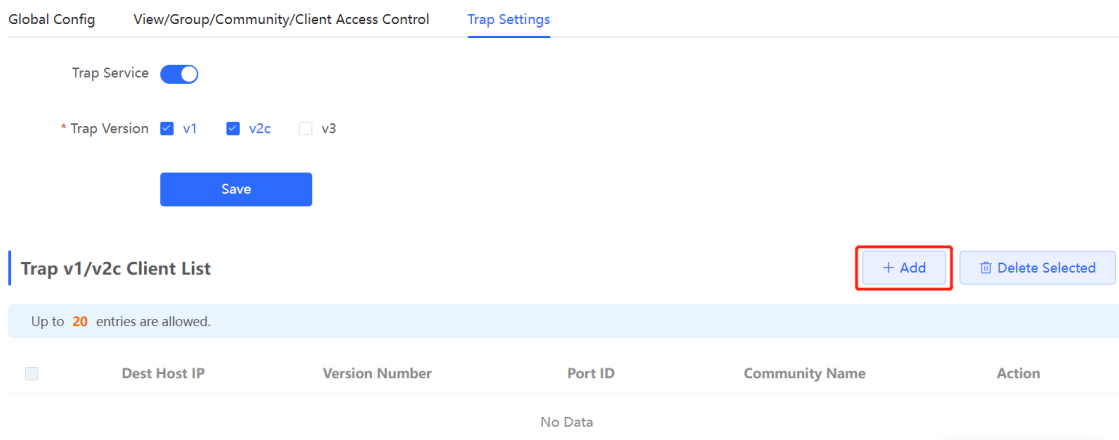
Trap v1 is the first version that supports basic alert notification functionality. Trap v2c is the second version, which supports more alert notification options and advanced security features.

By using trap v1/v2c, administrators can promptly understand problems on the network and take corresponding measures.

- Prerequisites
Once trap v1 and v2c versions are selected, it is necessary to add trap v1/v2c users.
- Procedure

[Network-wide - Wizard] **System > SNMP > Trap Setting**

(8) Click **Add** in the **Trap v1/v2c Client List** pane to add a trap v1/v2c user.



(9) Configure trap v1/v2c user parameters.

Add ×

* Dest Host IP

* Version Number

* Port ID

* Community
Name/Username

Table 10-8 Trap v1/v2c User Configuration Parameters

Parameter	Description
Dest Host IP	IP address of the trap peer device. An IPv4 or IPv6 address is supported.
Version Number	Trap version, including v1 and v2c.
Port ID	The port range of the trap peer device is 1 to 65535.
Community name/User name	Community name of the trap user. At least 8 characters. It must contain at least three character categories, including uppercase and lowercase letters, digits, and special characters. Admin, public or private community names are not allowed. Question marks, spaces, and Chinese characters are not allowed.

 Note

- The destination host IP address of trap v1/ v1/v2c users cannot be the same.
 - Community names of trap v1/ v1/v2c users cannot be the same.
-

(10) Click **OK**.

3. Configuring Trap v3 Users

- Overview

Trap v3 is a network management mechanism based on the SNMP protocol. It is used to send alert notifications to administrators. Unlike previous versions, trap v3 provides more secure and flexible configuration options, including authentication and encryption features.

Trap v3 offers custom conditions and methods for sending alerts, as well as the recipients and notification methods for receiving alerts. This enables administrators to have a more accurate understanding of the status of network devices and to take timely measures to ensure the security and reliability of the network.

- Prerequisites

When the v3 version is selected for the trap service, it is necessary to add a trap v3 user.

- Configuration Steps

[Network-wide - Wizard] **System > SNMP > Trap Setting**

(1) Click **Add** in the **Trap v3 User** pane to add a trap v3 user.

Global Config View/Group/Community/Client Access Control Trap Settings

Trap Service

* Trap Version v1 v2c v3

Trap v3 Client List

Up to 20 entries are allowed.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Dest Host IP	Port ID	Username	Security Level	Auth Password	Encrypted Password	Action
No Data							

(2) Configure trap v3 user parameters.

Add ×

* Dest Host IP * Port ID

* Username * Security Level

* Auth Protocol * Auth Password

* Encryption Protocol * Encrypted Password

Table 10-9 Trap v3 User Configuration Parameters

Parameter	Description
Dest Host IP	IP address of the trap peer device. An IPv4 or IPv6 address is supported.
Port ID	The port range of the trap peer device is 1 to 65535.
Username	Name of the trap v3 user. At least 8 characters. It must contain at least three character categories, including uppercase and lowercase letters, digits, and special characters. Admin, public or private community names are not allowed. Question marks, spaces, and Chinese characters are not allowed.

Parameter	Description
Security Level	Indicates the security level of the trap v3 user. The security levels include authentication and encryption, authentication but no encryption, and no authentication and encryption.
Auth Protocol, Auth Password	<p>Authentication protocols supported: MD5/SHA/SHA224/SHA256/SHA384/SHA512.</p> <p>Authentication password: 8-31 characters. Chinese characters, full-width characters, question marks, and spaces are not allowed. It must contain at least three character categories, including uppercase and lowercase letters, digits, and special characters.</p> <p>Note: This parameter is mandatory when the security level is authentication and encryption, or authentication but no encryption.</p>
Encryption Protocol, Encryption Password	<p>Encryption protocols supported: DES/AES/AES192/AES256.</p> <p>Encryption password: 8-31 characters. Chinese characters, full-width characters, question marks, and spaces are not allowed.</p> <p>It must contain at least three character categories, including uppercase and lowercase letters, digits, and special characters.</p> <p>Note: This parameter is mandatory when the security level is authentication and encryption.</p>

 Note

The destination host IP address of trap v1/ v1/v2c users cannot be the same.

10.4.6 Trap Service Typical Configuration Examples

1. Configuring Trap v2c

- Application Scenarios

During device monitoring, if the device is suddenly disconnected or encounters an abnormality, and the third-party monitoring software cannot detect and handle the abnormal situation in a timely manner, you can configure the device with a destination IP address of 192.168.110.85 and a port number of 166 to enable the device to send a v2c trap in case of an abnormality.

- Configuration Specification

According to the user's application scenario, the requirements are shown in the following table:

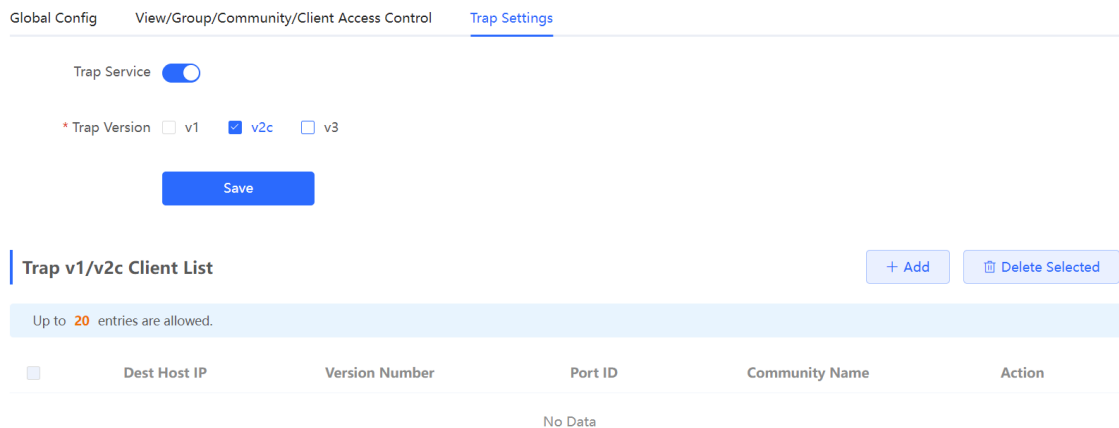
Table 10-10 User Requirement Specification

Item	Description
IP address and port number	The destination host IP is 192.168.110.85, and the port number is 166.
Version	Select the v2 version.

Item	Description
Community name/User name	Trap_user

● Configuration Steps

(1) Select the v2c version in the **Trap Setting** interface and click **Save**.



(2) Click **Add** in the Trap v1/v2c Client List to add a trap v2c user.

(3) Enter the destination host IP address, version, port number, user name, and other information. Then, click **OK**.

Add ×

* Dest Host IP

* Version Number

* Port ID

* Community

Name/Username

2. Configuring Trap v3

● Application Scenarios

During device monitoring, if the device is suddenly disconnected or encounters an abnormality, and the third-party monitoring software cannot detect and handle the abnormal situation in a timely manner, you can configure the

device with a destination IP address of 192.168.110.87 and a port number of 167 to enable the device to send a v3 trap, which is a safer trap compared with v1/v2c traps.

- Configuration Specification

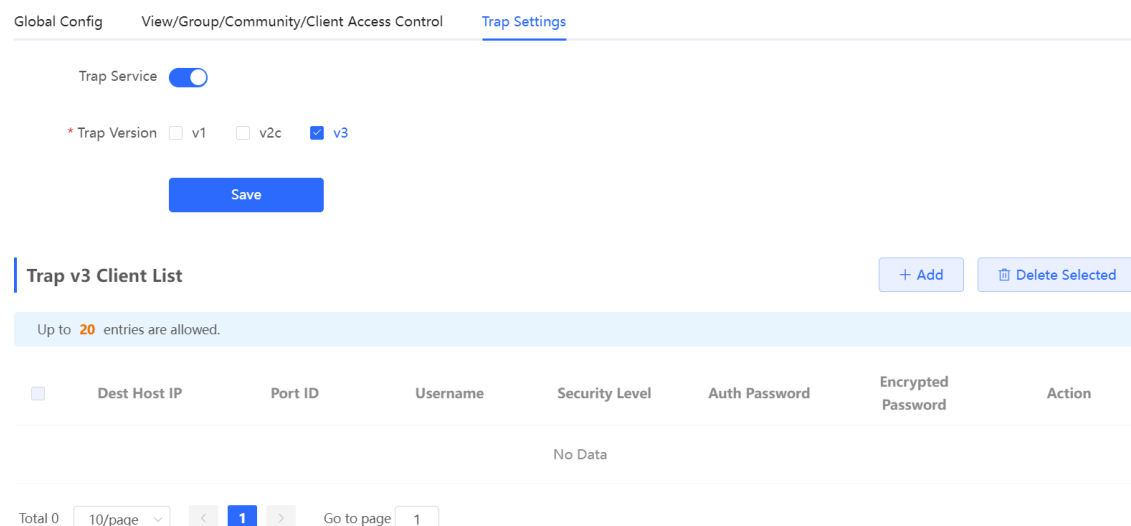
According to the user's application scenario, the requirements are shown in the following table:

Table 10-11 User Requirement Specification

Item	Description
IP address and port number	The destination host IP is 192.168.110.87, and the port number is 167.
Version and user name	Select the v3 version and trapv3_user for the user name.
Authentication protocol/authentication password	Authentication protocol/password: MD5/Ruijie123
Encryption protocol/encryption password	Encryption protocol/password: AES/Ruijie123

- Configuration Steps

(1) Select the v3 version in the **Trap Setting** interface and click **Save**.



(2) Click **Add** in the Trap v3 Client List to add a trap v3 user.

(3) Enter the destination host IP address, port number, user name, and other information. Then, click **OK**.

Add
×

* Dest Host IP <input style="width: 90%;" type="text" value="192.168.110.87"/>	* Port ID <input style="width: 90%;" type="text" value="167"/>
* Username <input style="width: 90%;" type="text" value="trapv3_user"/>	* Security Level <input style="border-bottom: 1px solid #ccc;" type="text" value="Auth & Security"/>
* Auth Protocol <input style="border-bottom: 1px solid #ccc;" type="text" value="MD5"/>	* Auth Password <input style="width: 90%;" type="text" value="Ruijie123"/>
* Encryption Protocol <input style="border-bottom: 1px solid #ccc;" type="text" value="AES"/>	* Encrypted Password <input style="width: 90%;" type="text" value="Ruijie123"/>

10.5 Configure IEEE 802.1X authentication

10.5.1 Overview

IEEE 802.1X is a port-based network access control standard that provides secure access services for LANs.

On an IEEE 802 LAN, a user can directly access network resources without authentication and authorization as long as it can connect to a network device. This uncontrolled behavior can bring security risks to the network. The IEEE 802.1X protocol was proposed to address the security issues on an IEEE 802 LAN.

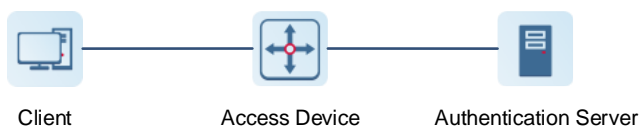
The IEEE 802.1X protocol supports three security applications: Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting, abbreviated as AAA.

- Authentication: Determines whether a user can obtain access, and restricts unauthorized users.
- Authorization: Authorizes services available for authorized users, and controls the permissions of unauthorized users.
- Accounting: Records the usage of network resources by users, and provides a basis for traffic billing.

The 802.1X feature can be deployed on networks to control user authentication, authorization, and more.

An 802.1X network uses a typical client/server architecture, consisting of three entities: client, access device, and authentication server. A typical architecture is shown here.

Figure 10-1 Typical Architecture of 802.1X Network



- The client is usually an endpoint device which can initiate 802.1X authentication through the client software. The client must support the Extensible Authentication Protocol over LANs (EAPoL) on the local area network.
- The access device is usually a network device (AP or switching device) that supports the IEEE 802.1X protocol. It provides an interface for clients to access the local area network, which can be a physical or a logical interface.

i Note

- The RG-EG gateway device itself does not support the IEEE 802.1X authentication, and can only serve as the primary device to support 802.1X global configuration and deliver the configuration to APs and switching devices on the entire network.
- To achieve IEEE 802.1X authentication, ensure that the network includes an AP or switching device.
- The authentication server can realize user authentication, authorization, and accounting. Usually a RADIUS server is used as the authentication server.

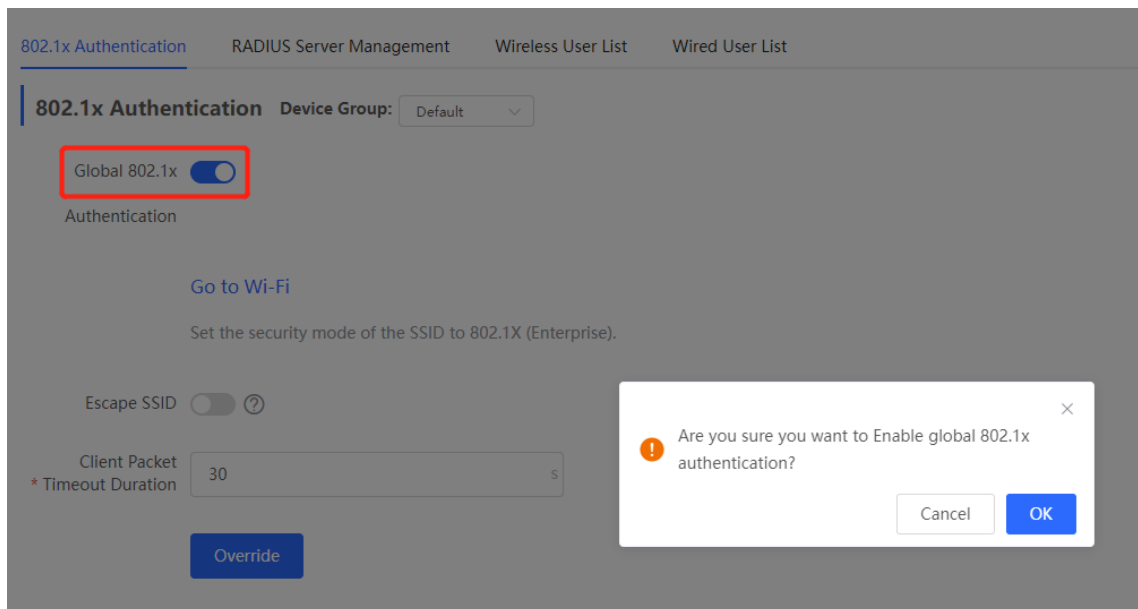
10.5.2 Configuring 802.1X Globally

The gateway device supports the 802.1X global configuration, and can synchronously deliver the configuration to APs and switching devices on the network.

[Management - Wizard] **Network** > **802.1x Authentication**

- (1) Click the **802.1x Authentication** tab to configure global configuration for 802.1x wireless authentication.
- (2) Select the authentication device group, and enable the global 802.1x authentication.

You will be prompted to enable this feature or not. Click **Yes**.



- (3) Click **Go to Wireless Settings**, and set the encryption method of SSID to **802.1x (Enterprise)**.

Wi-Fi Settings Device Group: Default

Up to 8 SSIDs can be added.

Default

30000_TTTTTT
Default VLAN
Band:2.4G+5G

+ Add Guest Wi-Fi

+ Add Wi-Fi

* SSID

Band 2.4G 5G

Encryption Open Security 802.1x (Enterprise)

* Security

Auth Server [Edit](#)

----- Expand -----

Save

(4) Configure global parameters.

802.1x Authentication Device Group: Default

Global 802.1x

Authentication

Escape SSID ?

Re-authentication ?

Client Packet
* Timeout Duration s

Override

Parameter	Description
Escape SSID	Once this feature is enabled, when the authentication server is unavailable, the system will create a temporary Wi-Fi network for users. If this function is enabled, it is necessary to set the Escape SSID, encryption type, and Wi-Fi password.

Parameter	Description
Re-authentication	Once this feature is enabled, the system regularly re-authenticates users. Users who do not match the information on the server will be automatically disconnected. If this function is enabled, it is necessary to set the re-authentication cycle, which is 3600 seconds by default.
Client Packet Timeout Duration	The timeout period for the switching device to wait for the authentication server to send an EAP response message. The default value is 30 seconds.

(4) Click **Override**.

10.5.3 Configuring the RADIUS Server

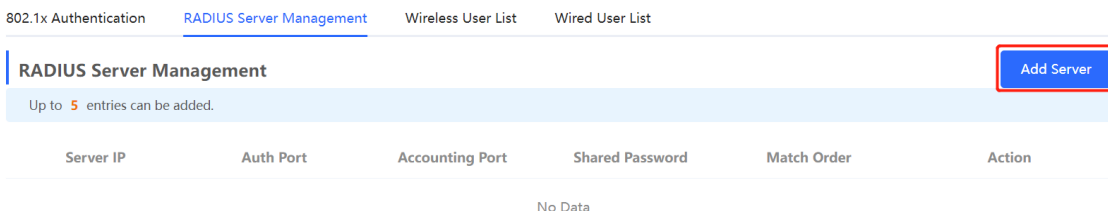
1. Prerequisites

Before configuration, ensure that the RADIUS server is ready, and that the IP address and shared key of the RADIUS server are configured.

2. Configuration Steps

[Management - Wizard] **Network > 802.1x Authentication**

- (1) Click the **RADIUS Server Management** tab.
- (2) Click **Add Server** to configure related server parameters.



Add



* Server IP

* Auth Port

* Accounting Port

* Shared Password

* Match Order

Cancel

OK

Parameter	Description
Server IP	IP address of the RADIUS server.
Auth Port	The port number for the RADIUS server to perform user authentication.
Accounting Port	The port number for the RADIUS server to perform user accounting.
Shared Password	Shared key of the RADIUS server.
Match Order	The system supports up to five RADIUS servers. A larger value indicates a higher priority.

(3) Enter the server global configuration parameters, and click **Save**.

Server global configuration

Proxy Server

* Packet Retransmission Interval s

* Packet Retransmission Count time

Server Detection

MAC Address Format

Save

Parameter	Description
Proxy Server	After this function is enabled, local device will act as a proxy for the RADIUS server to send RADIUS messages.
Packet Retransmission Interval	Configure the interval during which the device sends a request to a RADIUS server before confirming that the RADIUS server is unreachable.
Packet Retransmission Count	Configure the number of times that the device sends requests to a RADIUS server before confirming that the RADIUS server is unreachable.
Server Detection	If this function is enabled, it is necessary to set the server detection cycle, server detection times, and server detection username. Determines the server status and whether to enable functions such as the escape function.
MAC Address Format	Configure the format of the MAC address used in attribute 31 (Calling-Station-ID) of a RADIUS message. The following formats are supported: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Dotted hexadecimal format. For example, 00d0.f8aa.bbcc. ● IETF format. For example: 00-D0-F8-AA-BB-CC. ● Unformatted (default). For example: 00d0f8aabbcc

10.5.4 Checking Authentication User List

When the 802.1x feature is configured on the entire network, and a terminal is authenticated and connected to the network, you can view the list of authenticated users.

[Management - Wizard] **Network > 802.1x Authentication**

Click **Wireless User List** or **Wired User List** to view specific user information.

802.1x Authentication RADIUS Server Management Wireless User List Wired User List

Description
The client going offline will not disappear immediately. Instead, the client will stay in the list for a more minutes.

Wireless User List Refresh Batch Logout

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	IP	MAC Address	Online Time	Online Duration	Connect SSID	Access Name	Action
No Data								

Total 0

Click **Refresh** to view the latest user list.

If you want to disconnect a user from the network, select the user and click **Logout** under the **Action** column. You can also select multiple users and click **Batch Logout** to disconnect selected users.

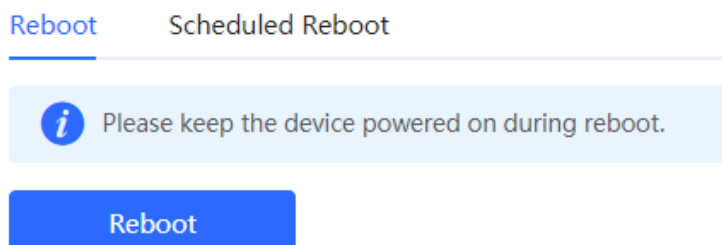
10.6 Configuring Reboot

10.6.1 Rebooting the Current Device

Choose **Local Device** > **System** > **Reboot** > **Reboot**.

Click **Reboot**, and the device will be restarted. Please do not refresh or close the page during the reboot process.

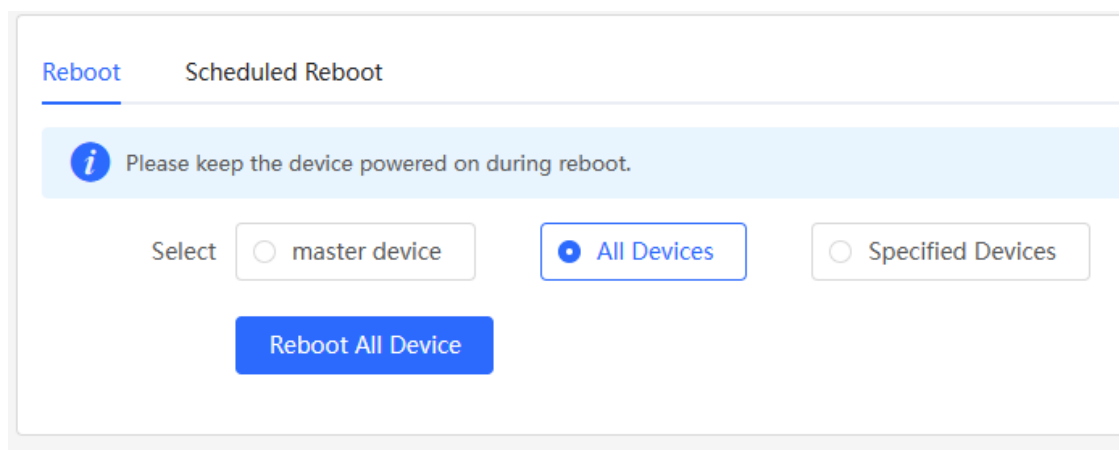
After the device is rebooted, the browser will be redirected to the login page.



10.6.2 Rebooting All Devices in the Network

Choose **Network-wide** > **System** > **Reboot** > **Reboot**.

Select **All Devices**, and click **Reboot All Device** to reboot all devices in the current network.



Caution

The operation takes some time and affects the whole network. Therefore, exercise caution when performing this operation.

10.6.3 Rebooting the Specified Device

Choose **Networkwide Management** > **Network** > **Reboot** > **Reboot**.

Click **Specified Devices**, select required devices from the **Available Devices** list, and click **Add** to add devices to the **Selected Devices** list on the right. Click **Reboot**. Specified devices in the **Selected Devices** list will be rebooted.

Reboot Scheduled Reboot

i Please keep the device powered on during reboot.

Select master device All Devices Specified Devices

Available Devices 0/3

Search by SN/Model

- GQWE111111116 - EG310G-E
- G1QH1JE000579 - X32-PRO
- H1NW2JK000156 - NBS3200-24GT4XS

< Delete

Add >

Selected Devices 0/0

Search by SN/Model

No data

Reboot

10.7 Configuring Scheduled Reboot

Confirm that the system time is accurate to avoid network interruption caused by device reboot at wrong time. For details about how to configure the system time, see Section [9.6 Setting and Displaying System Time](#).

Choose **Networkwide Management > System > Reboot > Scheduled Reboot**.

Turn on **Enable**, and select the date and time of scheduled reboot every week. Click **Save**. When the system time matches the scheduled reboot time, the device will restart. You are advised to set scheduled reboot time to off-peak hours.

⚠ Caution

The operation affects the whole network. Therefore, exercise caution when performing this operation.

Reboot Scheduled Reboot

i It is recommended to set the scheduled time to a network idle time, e.g., 2 A.M..
The downlink device will also be rebooted as scheduled.

Enable

Day Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri Sat Sun

Time 03 : 00

Save

10.8 Setting and Displaying System Time

Choose **System** > **System Time**.

You can view the current system time. If the time is incorrect, check and select the local time zone. If the time zone is correct but time is still incorrect, click **Edit** to manually set the time. In addition, the device supports Network Time Protocol (NTP) servers. By default, multiple servers serve as the backup of each other. You can add or delete the local server as required.

Configure and view system time (The device has no RTC module. The time settings will not be saved upon reboot).

Current Time 2022-04-27 12:38:30 Edit

* Time Zone (GMT+8:00)Asia/Shanghai v

* NTP Server 0.cn.pool.ntp.org Add

1.cn.pool.ntp.org

Delete

cn.pool.ntp.org

Delete

pool.ntp.org

Delete

asia.pool.ntp.org

Delete

europe.pool.ntp.org

Delete

rdate.darkorb.net

Delete

Save

Click **Current Time**, and the current system time will be filled in automatically.

Edit
×

* Time 🕒 Select a time. Current Time

Cancel
OK



10.9 Configuring Backup and Import

Choose **System** > **Backup** > **Backup & Import**.

Configuration backup: Click **Backup** to download a configuration file locally.

Configuration import: Click **Browse**, select a backup file on the local PC, and click **Import** to import the configuration file. The device will restart.

[Backup & Import](#)[Reset](#)

 If the target version is much later than the current version, some configuration may be missing. It is recommended to choose [Reset](#) before importing the configuration. The device will be rebooted automatically later. 

Backup Config

Backup Config

[Backup](#)

Import Config


File Path

[Browse](#)[Import](#)

10.10 Configuring LED Status Control

Choose **Networkwide Management > Network > LED**.

Turn on **Enable** and click **Save** to deliver the configuration.

 **LED Status Control**
Control the LED status of **the downlink AP**.

Enable [Save](#)

10.11 Configuring Diagnostics

10.11.1 Network Check

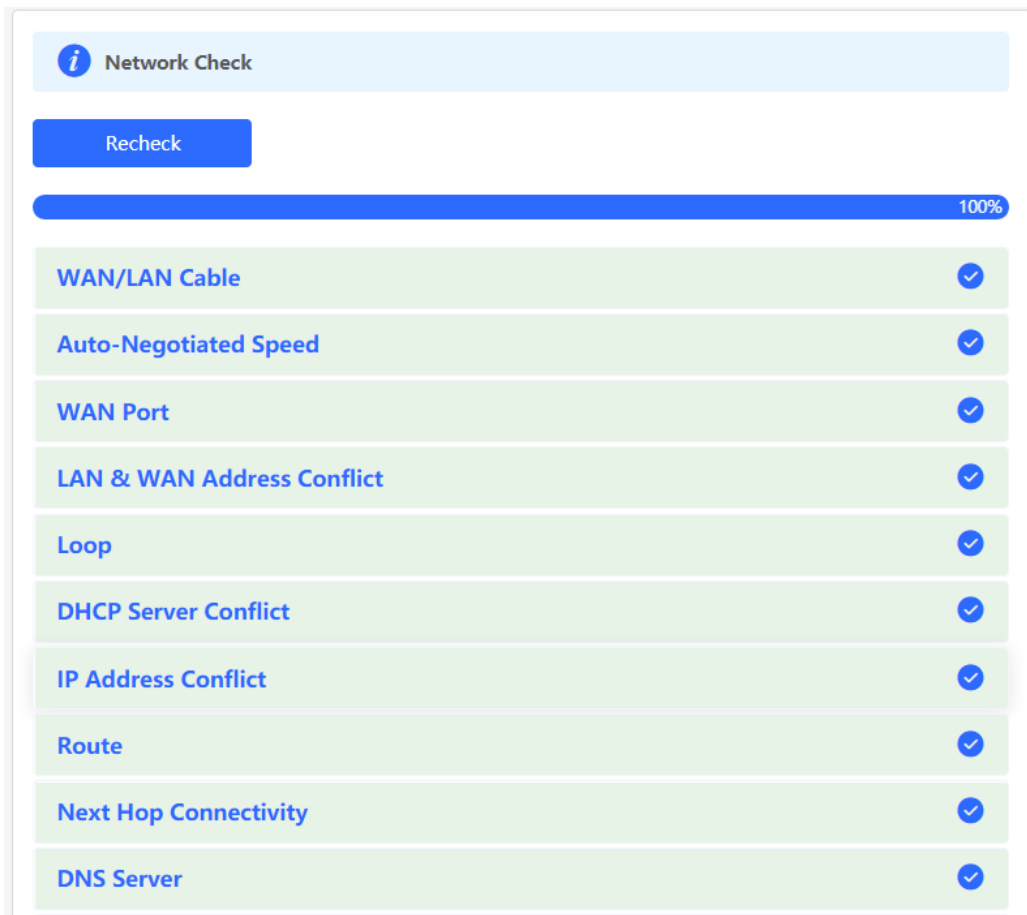
When a network error occurs, perform **Network Check** to identify the fault and take the suggested action.

Choose **Local Device > Diagnostics > Network Check**.

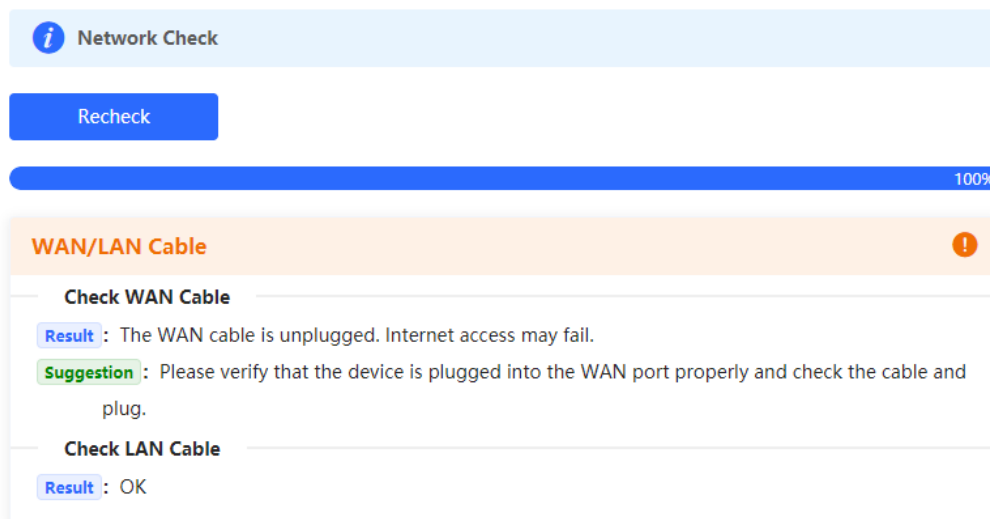
Click **Start** to perform the network check and show the result.

 **Network Check**

[Start](#)



If a network error occurs, its symptom and suggested action will be displayed.



10.11.2 Alerts

Choose **Networkwide Management > Network > Alarms**.

The **Alert List** page displays possible problems on the network environment and device. All types of alerts are followed by default. You can click **Unfollow** in the **Action** column to unfollow this type of alert.

 **Caution**

After unfollowing a specified alert type, you will not discover and process all alerts of this type promptly. Therefore, exercise caution when performing this operation.

Alert List View Unfollowed Alert

Expand	Alerts	Suggestion	Action
▼	There is more than one DHCP server in the LAN network.	Please disable the extra DHCP server in the LAN network.	Delete Unfollow

Hostname	SN	Type	Time	Details	Action
Ruijie	1234567891234	EG210G-P	2022-04-24 09:39:08	A DHCP server conflict occurs in LAN network: MAC:58:69:6c:00:00:01,IP:192.168.11.1,VLAN ID:233; MAC:UNKNOWN,IP:192.168.112.1,VLAN ID:233	Delete

Click **View Unfollowed Alert** to view the unfollowed alert. You can follow the alert again in the pop-up window.

View Unfollowed Alert ×

There is more than one DHCP server in the LAN network.

[Re-follow](#)

Cancel

10.11.3 Network Tools

1. Ping

Choose **Local Device > Diagnostics > Network Tools**.

The **Ping** command is used to detect the network connectivity.

Select **Ping** as the diagnosis mode, select the IP type, enter the destination IP address or website address, configure the ping count and packet size, and click **Start** to test the network connectivity between the device and the IP address or website. If "Ping failed" is displayed, the device is not reachable to the IP address or website.

i Network Tools

Tool Ping Traceroute DNS Lookup

Type IPv4 IPv6

* IP Address/Domain

* Ping Count

* Packet Size Bytes

```
PING www.baidu.com (14.215.177.38): 64 data bytes
72 bytes from 14.215.177.38: seq=0 ttl=51 time=19.868 ms
72 bytes from 14.215.177.38: seq=1 ttl=51 time=21.259 ms
72 bytes from 14.215.177.38: seq=2 ttl=51 time=19.666 ms
72 bytes from 14.215.177.38: seq=3 ttl=51 time=19.633 ms

--- www.baidu.com ping statistics ---
4 packets transmitted, 4 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 19.633/20.106/21.259 ms
```

2. Traceroute

Choose **Local Device > Diagnostics > Network Tools**.

The **Traceroute** function is used to identify the network path from one device to another. On a simple network, the network path may pass through only one routing node or none at all. On a complex network, packets may pass through dozens of routing nodes before reaching their destination. The traceroute function can be used to judge the transmission path of data packets during communication.

Select **Traceroute** as the diagnosis mode, select the IP type, and enter a destination IP address or the maximum TTL value used by the URL and traceroute, and click **Start**.

Network Tools

Tool Ping Traceroute DNS Lookup

Type IPv4 IPv6

* IP Address/Domain

* Max TTL

```
traceroute to www.baidu.com (14.215.177.38), 20 hops max,
46 byte packets
 1 172.20.72.1 (172.20.72.1) 2.744 ms 6.244 ms 1.604 ms
 2 172.20.255.109 (172.20.255.109) 1.504 ms 1.691 ms
1.979 ms
 3 172.20.255.97 (172.20.255.97) 0.814 ms 1.353 ms 0.937
ms
 4 172.22.0.249 (172.22.0.249) 1.498 ms 1.315 ms 1.020 ms
 5 120.35.11.206 (120.35.11.206) 2.728 ms 3.339 ms 2.938
ms
 6 120.36.59.213 (120.36.59.213) 19.804 ms 3.592 ms 2.814
ms
```

3. DNS Lookup

Choose **Local Device** > **Diagnostics** > **Network Tools**.

DNS Lookup is used to query the information of network domain name or diagnose DNS server problems. If the device can ping through the IP address of the Internet from your web page but the browser cannot open the web page, you can use the DNS lookup function to check whether domain name resolution is normal.

Select **DNS Lookup** as the diagnosis mode, enter a destination IP address or URL, and click **Start**.

Network Tools

Tool Ping Traceroute DNS Lookup

* IP Address/Domain

* DNS


Result

10.11.4 Packet Capture

Choose **Local Device > Diagnostics > Packet Capture**.

If the device fails and troubleshooting is required, the packet capture result can be analyzed to locate and rectify the fault.

Select an interface and a protocol and specify the host IP address to capture the content in data packets. Select the file size limit and packet count limit to determine the conditions for automatically stopping packet capture. (If the file size or number of packets reaches the specified threshold, packet capture stops and a diagnostic package download link is generated.) Click **Start** to execute the packet capture command.

 **Caution**

The packet capture operation may occupy many system resources, causing network freezing. Therefore, exercise caution when performing this operation.

i Packet Capture ?

Interface

Protocol

IP Address

File Size Limit Available Memory **177.63 M**

Packet Count Limit

Packet capture can be stopped at any time. After that, a download link is generated. Click this link to save the packet capture result in the PCAP format locally. Use analysis software such as Wireshark to view and analyze the result.

i Packet Capture ?

Interface

Protocol

IP Address

File Size Limit Available Memory **177.63 M**

Packet Count Limit

File Size: **78.02K**
Captured on: **2022-04-27 12:50:07**

PCAP file [Click to download the PCAP file.](#) **i**
[Click to delete the file.](#)

10.11.5 Fault Collection

Choose **Local Device > Diagnostics > Fault Collection.**

When the device fails, you need to collect the fault information. Click **Start**. The configuration files of the device will be packed into a compressed file. Download the compressed file locally and provide it to R&D personnel for fault locating.

i **Fault Collection**
 Compress the configuration file for engineers to identify fault.

Start

10.11.6 Viewing Flow Statistics

Choose **Local Device > Diagnostics > Flow Statistic**.

On the **Flow Table Packet Counters Page**, you can view the details of packets received by the device, including protocol, aging time, state, source IP address, destination IP address, source port, destination port, and so on.

protocol	aging_time	state1	src	dst	sport	dport	packets	bytes	state2	src_down	dst_down	sport_down	dport_down	packets_down	bytes_down	mark	use
udp	6	-	10.52.49.7 1	239.255.2 55.250	54411	1900	1	384	UNREPLIE D	239.255.2 55.250	10.52.49.7 1	1900	54411	0	0	256	2
udp	9	-	10.52.48.5 0	10.52.55.2 55	54915	54915	145017	42199947	UNREPLIE D	10.52.55.2 55	10.52.48.5 0	54915	54915	0	0	256	2
udp	3	-	10.52.49.7 1	239.255.2 55.250	53086	1900	1	396	UNREPLIE D	239.255.2 55.250	10.52.49.7 1	1900	53086	0	0	256	2
tcp	9	TIME_WAI T	10.109.15. 204	10.52.48.1 82	55524	443	6	776	ASSURED	10.52.48.1 82	10.109.15. 204	443	55524	5	349	256	2
udp	3	-	10.52.49.7 1	239.255.2 55.250	37061	1900	1	384	UNREPLIE D	239.255.2 55.250	10.52.49.7 1	1900	37061	0	0	256	2
udp	9	-	192.168.1 10.2	101.133.2 04.191	58800	443	75486	7870644	-	101.133.2 04.191	10.52.48.1 82	443	58800	535340	32355139 5	256	3
udp	0	-	10.52.48.1 82	172.30.44. 20	2087	53	1	66	-	172.30.44. 20	10.52.48.1 82	53	2087	1	106	256	2
udp	3	-	10.52.49.6 4	255.255.2 55.255	68	67	1	328	UNREPLIE D	255.255.2 55.255	10.52.49.6 4	67	68	0	0	256	2
udp	2	-	10.52.48.1 98	239.255.2 55.250	49300	1900	4	816	UNREPLIE D	239.255.2 55.250	10.52.48.1 98	1900	49300	0	0	256	2

10.12 Performing Upgrade and Checking System Version

Caution

You are advised to back up the configuration before upgrading the router.

Version upgrade will restart the device. Do not refresh or close the browser during the upgrade process.

10.12.1 Online Upgrade

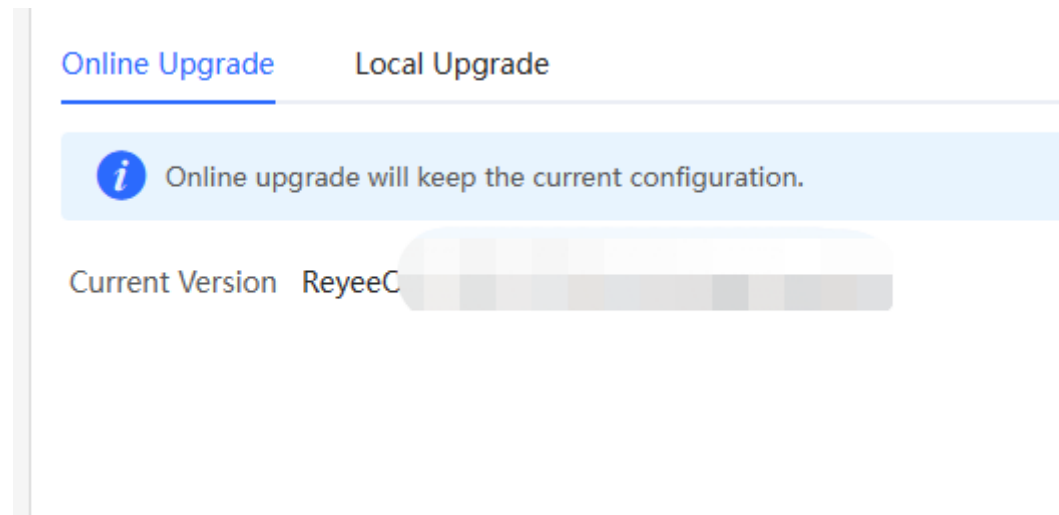
Choose **Local Device > System > Upgrade > Online Upgrade**.

The current page displays the current system version and allows you to detect whether a later version is available. If a new version is available, click **Upgrade Now** to perform online upgrade. If the network environment does not support online upgrade, click **Download File** to download the upgrade installation package locally and then perform local upgrade.

i Note

Online upgrade will retain the current configuration.

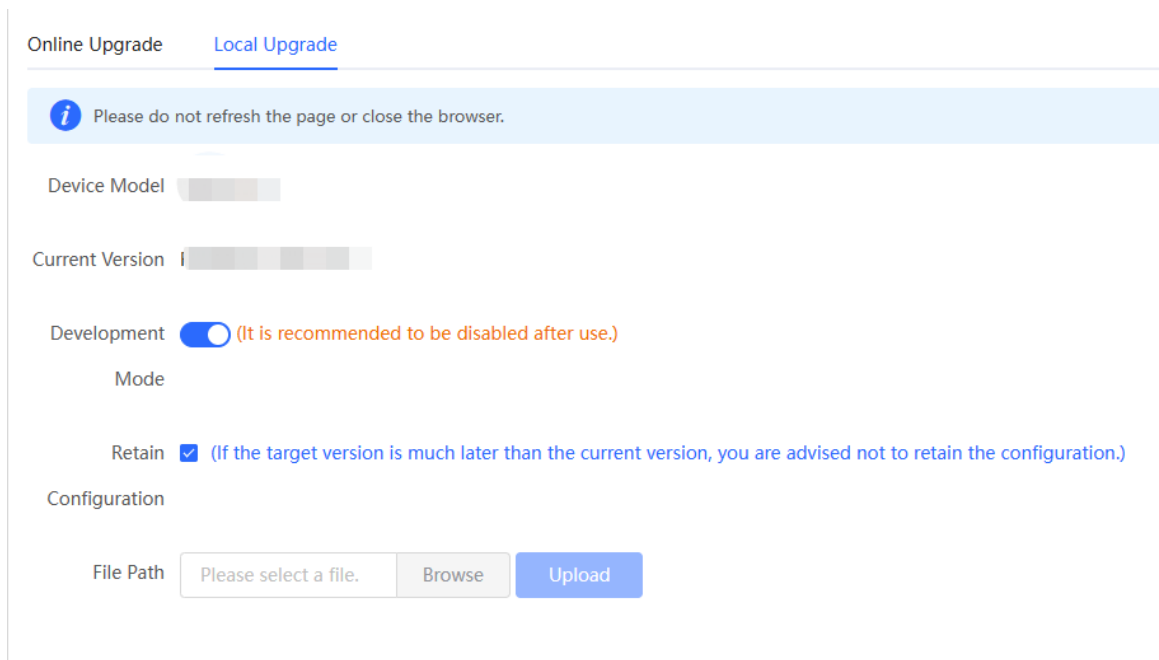
Do not refresh the page or close the browser during the upgrade process. After successful upgrade, you will be redirected to the login page automatically.



10.12.2 Local Upgrade

Choose **Local Device > System > Upgrade > Local Upgrade**.

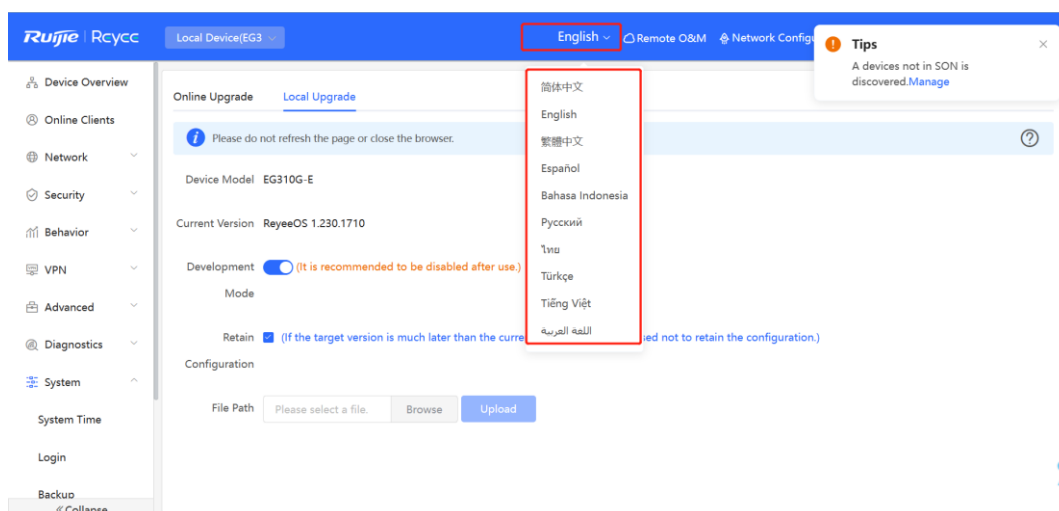
You can view the current software version and device model. If you want to upgrade the device with the configuration retained, select **Keep Config**. Click **Browse**, select an upgrade package on the local PC, and click **Upload** to upload the file. The device will be upgraded.



10.13 Switching System Language

Click **English** in the upper-right corner of the Web page.

Click a required language to switch the system language.



10.14 Configuring Cloud Service

10.14.1 Overview

The Cloud Service feature provides powerful remote network management and operation capabilities, making it convenient and efficient to manage geographically dispersed networks with diverse device types. This feature supports wireless devices, switches, and gateways, enabling unified network management and visualized monitoring and operation. Additionally, it also offers various components such as real-name authentication, dedicated Wi-Fi, and passenger flow analysis, allowing for flexible expansion of network services.

By configuring Cloud Service, you can conveniently manage networks through Ruijie Cloud or the Ruijie Reycs app.

10.14.2 Configuration Steps

Choose **System > Cloud Service**.

If the device is not currently associated with a cloud account, simply follow the on-screen instructions to add it to the network. Open up the Ruijie Reycs app, click the scan icon at the upper left corner on the **Project** page, and enter the device's management password.



Once the device is associated with a cloud account, it will automatically be bound to a cloud server based on its geographic location.

⚠ Caution
Exercise caution when modifying cloud service configurations as improper modifications may lead to connectivity issues between the device and the cloud service.

Network Name:qlstest

Cloud Server

Asia CloudConnected [Cancel](#)

This device is connected to Ruijie Cloud. Exercise caution when modifying the cloud service configuration to ensure uninterrupted device connectivity.

Cloud Server: Asia Cloud [Reset](#)

* Domain Name: mqct001-as.rj.link

* IP Address: 34.160.191.165

[Save](#)

To change the Cloud Service configurations, select the cloud server from the **Cloud Server** drop-down list, enter the domain name and IP address, and click **Save**.

i Note

When **China Cloud**, **Asia Cloud**, **Europe Cloud**, or **Americas Cloud** is selected, the system automatically populates the corresponding domain name and IP address. When **Other** is selected, you need to manually configure the domain name and IP address.

Table 10-12 Description of Cloud Sever Configuration

Parameter	Description
Cloud Server	The geographical region corresponding to cloud service, including "China Cloud," "Asia Cloud," "Europe Cloud," "Americas Cloud," and "Other".
Domain Name	Domain name of the cloud server.
IP Address	IP address of the cloud server.

10.14.3 Unbinding Cloud Service

Choose **System > Cloud Service**.

You can click **Unbind** to unbind the account if you no longer wish to manage this project remotely.

Account:

Unbind the account if you no longer wish to manage this project remotely.



Cloud Server

China CloudConnected [Configure Cloud Service](#)

11 FAQs

11.1 Login Failure

- What can I do if I fail to log in to the Web management system?
 - (1) Confirm that the network cable is correctly connected to the LAN port of the device, and the corresponding indicator is flashing or solid on.
 - (2) Before you access the Web management system page, you are advised to configure the PC to automatically obtain an IP address, so the DHCP-enabled device automatically allocates an IP address to the PC. If you want to specify a static IP address to the PC, ensure that the IP address of the PC and the IP address of the device's LAN port are in the same network segment. For example, if the LAN port IP address is 192.168.110.1 and subnet mask is 255.255.255.0, set the PC IP address to 192.168.110.X (X representing any integer in the range of 2 to 254) and the subnet mask to 255.255.255.0.
 - (3) Run the ping command to test the connectivity between the PC and device. If ping fails, check the network settings.
 - (4) If you still cannot log in to the **Device Management** page after the preceding steps, restore the device to factory settings.

11.2 Password Loss/Factory Setting Restoration

- What can I do if I forget the login password? How can I restore the device to factory settings?

When the device is powered, press and hold the **Reset** button on the panel for 5 seconds. The device will restore factory settings after restart. Then, you can log in to the Web page of the device using the default IP address 192.168.110.1.

11.3 Internet Access Failure

- What can I do if the Internet access through PPPoE Dial-Up fails?
 - (1) Check whether the PPPoE account and password are correct. Please see Section [1.5.3 Forgetting the PPPoE Account](#) for details.
 - (2) Check whether the IP address allocated by the ISP conflicts with the IP address existing on the router.
 - (3) Check whether the MTU setting of the device meets the requirements of the ISP.
The default MTU is 1500. Please see Section [3.2.3 Modifying the MTU](#) for details.
 - (4) Check whether VLAN tagging should be configured for PPPoE.
VLAN tagging is disabled by default. Please see Section [3.2.5 Configuring the VLAN Tag](#) for details.